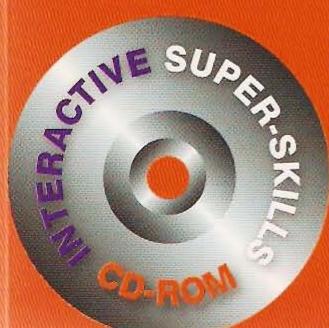
Intermediate Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman



Language Oxford Skills Word Skills

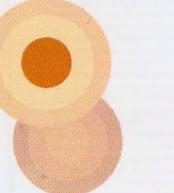




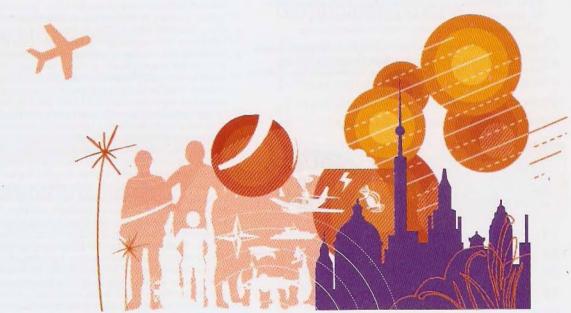
Learn and practise English vocabulary

Intermediate

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman



Oxford Word Skills







50430



Great Clarendon Street, Oxford 0X2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted Database right Oxford University Press (maker) First published 2008 2012 2011 2010 2009 2008 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 o 19 462004 8 Printed in Hong Kong



ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Illustrations by Anne Cakebread pp 12, 13, 20, 21, 58, 79; Mark Duffin pp 36, 56, 62, 86, 115, 116, 164, 197, 198; Stephane Gamain p 8; Nick Hawken pp 38, 53, 55, 93, 100, 174; Gavin Reece pp 30, 40, 48, 67, 78, 92; Willie Ryan pp 29, 41, 47, 51, 60, 64, 66, 76, 77, 87, 89, 97, 103, 104, 119, 120, 135; Tony Sigley pp 32, 61, 99, 118, 179.

Commissioned photography by MM Studios pp 7, 8 (hand and pencil), 53 (kidney), 53 (carp).

The publisher and authors would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs: Alamy pp 44 (earthquake/Yoshiaki Nagashima/ Pacific Press Service), 46 (gorilla/David Fleetham), 52 (plum/Tim Hill), 52 (grapefruit/Keith Leighton), 52 (avocado/Iconotec), 52 (passion fruit/ foodfolio), 52 (papaya/Iconotec), 52 (pomegranate/Keith Leighton), 52 (spinach/ignazuri), 52 (chick peas/Sara Danielsson/Bon Appetit), 52 (fennel/Tim Hill), 52 (artichoke/Sue Wilson), 52 (asparagus/Emilio Ereza), 52 (beetroot/Emilio Ereza), 52 (parsley/artpartner-images. com), 52 (mint/foodfolio), 52 (basil/foodfolio), 52 (thyme/foodfolio), 52 (rosemary/foodfolio), 53 (trout/Brigitte Krauth/Bon Appetit), 53 (Tim Hill), 53 (squid/Iconotec), 53 (lobster/Dieter Heinemann/Photostock), 53 (crab/D. Hurst), 53 (clam/Theresa Raffetto/Bon Appetit), 74 (hospital ward/WR Publishing), 84 (house/Malcolm Fairman), 98 (police arrest/ Arthur Turner), 114 (oil paints/Andrew Paterson), 114 (watercolours/ Chris Rose), 116 (Dex Image), 124 (Rio Carnival/Demetrio Carrasco/ Jon Arnold Images Ltd), 153 (Sam/John Eccles), 159 (Janine Wiedel Photolibrary), 171 (niceartphoto), 174 (Tony Craddock/Images Etc Ltd); Corbis pp 24 (Franck Seguin/TempSport), 42 (the earth/NASA), 42 (rainforest/Louise Murray/Robert Harding World Imagery), 44 (hurricane/Henry Romero/Reuters), 44 (volcano/Jim Sugar), 46 (eagle/ Daniel J. Cox), 47 (shark/Stuart Westmorland), 74 (operating theatre/ Mediscan), 90 (Georges Seurat, Bathers at Asnières, 1883-84, The National Gallery/By kind permission of the Trustees of the National Gallery, London), 90 (Georges Seurat, Sunday Afternoon on the Island of La Grande Jatte, 1884-86, The Art Institute of Chicago/The Gallery Collection), 98 (courtroom/Heide Benser/zefa), 114 (portrait/Self-Portrait by Mary Cassatt ca. 1880/Smithsonian Institution, Washington DC), 114 (landscape/ Vincent van Gogh, Landscape with Green Corn, 1889/The Gallery Collection), 114 (still life/Paul Cezanne, Fruit on a Cloth, ca. 1890/The Gallery Collection),114 (abstract painting/ Wassily Kandinsky, Improvisation with Green Center (No. 176), 1913/Burstein Collection/Barney Burstein © ADAGP, Paris and DACS, London 2008); Courtesy of Gecko Headgear p 146 (www.geckoheadgear.com); Getty Images pp 22 (Dan/Justin Pumfrey/Iconica), 22 (Giles/Victoria Snowber/ Photographer's Choice), 28 (Marilyn Monroe/Alfred Eisenstaedt/Pix Inc./Time & Life Pictures), 28 (Bill Clinton/Scott Morgan), 44 (drought/ Angelo Cavalli/Stone), 46 (lion/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 46 (tiger/ Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 46 (monkey/Tatsuhiko Sawada/amana images), 46 (fly/James Cotier/Stone), 46 (whale/Jeff Hunter/Riser), 46 (mosquito/Frank Greenaway/Dorling Kindersley), 52 (raspberry/ Kevin Summers/Photographer's Choice), 52 (fig/Christian Teubner/ StockFood Creative), 52 (broccoli/Kevin Summers/Photographer's Choice), 74 (x-ray/Vincenzo Lombardo/Photographer's Choice), 83 (Jonnie Miles), 101 (3D4Medical.com), 104 (Alexander Nemenov/AFP), 124 (La Tomatina festival /Jose Jordan/AFP), 158 (London Express/ Hulton Archive), 165 (E. Dygas), 193 (Lyn Holly/Photographer's Choice RR); MorgueFile.com pp 84 (brick wall/bosela), 84 (stone wall/bosela); Photolibrary.com pp 44 (tidal wave/Vince Cavataio/Pacific Stock), 53 (veal/Philip Wilkins/Fresh Food Images), 53 (cod/Maximilian Stock Ltd/Fresh Food Images), 53 (oyster/Maximilian Stock Ltd/Fresh Food Images), 153 (Jake/Ulrika Malm/Nordic Photos), 154 (Photodisc); Punchstock pp22 (Kaz/Stockbyte), 46 (bee/Don Farrall/Photodisc), 46 (shark/DLILLC), 52 (apricot/C Squared Studios/Photodisc), 52 (celery/ Stockbyte), 53 (calf's liver /Foodcollection.com), 53 (duck meat/ Foodcollection.com), 53 (rabbit meat/Foodcollection.com), 53 (sea bass/ Foodcollection.com), 53 (mussel/Melba Photo Agency), 98 (fingerprints/ Steve Allen/Jupiterimages/Brand X), 152 (Marcy Maloy/Photodisc), 153 (Boss/Purestock), 155 (Stockbyte); Rex Features pp 37, 124 (cherry blossom festival/Sinopix Photo Agency Ltd); Royalty-free pp 46 (leopard/Photodisc), 46 (spider/Photodisc), 46 (elephant/Ingram), 46 (camel/Photodisc), 46 (bear/Photodisc), 46 (snake/Photodisc), 47 (snake/ Ingram), 52 (coconut/Ingram), 52 (leek/Photodisc), 52 (sweetcorn/ Stockbyte), 173 (Photodisc); Science Photo Library p 74 (scan/just SPL) Images sourced by Suzanne Williams/Pictureresearch.co.uk

Cover illustration by Carol Verbyst

Contents

Introduction	5		
Starter unit	7	Daily life	
Abbreviations and symbols Learning 1 I can talk about vocabulary learning 2 I can describe my progress and aims 3 I can understand a learner's dictionary 4 I can talk about English punctuation		 16 I can describe a range of food 17 I can talk about diets and cooking 18 I can talk about money 19 I can talk about sleep 20 I can talk about injuries 21 I can talk about cars and driving 22 I can describe travel problems and accidents 23 I can talk about clothes and fashion 	52 54 56 58 60 62 64
Allendar Activities with the state of the st		Review	70
People 5 I can talk about appearance 6 I can talk about character 7 I can describe my feelings 8 I can talk about relationships 9 I can talk about families 10 I can talk about weddings and funerals	20 22 24 26 28 30	Getting things done 24 I can describe a visit to the dentist 25 I can describe hospital procedures 26 I can explain household tasks 27 I can describe housework 28 I can talk to a hairdresser	73 74 76 78 79
Review	33	Review	80
The world around us		Describing things	•
11 I can describe the universe 12 I can talk about rivers and the sea 13 I can describe the climate 14 I can describe natural disasters 15 I can describe animals and insects Review	36 38 41 44 46	 I can describe urban life I can describe parts of a building I can describe objects I can describe the senses I can describe a painting I can describe actions 	82 84 86 88 90 92
		Review	94



Sc	cial and political issues		So	cial English	
35	I can talk about crime	96	59	I can express probability	152
36	I can describe the justice system	98	60	I can explain similarities and differences	153
37	I can discuss health issues	100	61	I can make arrangements to meet	154
38	I can talk about politics	102	62	I can discuss my likes and dislikes	155
39	I can talk about war and peace	104	63	I can give my opinion	156
40	I can talk about events in history	106	64	I can talk about rules	158
XIIIIX		on the same	65	I can discuss hopes and plans	160
	Review	107	66	I can express dissatisfaction	162
	A A STATE OF THE S		67	I can understand warnings	164
M	edia and entertainment		Manag	Review	165
41	I can understand newspapers	110			100
42	I can talk about films	112	La	nauago	
43	I can talk about art and photography	114	La	nguage	
44	I can talk about music	116	68	I can use link words	168
45.	I can talk about people and places	118	69	I can use a range of adjectives	171
	in sport		70	I can express time and place	174
46	I can describe sporting events	120	71	I can use prepositions in phrases	176
47	I can talk about books	122	72	I can use prefixes	178
48	I can describe festivals	124	73	I can use suffixes	180
	Review	126	74	I can use verb patterns	182
dition	Review	120	75	I can use phrasal verbs	184
١٨/			76	I can use a range of adverbs	186
VV	ork and study			Review	188
49	I can get through exams	129	THE REAL PROPERTY.		100
50	I can describe university life	130	CT.	des of Emplish	
51	I can apply for a job	132	31)	les of English	
52	I can describe jobs	134	77	I can recognize informal English	191
53	I can describe a career	136	78	I can write a formal letter	194
54	I can describe working conditions	138	79	I can understand abbreviations	196
Millille	D	7.70		and short forms	
	Review	139	80	I can understand American English	198
Bu	siness		A CONTRACTOR	Review	200
55	I can talk about finance	142	Voca	abulary building tables	202
56	I can talk about companies	144	Ans	wer key	203
57	I can describe a successful business	146		wer key to review units	223
58	I can discuss marketing	148		of spotlight boxes	232
William Control	Review	150		rd list / Index	233
munu		arimining)			
			ACK	nowledgements	254

What is Oxford Word Skills?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn, practise, and revise new vocabulary.

Basic:	elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)						
Intermediate:	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)						
Advanced:	advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)						

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of four to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears.

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Intermediate level, the vocabulary includes:

- · a wide range of common topics, e.g. money, health issues, relationships
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. giving opinions, making arrangements to meet
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prefixes and suffixes, link words.

There is an emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, but also vocabulary from different types of written text, e.g. job advertisements, magazine articles, web pages, and warning signs. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items, more idiomatic language, and a wide range of collocations.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000TM, which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. don't bother, I haven't a clue, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. a filling at the dentist's.



We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases as used in the particular contexts by supplying a clear illustration, a glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should also be aware that nouns may be countable in some senses and uncountable in others. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings and structures and on countability. (See 'How to learn new words' in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

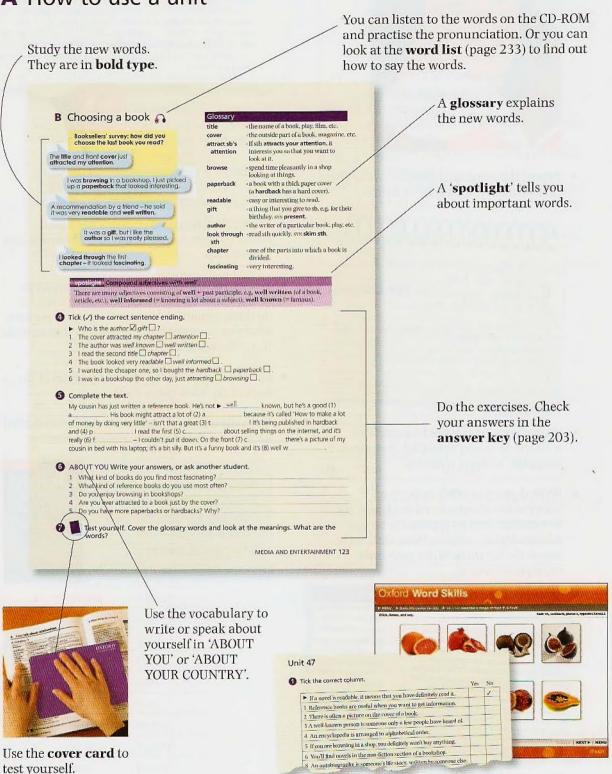
Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5-10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals, glossaries, or tables and test themselves. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can
 use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.

A How to use a unit

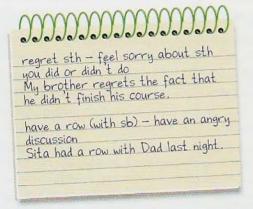


There's more practice in the review units and on the CD-ROM.

B How to learn new words



 Repeat the words and phrases two or three times to help you remember them.



- Write down new words in a notebook, with the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.
- Write down any other important information about a word or phrase, e.g. words that often go together (a serious relationship) or constructions with verbs (regret the fact that). Write your own example sentences.

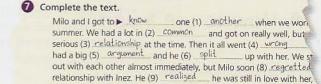
Perfect Weekend Channel Five Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

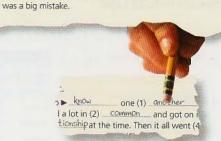
TV drama about a group of young people who got to know one another at university, and now, five years later, get together for a weekend. But things soon go wrong. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now realizes they have nothing in common, while Pete regrets the fact that he split up with Arny, the girl he used to go out with. Now Amy is in a serious relationship with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Arny's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big row. Arny falls out with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning ...

Glossary

get to know sb mee become friends. one another each o get together (of two social reason. go wrong used whe situation or relatio realize sth begin to a know before. have nothing in con no interests that a common. regret s

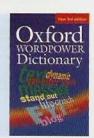
 Use a highlighter pen to help you remember difficult words.





- Use a pencil for the exercises. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.
- You can do the exercises in the review units, or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. 'The world around us').
- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (page 202).
- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/wordskills) for more useful materials and more practice.

Buy a good dictionary for your level. The Oxford Wordpower Dictionary (Oxford University Press) is very good for intermediate learners.





C Abbreviations and symbols

N	noun	USU	usually			
V	verb	C	countable noun (A countable noun can be used with <i>a/an</i> and can have a plural form.			
ADJ	adjective					
ADV	adverb	U	uncountable noun (An uncountable noun			
OPP	opposite (for example, <i>modest</i> is the opposite of <i>arrogant</i>)		cannot usually be used with <i>a/an</i> and usually has no plural form.)			
SYN			past tense (the past simple form of an irregular verb)			
			past participle			
INF	informal (If a word or phrase is informal , you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know well.)		something (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. regret sth)			
			somebody (used in glossaries and tables,			
FML	formal (If a word or phrase is formal, you		e.g. dismiss sb)			
	use it at important and serious times with people you don't know well, or in written English.)	etc.	used at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all			
PL	plural	e.g.	for example (as in: jewellery, e.g. earrings,			
SING			necklace)			

Vowels

i:	see	/siː/
i	happy	/'hæpi/
I	sit	/srt/
e	ten	/ten/
æ	hat	/hæt/
α:	father	/'fa:ðə(r)/
D	got	/gɒt/
o:	saw	/so:/
υ	put	/put/
u	casual	/ˈkæʒuəl/
u:	too	/tu:/
Λ	cup	/kʌp/
3:	bird	/b3:d/
ə	about	/əˈbaʊt/
ет	say	/seɪ/
ວບ	go	/gəʊ/
aı	five	/faɪv/
au	now	/naʊ/
OI	boy	/boɪ/
19	near	/n19(r)/
eə	hair	/heə(r)/
υə	sure	/ʃʊə(r)/

Consonants

p	pen	/pen/
b	bad	/bæd/
t	tea	/ti:/
d	did	/dɪd/
k	cat	/kæt/
g	got	/got/
t∫	cheap	/tʃiːp/
d3	jam	/dʒæm/
f	fall	/fo:1/
v	verb	/va:b/
θ	thin	/θɪn/
ð	this	/ðis/
s	SO SO	/səu/
z	zero	/vereiz/
ſ	shoe	/ʃuː/
3	television	/'teliviʒn, teli'viʒn/
h	hat	/hæt/
m	map	/mæp/
n	no	/nəʊ/
ŋ	sing	/siŋ/
1	leg	/leg/
r	red	/red/
j	yes	/jes/
W	wet	/wet/

1 I can talk about vocabulary learning

A Reading 🕟

Tips for reading

When you're reading in a **foreign** language, you should try to get the **gist** of the **text**. You will meet vocabulary you don't **recognize**, but you can often **go through** the text again. If so, try this:

- Identify the new words and phrases which seem to be important. Try to guess the meaning from the context, and/or use a dictionary.
- Keep a record of the words in a notebook, and, if possible, make a note of any special information.
 For example, is the word formal or informal? Is it used in a particular kind of construction, e.g. a verb that is often followed by a preposition?
- Write a translation if you think it helps; sometimes it isn't necessary.

spotlight formal

We use **formal** language to appear serious or official, or sometimes when we don't know people well. OPP **informal. formality** N. OPP **informality**.

Glossary	
foreign	from a country that is not your own (a person is a foreigner).
gist	 SING The gist of sth is the general meaning but not all the details.
text	 the written part of a book, newspaper, etc.
recognize sb/sth	 know who sb is or what sth is because you've seen or heard them before. recognition N.
go through sth	 read sth carefully from beginning to end.
identify sth	 recognize sth and decide what it is.
guess sth	give an answer to sth without being sure of the facts. guess N.
context	the words before and after the new word or phrase that help you to understand the meaning.
keep a record of sth	write sth down to help you remember it. record sth v.
make a note of sth	write sth down quickly to help you remember it.
construction	* the way words are used together in a sentence. construct sth v.
translation	 a text that has been changed from one language into another. translate sth v.

U	Ke	eplace the words in Italics with a single word that has the same meaning.
	>	I looked at the pictures but didn't understand the written part. text
	1	I understood the <i>general meaning</i> of the text.
	2	We couldn't recognize and decide what language they were speaking.
	3	The way you use words together to make a sentence in German is different.
	4	He is from another country.
	5	You can guess the meaning from the words before and after the new word.
	6	There was a text which I had to change from one language into another.
0	Co	omplete the dialogues.
		Is 'How do you do' formal ? ~ Yes, we usually just say hello .
	1	Did you know the answer? ~ No, I had to
	2	Did you understand everything? ~ No, but I got the of it.
	3	Did you everyone? ~ There were one or two people I didn't know.
	4	Were there many? ~ No, all the people were from this country.
	5	Did you understand the text? ~ Yes, but can we through it again?
	6	Do you make a of new words? ~ Yes, I keep a in my notebook.

B Speaking and listening



- · In a conversation, you can often ask someone to repeat words or phrases you don't understand. and explain the meaning to you.
- Repeat new words to yourself, so you know how to pronounce them.
- · Look for opportunities to practise them when you're speaking. Don't be afraid to experiment with new language, and don't worry about making mistakes.
- · It's important to revise new vocabulary. If not, you may forget it quite quickly.
- Remember: there isn't a correct method of learning vocabulary. Do what works for you.

conversation, chat, discussion, spotlight argument

A conversation is a talk between two or more people. You can also have a chat with sb, which is a friendly informal conversation (chat v). A discussion about sth is when you talk about something scriously (discuss sth v). An argument is a discussion in which people disagree, often angrily.

Glossary									
repeat sth	say sth again. repetition N.								
explain sth	·								
pronounce sth									
opportunity	opportunity a time when it is possible to do sth that you want to do. syn chance.								
•	try sth to see what result it has.								
make mistakes	* NOT do mistakes .								
revise sth	 study sth again (you do revis 	sion).							
method	a way of doing sth.								
work	 get or have the result you war 	int.							
What nouns are for	rmed from these verbs?								
▶ discuss discussion	2 pronounce	4 revise							
1 repeat	3 explain	5 chat							
Circle the correct ar	nswer.								
1 If you revise somet	ething, you make it easy to say/und hing, you say it again/study it again								
	s, it is successful/difficult.	255 1 2 2 31 5 3							
	with something, you try something,	g/find something.							
4 You can do/make		rations							
	portunity to do something/a way o	or doing something.							
6 A chat is a formal/a	an informal conversation.								
Complete the sente	ences								
•									
	 We had a <u>conversation</u> on the phone last night. We had a serious in class today about politics. 								
	n to work in Paris n	·							
, ,									
	od for cooking the rice and it really								
	2								
5 Do you think we ii	have a to go shoppin	ng when we re in what!							

Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words.

What are the meanings?

I can describe my progress and aims

A Making progress

When I started learning English, I was very enthusiastic and motivated, but I found the pronunciation difficult and people couldn't always understand me. After a while my pronunciation improved and I was able to express basic ideas quite effectively. It was obvious that I was getting better.

and that was very encouraging. But at intermediate level, I made slower progress. There were so many new words and phrases, but also words that I could understand but couldn't use accurately. I think I was more aware of my mistakes, which was good - but also frustrating.

Glossary			
enthusiastic =	very interested in sth or excited by $\ ^{\square}$ it. enthusiasm N.	obvious	 easily scen and understood. syn clear.
motivated 🗀 🧸	If you are motivated , you really want to do sth. motivation N.	encouraging	If sth is encouraging , it gives you hope and makes you wan
after a while 🌞	after a period of time.		to continue. encourage v.
improve •	become better, syns get better,		encouragement N.
	make progress. improvement N.	accurately	with no mistakes. accurate ADJ
express sth 4	say or show what you think or feel.	be aware of sth	If you are aware of sth, you know about it.
effectively 🕫 "	in a way that gives you the result you want. effective ADJ.	frustrating	 making you annoyed because you cannot do sth you want to do. frustration N.

0	Complet	te the	sentences	using '	the v	words	on th	he r	ight ir	the	correct	form
				CC - alt.	1					-		

-	She did the work very effectively .	EFFECTIVE
1	He gave me a lot of	ENCOURAGE
2	I think my English is	IMPROVEMENT
3	My mother speaks English very	ACCURATE
4	It's when you can't understand.	FRUSTRATION
5	He doesn't have much	MOTIVATED
6	I was very when I started.	ENTHUSIASM

Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- enthusiasm She shows lots of interest and excitement. 1 Do you think your English is improving? 2 I didn't worry about my mistakes after a period of time. 3 Where are you making the most improvement? 4 It's clear that he doesn't know the difference between lend and borrow.
- 5 She can speak French without mistakes.
- 6 I think she knows about the problem.
- 7 I can say most of the things I need to.
- 8 I make a lot of mistakes, which is annoying
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

B Future goals



Felipe's goals

- I understand everyday English, but my vocabulary needs to expand so that I can understand a wide range of subjects, and express more complex ideas.
- I'd like to be more fluent when I'm speaking, and be able to talk about things in more detail.
 And I need to get better at using appropriate language when I speak.
- I can understand general things, but I want to read texts that are relevant to my work, and some of these contain quite specialized language.

Glossary

goal a thing you want to be able to do in the future. syn aim.

everyday normal or usual.

expand become bigger or make sth bigger.

a wide range a large number of different things.

complex not simple; often difficult to understand. SYN **complicated**.

fluent able to speak a foreign language easily and well. fluently ADV.

in detail fully and including a lot of information.

appropriate right or suitable in a particular situation. or **inappropriate**.

relevant to sth useful for and connected to sth.

specialized having or needing a lot of special knowledge.

spotlight contain and include

We can often use **contain** or **include** with the same meaning.

The film contains/includes scenes of violence.

Sometimes we can only use one of the verbs.

The box contains magazines. (There are magazines inside the box.)

The price **includes** service. (Service is one part of the price.)

4	Replace the underlined words with a	synonym.	
	► The story is <u>complex</u> <u>complicated</u>		
	1 I speak Russian <u>very well</u> .	4 The business got bigger.	
	2 It's part of <u>normal</u> life.	5 It's not <u>suitable</u> here.	
	3 It isn't <u>connected</u> to my work.	6 My goal is to get to university.	
6	Complete the dialogues with a suitab	le word.	
	▶ Was the information important for your	report? ~ No, it was irrelevant.	
	1 Did you explain it fully? ~ Yes, I describe		
	2 It wasn't a suitable word to use. ~ I agre		
	3 Is it a simple problem? ~ No, it's quite		
	4 Is this yoghurt bad for you? ~ No it doe:		
	5 Is her vocabulary getting bigger? ~ Yes,		
	6 Do you need any special knowledge? ~	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	7 Is the hotel room expensive? ~ Yes, but	the price dinner.	
	8 Were there many subjects? ~ Yes, quite	a wide of topics.	
ര	ABOUT YOU Write down your learnin	og goals or tell another student	
9	ABOUT 100 Write down your learning	g godis, or tell another student.	

I can understand a learner's dictionary



How can a learner's dictionary help you? These examples are from Oxford Wordpower Dictionary.

Different meanings of the word are given in the definitions, which are in simple English.

The dictionary helps you avoid making mistakes, and helps with grammar.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are at the end of the -

Examples of usage are provided.

? win /win/ verb (winning; pt, pp won /wan/) 1 [1, T] to be the best, first or strongest in a race, game, competition, etc.: to win a game/ match/championship • I never win at table tennis. · Which party do you think will win the next election? 2 [T] to get money, a prize, etc. as a result of success in a competition, race, etc.: We won a trip to Australia. • Who won the gold medal? • He won the jackpot in the lottery.

Note that we earn (not win) money at our job: I earn £15 000 a year.

IDM win/lose the toss a toss you can't win (informal) there is no way of being completely successful or of pleasing everyone: Whatever you do you will upset somebody. You can't win.

PHRV win sb over/round (to sth) to persuade sb to support or agree with you: They're against the proposal at the moment, but I'm sure we can win them over.

Phonetic **symbols** help with pronunciation. You can find out which syllable is stressed.

Words that are often used ----together (collocations) are given in bold.

It helps you with style: for instance, whether words are formal, informal, slang, offensive, etc.

guy /gai/ noun 1 [C] (informal) a man or boy: He's a nice guy. 2 guys [pl] (informal) used when speaking to a group of men and women: What do you guys want to eat?

? mistake1 /mr'stcrk/ noun [C] something that you think or do that is wrong: Try not to make any mistakes in your essays. • a spelling mistake • It was a big mistake to trust her. • I made the mistake of giving him my address.

IDM by mistake as a result of being careless: The terrorists shot the wrong man by mistake.

mistake

Error is more formal than mistake: a computing error. When you make a mistake you do sth wrong: I got the answer wrong. . You must have the wrong number (= on the phone). Fault indicates who is responsible for sth bad: The accident wasn't my fault. The other driver pulled out in front of me. Fault is also used to describe a problem or weakness that sb/sth has: a technical fault.

It can teach you related words: this helps you build your vocabulary and select the correct word for your needs.

Glossary

definition an exact statement of what a word or phrase means. define sth v.

avoid doing sth If you avoid doing sth, you try not to do or experience it.

idiom a group of words whose meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words (also expression).

entry one of a list of items included in a dictionary, list, etc. (There are three dictionary **entries** on this page.) provide sth give sth to sb or make sth available for sb. style the way sth is written or spoken (e.g. an

for instance SYN for example.

informal style, a formal style).

slang very informal words or phrases used in spoken

offensive rude and likely to upset sb. offend sb v.

symbol a letter, number, or sign that has a particular meaning (e.g. the **symbol** / ʃ/ is pronounced 'sh').

syllable a part of a word which contains a vowel sound. (Go has one syllable and prefer has two syllables.)

relate sth to sth connect sth to sth. related ADJ. build sth make sth bigger; increase sth.

select sth syn choose sth (but select is more formal). selection N.

spotlight stress and emphasize

Both verbs mean to say a syllable, word, or phrase with extra loudness.

The related nouns are stress (on sth) and emphasis (on sth).

The stress is on the first syllable. Don't emphasize every word.

They are also used to say that sth is important.

The newspapers **stressed** the need for urgent action.

The **emphasis** is mainly **on** education.

a	Is the meaning	the same	or different?	Write S or	D.
---	----------------	----------	---------------	------------	----

>	The city is fantastic: for example, the buildings are very impressive.	The city is fantastic: for instance, the buildings are very impressive.
1	That's a useful idiom to know.	That's a useful expression to know.
2	Is that collocation correct?	Is that definition correct?
3	What she said was very rude.	What she said was offensive.
4	Does he use a lot of slang?	Does he use a lot of idioms?
5	Can you avoid mistakes?	Can you define mistakes?
6	Make sure you select the right number.	Make sure you choose the right number.
7	The stress is on the first three letters.	The emphasis is on the first three letters.
8	It doesn't give all the answers.	It doesn't provide all the answers.

2 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

symbols offending related entry ✓ selection syllable instance stress idiom provide build collocations entry

- In a dictionary, foreigner comes after the entry for foreign.

 Dictionaries have many uses: for , to find out meaning, or check pronunciation.

 Does your local bookshop have a good of dictionaries for sale?
- 3 Some dictionaries can help you ______ your vocabulary if they _____ synonyms and opposites, or other _____ words.
- 4 A dictionary can tell you which words are rude so that you can avoid ______ people.
- 5 You can check the pronunciation of any word in the dictionary by looking at the phonetic and noting which _______ is stressed.
- 6 Good luck! is given as an _____ in the dictionary, at the end of the _____ for luck.
- 7 Dictionaries often tell you which words go together. Examples of ______ are make a mistake and take a photo.
- 8 In the word *emphasis*, the ______ is on the first syllable.

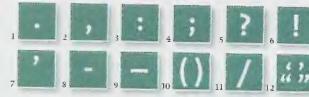
3 Now look at the dictionary entries on the left-hand page. Answer the questions.

- ► Which syllable is stressed in *mistake*? The second syllable
- 1 Which related words are given for mistake and make a mistake?
- 2 How many definitions are there in the entry for guy?
- 3 What style is the idiom You can't win? ____
- 4 Is *guy* an offensive word?
- 5 Which phonetic symbols are given for *guy*?
- 6 Are these sentences correct?a) I haven't got the keys, but it's not my fault; Jo lost them.
 - b) My dad wins a lot of money in his job.

4 | can talk about English punctuation

A Punctuation marks

- 1 full stop 7 apostrophe
- 2 comma 8 hyphen 3 colon 9 dash
- 3 colon 9 dash 4 semicolon 10 brackets 5 question mark 11 slash
- 6 exclamation mark 12 quotation marks



- Complete the words for the punctuation marks.
 - ▶ comma
 - 1 full s_____
 - 2 col.....

5 question m _____ 6 excla ____ m ____ 7 semi _____

8 apo____oqs 8

- 2 What punctuation is used in 1-8 below? You don't need to repeat full stop each time.
 - ► We went home early. full stop
 - 1 She had long, blonde hair.
 - 2 What are you doing?
 - 3 Congratulations!
 - 4 It's too late.
 - 5 I looked in the fridge; it was empty.
 - 6 Someone (not me) left the door open.
 - 7 A five-minute walk and he still took a taxi.
 - 8 'It's only me,' he said.
- 3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the punctuation marks. What are they?

B Punctuation rules

SOME IMPORTANT PUNCTUATION RULES

A <u>full stop</u> is used at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation, and is sometimes used in **abbreviations**. Each new sentence must begin with a **capital letter**.

A <u>comma</u> in writing is like a **pause** in speech. It is used:

- to separate parts of a sentence, e.g. After we left, someone tried to phone us.
- between adjectives, e.g. A big, expensive car.
- to separate words in a list, though it is often omitted before and, e.g. I went to France, Germany, Italy and Spain.
- when words or phrases interrupt the normal progression of a sentence, e.g. I decided, however, that I needed something to eat first.

A <u>colon</u> is often used to introduce further details such as an explanation or a list, e.g. The shop is full of antiques: dining tables, chairs, wardrobes, mirrors, and so on.

A <u>semicolon</u> is sometimes used **instead of** a full stop when two sentences are very closely **connected**, or to separate two main clauses, especially ones that aren't **joined** by a conjunction **such as** and or but, e.g. I went round this morning; nobody was there.

A <u>slash</u> separates words or phrases that are <u>alternatives</u>, e.g. <u>single/married</u>.

Glossary	
abbreviation a short form of a word (e.g. a.m. is an	interrupt sth occur in the middle of sth and stop it
abbreviation meaning 'in the morning').	continuing.
capital letter A B C are capital letters (a b c are	details small pieces of information about sth.
small letters).	instead of sb/sth in the place of sb/sth.
pause a short period of time when sb stops talking.	connect sth put two or more things together.
separate sb/sth keep people or things away from	SYN join sth.
each other. SYN divide sb/sth.	such as You use such as to introduce an example.
list a series of names, items, or numbers (e.g. a	syn like. alternative one of two or more things that you can
shopping list, a list of countries). omit sth FML If you omit sth, you don't include it.	choose between.
SYN leave sth out.	
O C malete the combones	
4) Complete the sentences.	
➤ Sentences have to begin with a <u>capital</u>	letter.
1 I wrote a of irregular verbs in m	
2 I would use this dictionary of the	
3 We often use and or but totw	·
4 In this application form, you have to give	
5 I asked her to marry me. There was a long	, and finally sne said yes.
6 Prep. is an of preposition.	as beautiful deliabetul and attractive
7 You need to use more adjectives	as beautiful, deligniful, and attractive.
8 The teacher said we can out Ex	
9 You can use brackets toextra i	
10 The director had to the lesson	
11 You could the two sentences in	
12 You can use a full stop, but the	is that you use a sermeolon.
Find pairs of words in the box that go tog	ether for a reason. Write a sentence about
them.	
comma omit abbreviation join such	as / p.m. information
separate like ✓ leave out full stop de	
Such as' and 'like' mean the same thing.	
codal II.2. Unione de la companya della companya della companya de la companya della companya de	
6 What punctuation is missing, and where?	
► We live in this house A full stop is missing	
1 she works in Bristol.	
2 He's a tall thin boy.	
3 The book is <i>in on</i> the table. Which is correct?	
	go and look for them.
	urant.
	audit.
	ems.
	CHID.
o vve couldn't get in the door was locked	The state of the s

Review: Learning

Unit 1

1	Rewrite the sentences. Change the part of speech of the underlined words.
	▶ Did you discuss it? Did you have a discussion about it?
	1 Could you <u>translate</u> this, please? Could you do? 2 I've got to <u>revise</u> for an exam. I've got to do
	3 Repetition helps me remember. It helps me remember if
	4 How did he explain it? What was?
	5 Go on – guess! Go on – have! 6 I <u>record</u> new words in a book. I keep
	7 Did you chat about it? Did you have
	8 How do you pronounce that word? What's?
2	Complete the text with words and phrases from the box.
	make a note of go through texts 🗸 translation pronounce make
	pronunciation gist experiment foreign guess context recognize
	I've just started university and I'm studying Italian. We spend a lot of time reading ▶ texts
	- they're usually articles from Italian newspapers. They contain a lot of words you don't (1) and to start with, you have to try to get the (2) of the articles to show that you understand
	the general idea. In class we (3) the texts and (4) any useful new words.
	The teacher tells us to (5) the meaning of new words by looking at the (6)
	they are in. We then write a (7) of them if we want to, and learn how to (8)
	them correctly. I often (9) mistakes with (10), but I don't think it matters; it's important to (11) with language; that's the best way to make progress. Next year, I'm
	starting another (12) language: Russian. I'm really excited about that.
Jr	nit 2
1	Complete the contenees with a suitable word
•	Complete the sentences with a suitable word. ► I want to learn Italian – nothing very specialized, just <u>everyday</u> Italian.
	1 It was a very cstory – quite hard to understand.
	2 I don't know enough words, so my vocabulary needs to e That is my main
	a on this course. 3 I've lived in Costa Rica for five years now, and I can speak Spanish f
	4 You need to know the subject very well and talk about it in d
	5 There is now a wide r of evening courses that you can do at the college.
	6 Does this drink calcohol? 7 Some of the courses are too s
	7 Some of the courses are too s —————————————————————————————————
2	
2	Complete the text with words from the box.
	progress aware spoke getting frustrating encouraging while accurate motivated express
	When I went to live in Argentina, I spoke some Spanish but I couldn't understand people when they spoke Spanish to me, so it was your (1)
	when they spoke Spanish to me, so it was very (1) But I was very (2) I worked hard at my Spanish, and after a (3) I could see that I was making a lot of
	(4)
	when people told the that I was (0)

	better. My problem was that I still made a lot of mistakes, and I wasn't (7) of them. Anyway, I kept trying, and after about a year, I was able to (8) most things I needed to, and my Spanish was also quite (9) – I only made a few mistakes.
Ur	nit 3
1	Complete the words in the text. When you meet a new word in a text, for example, genuine, you might want to look up the meaning in a dictionary. It's important to look at all the (1) d in an (2) e, and then (3) s the correct one, according to the context of the sentence. For (4) i , if the sentence is I bought a genuine Velasquez painting, you know the meaning is 'real' or 'authentic'. Genuine is a difficult word to pronounce, so it is worth looking at the phonetic (5) s , and note too how the word is (6) s ; in fact, the (7) s is on the first (8) s If you come across an (9) i or (10) e such as under the weather, you should check the meaning (it means 'feeling slightly ill'), and then look at the (11) s of the phrase: is it formal or informal? This particular phrase isn't rude, but you certainly wouldn't want to (12) o anyone, so it's always a good idea to check.
	Read the text, then answer the questions below. 1 I really want to leave home, so I went to see a flat last night. It had everything: a kitchen, a living 2 room, a bathroom, a bedroom, and a study — and it was in a great location. I realized, however, that 3 it would be too expensive for me on my own. I rang Mr Pavlides at the agency this morning; he offered 4 to make it a bit cheaper, so I decided to take it. My mother was really pleased. 'You're moving out at 5 last! But Michael, who's going to wash your shirts for you now?' she said.
2	The first sentence begins with a capital <u>letter</u> . There is a comma after <i>home</i> , which s the two parts of the sentence.
	 There is a colon after everything. It is often used before more d or a long the sentence beginning I realized, the word however in the progression of the sentence, so commas are used around it. After the word morning there is a semicolon. This can be used in the two sentences are closely contact.

5 I can talk about appearance

A Male appearance



He's got **broad shoulders**¹ He's tall and **skinny**, and is **well built**. but he's **in good shape**.



He's got thick **cyebrows**² and **stubble**³. He's **dark-skinned**⁴. OPP **light-** OR **pale-skinned**.



He's quite **plump**, with a **fattish** face.



He's **clean-shaven** and **bald**⁵. He has a **scar**⁶ on his head.



He's **going bald** OR He's **losing his hair** OR His hair's **receding**.

Glossary

male Men and boys are male, women and girls are female (a person's sex is male or female).
well built with a solid, strong body, syn stocky, skinny very thin, but not in an attractive way.

in good/bad shape in good/bad physical condition. plump quite fat, in a nice way. fattish quite fat. (See spotlight, next page.) clean-shaven without a beard or moustache.

- One letter is missing from each word. Write the words correctly.
 - ► skiny skinny
 - 1 eyebows
 - 2 fatish

- 3 sca
- 4 brod shoulders ____ 5 subble
- 6 clean-shave
- 7 in good sape _

- 2 Similar or different? Write S or D.
 - ▶ fattish | plump S
 - 1 skinny dark-skinned ____
 - 2 in good shape | in good condition ___
 - 3 go bald | be bald ___
 - 4 stocky | well built ___

- 5 dark-skinned | pale-skinned
- 6 stubble | a scar
- 7 pale-skinned | light-skinned ...
- 8 He's losing his hair. | His hair's receding.
- 9 male | female ...
- Complete the questions. You will write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4.

In	your family:	ABOUT YOUR FAMILY			ABOUT YOUR FAMILY
1	who's in good s ?		5	who's well b ?	TO STATE OF THE ST
2	who's going b ?			who's sk?	
3	who's cshaven?			who's dark-s ?	1.3
4	who's got broad s	?	8	who's got a s on their body?	

- ABOUT YOUR FAMILY Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.
- 5 Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the descriptions?

B Female appearance





This is my mother at 27 when she was pregnant; in fact, she was expecting me. She had a pretty, roundish face with beautiful smooth skin and long hair.



Here's Mum now; she looks tanned. She's still slim with a good figure. Her appearance hasn't changed much, but she's got a few wrinkles¹, she's going grey, and her hair's much shorter and neater. She wears contact lenses, and you can't tell that she's nearly 60.

spotlight -ish

The suffix -ish is used with some adjectives to mean 'quite'. A roundish face is a face which is quite round. Also: tallish, youngish, fattish, etc.

Glossary the shape of a woman's body. figure be pregnant • SYN be expecting a baby. • the way sb looks. appearance attractive and nice to look at (used pretty especially about girls or young women). go grey become grey-haired or white-haired. · with a completely flat surface. OPP rough. or white smooth tidy and carefully arranged. neat Your skin covers your body. skin contact lenses + small round pieces of plastic you wear tanned having brown skin after spending time in your eyes to help you see better. in the sun. tan N. tell sth · know or guess sth. slim • thin in an attractive way. syn slender. True or false? Write T or F. ▶ If your hair is neat, it's tidy. 5 You get tanned sitting in the sun. 1 Contact lenses are the same as glasses. 6 Everyone has a good figure. 7 You usually use 'pretty' to describe a man. 2 Skin can be rough or smooth. 3 A tallish person is very tall. 4 A pregnant woman has just had a baby. 8 Your hair can go white or grey. Complete the sentences. ▶ Does she wear contact lenses ? 1 Her _____ has gone grey, and it's completely changed her ___ 2 She's still very slim, so you can't _____ she's ____ a baby in July. 3 I'm feeling so old these days – look at these ______ around my eyes! 4 My baby's skin is so ______ to touch, but my hands are really _____. 5 She's got a beautiful figure: she's tall and ___ 6 You can _____ she's been on holiday – she's got a lovely ___

Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

6 I can talk about character 6

How I see myself

Dan (33) 'I'm **ambitious**, **self-confident**, and **generous**. I'm also very **impatient**.'

Kaz (18) 'I'm always **cheerful**, I'm **easy-going**, and I've got lots of **energy**.'

Giles (45) 'I see myself as honest, hard-working, and generally tolerant.'







How others see me

'Some people really like me; others think I'm **arrogant** and maybe **aggressive**.'

'My parents don't think I'm very **responsible**; my friends just think I'm **crazy**.'

'Other people probably think I'm a bit dull, without much sense of humour.'

spotlight crazy, mad, stupid

Crazy INF and mad mean 'not sensible or practical; a bit stupid'.

Both words can describe a person or an action or idea, but the meaning is not always negative. They can describe someone who is a bit out of control but just wants to enjoy life. **Stupid** is always negative.

Glossary

see sb as sth imagine or think of sb in a particular way.

ambitious having a strong desire to do well or be successful. OPP unambitious. ambition N.

self-confident | feeling sure about your own ability. OPP insecure.

generous happy to give more money and help than is usual. OPP mean. generosity N.

impatient not able to stay calm and wait for sth/sb. OPP patient. patience N.

arrogant thinking you are better than other people. OPP modest, arrogance N.

aggressive • likely to fight or argue. aggression N.

cheerful • feeling happy.

easy-going relaxed and not worried by what other people do.

energy the ability to be very active without getting tired. energetic ADJ.

responsible

able to act sensibly and intelligently, opp irresponsible.

always telling the truth, opp dishonest, honesty N.

hard-working

able to work with effort and for a long time, opp lazy.

tolerant able to accept ideas you don't agree with. OPP intolerant. tolerance N.

dull boring.

sense of humour the ability to laugh at things and see when sth is funny.

1 Positive or negative, or can it be both? Write P or N or B.

► She's very cheerful. P

He's very ambitious. B

1 He's very arrogant. 5 She's so modest.

2 They're a bit dull.
3 Both boys are very honest.
6 He's very self-confident.
7 Karen is so mean.

4 My boss is very tolerant. 8 My brother is absolutely mad.

4	Correct the spelling mistakes	i						
	▶ onest honest	3	generos		6	agressi	ve	
	1 energie					patient	te	
	2 responsable							
	·							
3	Match 1–8 with a–i.							
	► feeling sure about your own a	abil	tyc	а	aggress	ive		
	1 boring		,	b	cheerfu			
	2 likely to fight or argue			C	self-con	fident 🗸	1	
	3 thinking you are better than o	othe	ers	d	tolerant			
	4 always telling the truth			е	sense o	f humou	ır	
	5 ability to laugh at things			f	dull			
	6 feeling happy			g	arrogan	it		
	7 unhappy to give money or he	lp p	people	h	honest			
	8 able to accept ideas you don'	t ag	ree with	i	mean			
1	Complete the tables.							
	ADJECTIVE OPPOSITE			ADJE	CTIVE		OUN	
	▶ patient impatient			ambit	ious		ambition	
	honest			hones	t			
	responsible			tolera				
	lazy			aggre.	ssive 🥛	9.6	-101 : 11.1111530	
	generous			arroga	ant			
	ambitious				ous 🗗			
	self-confident	car:ur		patier	nt			
5	Complete the words in each							
	▶ If you disagree with Matthew							
	1 My brother's a bit irresponsib							
	2 Keiko's a good person to shall					g		
	3 I like Zoltan; he's got a great							
	4 Hamdi is a fantastic musician,							
	5 Since Katy got a new job and							
	6 My brother's lazy, but my sist							+
	7 I don't think young Andy is r							
	8 Andrea has so much e		; she's always	doing	somethin	ıg.		
3	A POLIT VOLL A province the annual	:		+10000	L al a nat			
6	ABOUT YOU Answer the que							
	1 Are you ambitious? If so, in w	vha	t way?					
	2 Would you say you're hard-w							
	3 Are you intolerant of anything	_						
	4 When do you get impatient?							
	5 How do you see yourself? Wi		•					IBHH:
	6 Which two qualities do you t							
	honesty, patience, tolerance,	or i	generosity?				to the second	

Test yourself. Cover your opposites and nouns in Exercise 4 and test yourself. Then cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What do they mean?

7 I can describe my feelings

A Feelings	A	Feelings	6
------------	---	----------	---

Mond	F	
Word	Example	Meaning
thrilled	He was thrilled to win and he kissed ' the cup.	very happy and excited. syn delighted.
furious	I lost his keys: he was absolutely furious.	very angry.
astonished	I was astonished to hear he was married.	very surprised. syn amazed.
heartbroken	She was heartbroken when her father died.	very sad and emotionally upset.
terrified	I was terrified when the plane took off.	very frightened. SYN scared stiff INF.
miscrable	You look very miserable. What's wrong?	unhappy and depressed. SYN fed up INF.
proud	I felt very proud when my book was published.	pleased about sth you or other people have done.
jealous	My boyfriend is jealous when I'm with other boys. I've always been jealous of Tom; everyone likes him.	1 angry or sad because you're afraid of losing sb's love. 2 angry or sad because sb has sth you don't have. syn envious .
anxious	He was anxious before he went into hospital.	worried and afraid.
upset	Sally was very upset because no one spoke to her.	sad and angry because of sth that has happened.

0	Complete the words an	d phrases.
---	-----------------------	------------

	ama3ed	4	thr
1	anx	5	broker
2	fur	6	scared
3	ast	7	ki

spotlight absolutely and very

Use **absolutely** before extreme adjectives, e.g. furious, astonished, heartbroken, terrified. Use **very** before degree adjectives, e.g. miserable, jealous, anxious, upset. I was **absolutely** amazed. (NOT very amazed.) They were **very** proud. (NOT absolutely proud.)

2 Write synonyms for these words and phrases.

>	worried <u>anxious</u>	2	fed up	4	astonished
1	thrilled	3	scared stiff	5	envious

ABOUT YOU How might you feel in these situations? Write your answers using words from the table, or ask another student.

	Someone hits your car because they were driving badly. I'd be furious. You've just passed an important exam. I'd be
	Your best friend has bought a car that you would love to have.
3	Your lovely old dog has just died
4	A man walks up to you in the street and holds a knife to your face
	You're on holiday but you can't go out because you've got a bad cold.
	You see someone you don't know kissing your boyfriend/girlfriend.
7	You have been chosen to make a speech at an important event.
8	You are going somewhere by plane and you don't like flying

Test yourself. Cover the meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

B How emotional are you? 🕟

ABOUT YOU

YOU AND YOUR EMOTIONS

- a I'm an emotional person and I like to show my feelings.
- b I think I'm quite sensitive, so I try not to upset other people.
- c I'm sensitive about my appearance.
- d When I'm in a bad mood, I sometimes hurt people's feelings.
- e In general, I think I'm quite a moody person.
- When people have personal problems, I think I'm usually very sympathetic and supportive.



spotlight sensitive

Sensitive has two meanings:

1 a positive meaning: 'able to understand people's feelings and problems' (e.g. sentence (b) above). OPP **insensitive.**

2 a more negative meaning: 'easily upset' (e.g. sentence (c) above).

Glossary

emotional having strong feelings, and often showing them. emotion N.

show your feelings express your feelings openly. orr hide your feelings.

upset sb make sb unhappy.

be in a bad mood feel angry or unhappy at a particular time. OPP **be in a good mood**.

hurt sb's feelings say sth that makes sb unhappy.

moody If you are moody, you often change and become angry or unhappy for no obvious reason.

sympathetic kind and showing you understand sb's problems (**sympathetic** doesn't mean 'friendly' or 'nice' in English).

supportive giving help to sb who has a problem.

- 6 Circle the correct answer.
 - ► Try not to hurt/upset his feelings.
 - 1 Sarah's not very emotional, and tends to show/hide her feelings.
 - 2 You can talk to Gary easily about your problems; he's very sympathetic/moody.
 - 3 Be careful what you say to Susan because she's very sympathetic/sensitive.
 - 4 You never know what Karen will be like because she's so moody/supportive.
 - 5 Brian is the most emotional/insensitive man I know; he upsets everyone.
 - 6 Love, anger, and fear are all emotions/moods.
- 6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.
 - ► Caroline is very <u>sensitive</u>. She seems to know when someone has a problem.
 - 1 Keep away from Elton he's in a bad ______today
 - 2 He his parents because he was so rude to them.
 - 3 My children cooked all my meals when I was ill. They were very ______.
 - 4 I broke my leg and it was really painful, but my friends weren't very
 - 5 I'm ______ a really good mood today. I think it's the fantastic weather.
 - 6 Paul tends to upset people and their feelings.
- ABOUT YOU Complete the right-hand column in the questionnaire, or ask another student.

8 I can talk about relationships

A Friendship

Word	Example	Meaning
friendship	Our friendship has always been very important to us.	the relationship between people who are friends.
make friends	I find it difficult to make friends.	form friendly relationships.
get on (well) with sb	Do you get on well with your classmates?	have a good relationship with sb. orr not get on with sb .
rely on sb reliable ADJ	I can always rely on my sisters. My brother's not very reliable .	feel sure that sb will do what they say they will do. syn depend on sb .
trust sb	You have to trust your friends.	believe sb is good and won't hurt you.
loyal	He was very loyal to my father.	being a friend to sb, even in difficult times. orp disloyal.
sociable	She's very sociable and gets on well with people.	A sociable person likes the company of other people. orp antisocial .
keep in touch	Simon is an old friend . We've always kept in touch .	(of two or more people) stay in contact by speaking or writing to each other.

1 Combine words in the box to make phrases.

rely ✓ friend get on well friends on someone ✓ a close keep make in touch on someone depend with someone

spotlight friend

An **old friend** is someone you have known for a long time; a **close friend** is someone you know and like very much. If you **are friendly** with sb, you treat them as a friend.

	rely on someone	THE THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPER		
---------	-----------------	--	--	--

2 Answer the question	ons.
-----------------------	------

- ► Another way of saying 'stay in contact with someone' is keep in touch
- 1 Rely (on) is a verb. What's the adjective?
- 2 What's a synonym for rely on? ___
- 3 A sociable person enjoys the company of others. What's the opposite?
- 4 What's the opposite of loyal?
- 5 What's the relationship between people who are friends?
- 6 What do you call a friend you like very much? A _____ friend

3 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals in the correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

- ► He's a bit antisocial. SOCIABLE He isn't very sociable.
- 1 He likes Ruben, FRIENDLY
- 2 She never phones us. TOUCH
- 3 I don't have a good relationship with my father. GET ON
- 4 I became her friend at university. MAKE
- 5 My boss is very reliable. RELY
- 6 I've known Donna for a long time. OLD



Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?

B When things go wrong

Perfect Weekend Channel Five

Wednesday 9 p.m. - 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who got to know one another at university, and now, five years later, get together for a weekend.

But things soon go wrong. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now realizes they have nothing in common, while Pete regrets the fact that he split up with Amy, the girl he used to go out with. Now Amy is in a serious relationship with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big row. Amy falls out with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning ...

spotlight have a row / an argument

Both phrases mean 'have an angry discussion', e.g. I had a row with Li.

The verb related to argument is **argue**, e.g. They **argued with** each other.

Glossary

get to know sb meet sb a number of times and become friends.

one another each other.

get together (of two or more people) meet for a social reason.

go wrong used when a problem happens in a situation or relationship.

realize sth begin to understand sth that you didn't know before.

have nothing in common (of two people) have no interests that are the same. orr have a lot in common.

regret sth / doing sth feel sorry about sth you did or didn't do.

split up with sb stop being in a romantic relationship with sb.

go out with sb have sb as a boyfriend or girlfriend. in a (serious) relationship having a long-term boyfriend or girlfriend.

fall out with sb argue with sb and stop being friendly with them.

0	e' 1			
e)	Circle	the	correct	word.

- ► They were very happy, then something got went wrong.
- 1 Hana's by/in a serious relationship.
- 2 Lian and Chen have fallen out/on.
- 3 Shall we come/get together next week?
- 4 They have lots in/on common.
- 5 She got/went out with Len at university.
- 6 How did you get/go to know Anya?

6	Complete	the	missing	words.
---	----------	-----	---------	--------

▶	out with Osman for two months, then we fell out over something stupid.
1	I don't get on with Dirk. We a a lot, and last week we had a terrible r
2	I'd like to get to k Anders better because we have a lot in c
3	Karli s up with him last week and I think she r it now; she's a bit
	depressed.
4	We have nothing in common. That's why I r I could never g
	o with him.

Complete the text.

Milo and I got to ▶ know	one (1)	when we wo	rked together during the
summer. We had a lot in (2)	and got	on really well, bu	t, unfortunately, he was in a
serious (3) at the	e time. Then it all wer	nt (4)	
had a big (5) a:	nd he (6)	up with her. We	e started to (7)
out with each other almost in			
relationship with Inez. He (9)	he was	still in love with h	ner, and that our relationship
was a big mistake.			

9 I can talk about families

A Family relationships

Marilyn Monroe was an only child from a single-parent family, but she lived with foster parents until she was seven, and then she was adopted by her mother's best friend. She got married at sixteen, and she got divorced three times.





Bill Clinton's father died before he was born. His mother, Virginia, had to find a way to **support** Bill, so she studied nursing, and Bill was **brought up** by his grandparents. When Bill was four, his mother married Roger Clinton, who became Bill's **stepfather**. Roger and Virginia had a son called Roger, who is Bill Clinton's **half-brother**

Glossary

only child a child with no brothers or sisters.

single parent a mother or father who looks after their children alone.

foster parent sb who looks after another person's child in their home for a time.

adopt a **child** take sb's child into your family and legally make them your child.

get divorced legally end your marriage. syn get a divorce.

support sb help someone live by giving them money, food, or a home.

bring sb up look after a child and teach them how to live.

stepfather a man who has married your mother but is not your father (related words: stepmother, stepson, stepdaughter, stepbrother, stepsister).

half-brother, half-sister a brother or sister who has either the same mother or the same father as you.

0	Complete	the	words	or	phrases.
---	----------	-----	-------	----	----------

	step mother	3	f parents	6	ad a child
		4	sfather	7	s parent
2	hsister	5	getorced	8	brsomebody up

Same or different? Write S or D.

She's a single parent. I She's a foster parent.

6 Our uncle supported us. | Our uncle brought us up.

	2
1	He's an only child. He hasn't got any brothers or sisters.
	He's my half-brother. He's my stepbrother.
3	He's my stepson. He's my wife's son by her first marriage.
	She was adopted as a baby. She lived with foster parents as a bab
	She's my half-sister. She's my mother's sister.

3	Co	emplete the questions.	ABOUT YOU
	1	Where were you b up?	
	2	Have you got any brothers or sisters, or are you an o child?	
	3	Do you have any hbrothers or -sisters?	
	4	Do you know anyone who is a s parent? If so, who?	
	5	Do you know anyone who has recently got d ?	

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

B Family history

I'm related to a member of the royal family.

We have ancestors who were Russian immigrants. They emigrated from Russia to Britain in the nineteenth century.

I'm from London, but previous generations of my family lived in Malta.

Some of my relatives were originally from China.

I look like my grandmother, but I take after my father. We're both very lazy!



Glossary

be related to sb

member

roval

ancestor

immigrant

emigrate from . . . to . . .

previous

generation originally

look like sb

take after sb

be in the same family as sb. relative N. SYN relation.

a person who is in a group such as a family or a club.

relating to a king or queen (see picture).

a person in your family who lived a long time ago.

a person who comes to a foreign country to live there.

leave your country in order to live in another.

happening before the one you are talking about.

all the people in a family born at about the same time.

• in the beginning, before other things happened.

have the same appearance as sb.

• be like an older member of your family.

6 Circle the correct answer.

- Our ancestors were Italian (mmigrants) members.
- 1 She's one of my ancestors/relatives; she was born in 1880.
- 2 Janet looks like/takes after her daughter.
- 3 My ancestors emigrated/related to Australia a century ago.
- 4 Are your relations/immigrants from Italy?
- 5 I'm originally/previously from Rome: that's where I was born.
- 6 He's married to a member/generation of the royal family.



ABOUT YOU

6 Complete the questions.

- What do you know about your ancestors
- 1 Are you r_____ to anyone famous?
- 2 Do you have a r_____ family in your country? If so, do you have a king or a q_____
- 3 Where do/did the p______ generations of your family live?
- 4 Which m____ of your family do you look l
- 5 Do you take a _____ your mother or your father? How?
- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

10 I can talk about weddings and funerals

A A typical British wedding



When two people are planning to get married, they can **choose** to have a **religious ceremony** or a **civil ceremony**. On the **wedding** day, the **groom**¹ is helped by a **best man**² who brings the **rings** to the wedding ceremony. The **bride**³ may have one or more **bridesmaids**⁴. Afterwards, there is a **reception** for the **couple** and the wedding

guests⁵. It's traditional for the best man and the groom to make speeches, and then everyone drinks a toast to the couple, and wishes them a long and happy marriage. After the reception, they usually go on their honeymoon. On the same day every year after that, the couple celebrate their wedding anniversary.

Glossary

choose sth PT chose PP chosen decide which thing you want. choice N.

ceremony a formal public event.

religious A religious ceremony takes place in a church, mosque, temple, etc. religion N.

civil A **civil ceremony** is a non-religious one. **wedding** a time when a man and woman get married.

rings



wedding reception a meal and/or party after a wedding.

traditional A **traditional** thing is sth that people have done for a long time.

make a speech give a formal talk to a lot of people at a special event.

drink a **toast to sb** raise a glass of wine, etc. to wish sb success or happiness.

wish sb sth say that you hope good things will happen to sb.

honeymoon a holiday for a couple who have just got married.

celebrate sth have a special meal, party, etc. to show you are happy about sth.

anniversary the date on which sth happened the previous year or in the past.

spotlight wedding and marriage; bride and groom

A wedding is the ceremony for a couple (two people who are getting married). Marriage is the relationship between a husband and wife. We went to my sister's wedding on Saturday. Jack and Dana's marriage lasted 40 years. On the wedding day, the couple are called the bride and groom. After they are married, they become husband and wife.

	mariage marriage		7	weding	
1	anniversery			honeymoon	
	I've choosen it		9		
3	tradicional		0	9	
	civile		1		
5	bridgesmaid celebrate		2	· ·	
6	celebrate	ì	3	religian	
Ci	rcle the correct word.				
▶	Jane and Mark's wedding		ge	is next Saturday.	
1	Mark is the groom/best n				
2	The bridesmaid/bride is N				
3	They have chosen/wished				
4	They've invited about sixt		_	2	
5 6	The reception will be before			ne wedding ceremony. emony by the couple/best man.	
7	Speeches are traditional a			* -	
8				Jane and Mark will be bride and g	groom/husband and wife
	Tribin and the one and the		,	sarra arra recent con a construction and a	,
Co	omplete the phrases usi	ng woi	rds	from the box.	
•	groom ceremony as	peech	n	nan a toast ceremony✓	
	reception your honeyn	noon	anı	niversary a happy marriage	
•	wedding Ceremony			5 bride and	
1	go on			6 celebrate your	
2				7 a religious	
3	wish someone			8 the best	
4	make			9 a wedding	
Cc	omplete the questions v	vith a s	aui	table word.	ABOUT YOUR COUNTE
1	Can people				/ DOOT TOOK COOK
	aceremony				
2	Does the groom have a			man at the ceremony?	
3	_			with her?	- University of the Control of the C
4	In the ceremony, do the b				
5	ls there usually a	- 1	·+~-	the ceremony?	and the second s
5 6	How many				
7	Is it for peo				
8	Do people usually drink a	OIC 10		to the bride and groom?	
9				on theirafter	
	the wedding?		3.		
0	Do people usually	tl	hei	r wedding anniversary every year?	
ΑE	BOUT YOUR COUNTRY	Answe	r tl	he questions in Exercise 4, or	ask another student.

1 graves 2 gravestone 3 mourners; the family are in mourning 4 coffin

Word	Example	Meaning
die (die of an illness) death N, dead ADJ	He died of old age. His death was very sad.	stop living.
widow	Mark's widow never remarried.	a woman whose husband has died.
widower	He's been a widower for years.	a man whose wife has died.
funeral	The funeral was at the church.	a ceremony after sb dies.
bury sb, burial N	He was buried this morning.	put a dead body in the ground.
cremate sb cremation N	My grandmother wasn't buried; she was cremated .	burn the body of a dead person as part of a funeral.
cemetery	He's buried in that cemetery .	a place where dead people are buried.
will N	He left his sister €10,000 in his will .	a document that says who will have your money or things when you die.
inherit sth inheritance N	I inherited €1,000 from my uncle.	receive money or things from sb when they die.

	One	letter is	missing.	Write the	words	correctly.
--	-----	-----------	----------	-----------	-------	------------

	ded dead	3	funral	6	deth
1	widoer	4	bry	7	cemetry
2	gravstone	5	inerit	8	cofin

8 Circle the correct words or phrases.

- ▶ We went to the coffin/cemetery/funerallyesterday.
- 1 The old lady died/is dead/is death last Tuesday.
- 2 My grandfather's name is on the death/will/gravestone.
- 3 I met Jack at the funeral/burial/widow.
- 4 My grandfather was inherited/buried/cremated when he died.
- 5 Mrs Erikson was a widow/widower/mourner.
- 6 My wife was standing near the grave/coffin/cremation.

Omplete the text.

I never knew my	grandfather, because he 🕨	died in 1960), before I was born. He died
(1)	heart problems. My grandm	nother was (2)	mourning for a long
time. She didn't	marry again; she was a (3)	for thirty	y years. I was very sad at the
news of her (4)	in 1990. I can r	remember her (5)	at our local church.
She was (6)	in the cemetery ne	ear the park. She left	my mother some money in her
(7)	_, and my uncle (8)	her house.	

Test yourself. Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

Review: People

Unit 5

1 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ My uncle is going black/grey).
- 1 Is she waiting for/expecting a baby?
- 2 Do you wear contact/content lenses?
- 3 Ahmed always looks very neat/plump and tidy.
- 4 You can't know/tell that she's in her fifties.
- 5 She goes to the gym every day; that's why she still has a great appearance/figure.
- 6 Olga was very bald/tanned after her holiday in Portugal.
- 7 You get a few scars/wrinkles round your eyes as you get older.
- 8 My boss is in his forties but still in good shape/figure.

2 Complete the sentences.

1	Emilio's well built, with broad
2	My dad's completely; now my older brother is his hair as well.
3	He got the on his leg when he fell off his bike as a child.
4	I don't think his has changed much in the last 20 years: he's still in good
5	My father has always been clean – never had a beard.

6 I wouldn't say she's fat, but she is quite

Unit 6

1 Complete the table.

Adjective	Meaning	Noun	OPP of adjective
ambitious	having a strong desire to be successful.	ambition	unambitious
g	happy to give more money and help than is usual.		
h	always telling the truth.	upore thanks of the upon property and the control	
t	able to accept ideas you don't agree with.		
p	able to stay calm and wait for sth.	of past taldies applicate assignately applicate	
a	thinking you are better than other people.		
h	able to work with effort and for a long time.	XXXXXX	

2 Complete the dialogues.

•	Is he energetic? ~ No, he's got no <u>energy</u> .
1	That was a mad thing to do.~ Yes, absolutely
2	Do you find him interesting? ~ No, I think he's a man.
3	Do you think you're hard-working? ~ To be honest, no – I'm quite
4	He's always looking for a fight. ~ Yes, I find him very
5	She never laughs at anything. ~ I know, she's got no of
6	He's such a happy person. ~ Yes, he's always very

Unit 7

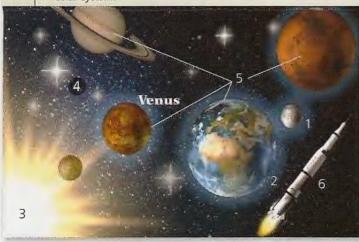
1	Replace the underlined word with either a synonym or an opposite.
	Is he always in such a <u>bad</u> mood? _{SYN} <u>terrible</u> OPP good 1 Michael is usually very <u>sensitive</u> . OPP
	2 Why are they so miserable? syn
	We were <u>amazed</u> to see her. SYN
	5 I was <u>terrified</u> when it happened. SYN
	6 I was <u>delighted</u> with my results. SYN
2	Are these sentences logical? If not, cross out the word that is not logical and replace it with a better word.
	 I was astonished that I passed the exam, but really miserable. delighted She's very emotional, so she tends to show her feelings a lot. This is logical. He was furious with me, and I was thrilled. She was so proud when her son did well, and really jealous. I was anxious before the flight, and scared stiff by the time we took off.
	4 I don't know what upset her, but she was thrilled.
	5 She can be very insensitive and often hurts people's feelings.
	6 I can't talk to her because she's insensitive and very supportive.
Jn	it 8
1	One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.
	Paulo split / with Simone last week. ها المحتاط المحت
2	Complete the sentences. Keep the meaning the same as in the sentences on the left.
	 Being friends with Tomi is important to me. My <u>friendship</u> with Tomi is important to me. He just likes being with people. He's very
	4 I went out for a meal with the others last week. We got for a meal last week. 5 We share a lot of interests. We have a lot in 6 They argue a lot. They have a lot of 7 She's sorry that it happened. She that it happened.
	8 I can always depend on my sister. My sister is very
Jn	it 9
1	Which words are being defined?
	▶ a member of your family. relative
	a person who comes from a foreign country to live in your country

	someone in your family who lived a long time ago. take a child into your family and make them your child legally. have the same appearance as someone. be like an older member of your family. end a marriage legally. all the people in a family born at about the same time.
2	Complete the text. John Lennon's ▶ancestorswere Irish (1)who came to live in Liverpool. John was an (2)child in a single (3)standard family. When he was five, his mother gave John to her sister, Mimi, to look after, so he was (4)up by his aunt. Lennon got married in 1962 to Cynthia, and had a son, Julian. Sadly, the marriage went wrong. The Lennons got (5)in 1968, and Julian was brought (6)by his mother. Lennon remarried in 1969, this time marrying Yoko Ono, who already had a daughter, Kyoko, from a (7)marriage which had ended in divorce. John and Yoko had a son called Sean. Julian and Sean are (8)brothers, and Julian and Kyoko are (9) brother and (10)sister.
Jr	nit 10
1	Find 11 more words or phrases related to weddings in the word square.
	D R I N K A T O A S T P C E R M W P D O C S A M E D D U E S J R O R C A R I N G D S H R U E X K E P I G D X O Z P C U E M A R R I A G E L E G A O W U O N V I N E P O S N U D O G G U E S T L P Y E S M I F U R O I G E H O N E Y M O O N O D E K L I S H M E X O N I C D B R I D E S M A I D H
2	When my neighbour Mr Patrick ▶ died recently, I went to his (1) . His wife died ten years ago, so he had been a (2) for a long time. He always wanted to be (3) in the cemetery next to his wife. There were a lot of (4) at the funeral: mostly family and old friends. His son, Malcolm, (5) his house, and I believe he's going to move back to live in it.
	My cousin, Elizabeth, got married last year. She and her ▶ husband , Martin, had to (6) whether to have a religious (7) or a (8) one. In the end, they (9) a religious wedding. She was a beautiful (10) , and Martin looked fantastic. Martin's brother, Steve, was the (11) man. It was a very traditional ceremony, and afterwards there was a (12) at a hotel near the church. Next week it will be their first wedding (13) , so the family is going to get together to (14) with a big party.

11 I can describe the universe

A The universe

- The moon is a satellite of the earth?: in other words, it circles around the earth. This takes approximately 28 days.
- The earth revolves around the sun every 365 days.
- The sun³ is a star, but seems much larger than other stars⁴ because it is so close to the earth. Light from the sun takes approximately eight minutes to reach the earth.
- Nine planets⁵ revolve around the sun. We call the sun and all its planets the solar system.
- Seventy-five years ago, sending rockets⁶ into space seemed far-fetched, but now it is a fact of life and we have gained considerable knowledge of the earth's satellite and our solar system.



Glossary

universe the whole of space and everything in it, including the planets and stars.

satellite an object that moves round a bigger object in space.

in other words used for saving sth in a different way.

circle sth go round sth in a circle. SYN revolve around sth.

approximately about, syn roughly.

reach sth arrive at a place.

space the area beyond the earth round the planets and stars.

far-fetched not easy to believe because it is very improbable.

gain sth get more and more of sth useful, such as knowledge or experience.

knowledge what you know and understand about sth.

One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the corre
--

- ▶ The sun circles the earth. moon
- 1 The planets are in the solar space.
- 2 The earth revolves around the moon.
- 3 The sun is a planet.

- 4 Man first walked on the sun in 1969.
- 5 Venus is a star.
- 6 We can send planes into space.
 - 7 The stars are part of the earth.

Complete the sentences.

- ► There are billions of stars in the universe
- 1 Is it important to send rockets into ?
- 2 The earth revolves around the sun: in other _______, earth is a planet in our solar system.
- five months to _____ the planet Venus. 3 The Venus Express rocket took
- 4 The idea of human life on Mars is far-
- We have _____ a lot of knowledge about the solar system in recent years.The earth _____ around the sun every 365 days.
- 7 My _____ of space is very limited. I'd like to learn more about it.
- 8 The moon is a _____ of the earth.



Test yourself. Cover the text and name everything in the picture.

B Scientific exploration

Why go to Mars?

Scientists have already sent satellites to explore the surface of Mars, and carried out experiments to see if they can discover any signs of life. So far, they haven't found any. but an analysis of rocks from Mars has confirmed that they were created by the presence of water and wind. In other words, life could have existed in the past.

Glossary

scientist a person who studies the physical world.

science N. scientific ADI.

a piece of electronic equipment that is sent into space satellite and moves around.

travel round a place in order to learn about it. explore sth exploration N.

carry out sth . do and complete a task.

* a scientific test done in order to learn sth. experiment

a careful study of sth in order to explain it. analyse v. analysis · say or show that sth is true or definite. confirmation N. confirm sth

• If sth exists, it is present in the real world. existence N.

spotlight discover or invent?

If you discover something, you learn about or find something for the first time. discovery N. If you invent something, you create something that didn't exist before. invention N.

They've discovered a new planet. Who invented the telescope?

Circle the correct word.

- There was an experiment exploration to test the levels of sugar in the blood.
- 1 These animals only explore/exist in South America nowhere else.

exist

- 2 They're going to explore/analyse the area to see what they can find.
- 3 The discovery/invention of the electric light bulb changed people's lives.
- 4 Scientists have carried out/confirmed experiments on animals.
- 5 Who invented/discovered the life-saving drug penicillin?
- 6 We've got the data, so now we need to analyse/explore it.

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

•	Television was an incredible invention	INVENT
	There's a report from a group of	SCIENCE
2	The of penicillin was of major importance.	DISCOVER
	We're waiting for of the results.	CONFIRM
4	There will be an of the findings in the laboratory.	ANALYSE
	The 60s and 70s were an exciting period for space	EXPLORE
	Humans are always looking for the of new life forms.	EXIST

6 Complete the sentences.

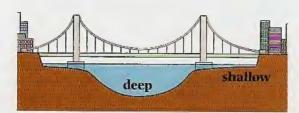
- ► The police <u>discovered</u> drugs inside his shoes. 1 At the moment there is no evidence that life _____ on Mars. 2 They left camp and went to _____ the countryside to see what they could find. 3 With the use of ______, TV can show news from anywhere in the world.
- 4 Scientists believe they will have to ______ out further experiments.
- 5 I don't know who first _____ the camera. Do you?
- that it's serious. 6 We knew he was ill, but the doctors have now ___

Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

12 I can talk about rivers and the sea

A Water

RIVERS wide river











Rivers flow to the sea. A river can be wide (width N) and deep (depth N) or narrow and shallow. If it rains heavily, a river can burst its banks1, which causes floods2. If there is no rain for a long time, the river dries up3.

THE SEA and OCEANS

The tide comes in (high tide) and goes out (low tide) twice a day.

Boats float4 on the surface5 of the water.



In bad weather, a boat can **capsize** and sink⁶. People on the boat may be trapped underwater and may drown.



Glossary

flow move smoothly (like water).

burst break open suddenly and violently.

ocean a very big sca, e.g. the Atlantic Ocean.

tide the regular change in the sea level caused by the moon and sun.

capsize (used of boats) turn over in the water.

underwater happening or existing below the surface of the water.

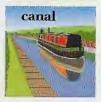
drown die in water because you can't breathe.

DIFFERENT AREAS OF WATER









spotlight cause v, N

To cause something is to make something (often unpleasant) happen.

The wind caused problems for cyclists.

The cause of something is the person or thing that makes it happen.

The police don't know the cause of the accident.

0	ne letter is missing	a. Write	the words correc	tív.		
	lak_lake		narro			Langua
1	flod		pudle			۱۳۵۱۱ و ۱۳۵۱ آموزش زبان ایرانیان
2	high tid		dron			
3	shalow	9	waterfal			
4	flot	10	ocen			
5	suface					
М	atch 1–8 with a–i					
•	the tidei	а	capsized			
1	burst	b	to the sea			
2	the river	С	its banks			
3	low	d	dried up			
4	the width	е	in the lake			
5	it flows	f	river			
6	drown	q	of the river			
7	a shallow	_	tide			
8	the boat	i	went out ✓			
Y	es or No? Write Y				C	
•	Do streams have a				Can a pond dry up?	+orfoll?
1	Is the depth of a ri				Can people swim up a wa	
2	Can you have a high				Can people sit on the ban	
3	Do puddles form v				Are canals deeper than se	
4 5	Can people float in Can people capsize			10	Does water flow in a pone	u:
5	Carr people capsize					
) C	ircle the correct w	ord.				
•	The River Seine flo	ats/(lows)	through Paris.			
1	The leaves floated	on the su	rface/underwater.			
2	I went sailing on th	ne pond/la	ike.			
3	The ship capsized/					
4	I swam across the	whole dep	oth/width of the riv	er.		
5	There's a little stre	am/tide a	t the end of our ga	rden.		
6	, ,		when the ship cap			
7			r here; it's very nari		allow.	
8	Our furniture got v	very wet d	uring the floods/tic	les.		
) c	omplete the texts	with a s	uitable word in t	he cor	rect form.	
W	e had some storms	with verv I	neavy rain last sumi	mer. Th	e river which runs through	the city
					oods. The water was quite	
					ou could see people's posse	ssions
) in the) .		
			- /5)	مماله مدا	mountains last weekend. T	ha
					mountains last weekend. T	
					and we ended up	
					(7) to the bo	
La	iter we discovered it	was very	uangerous there, a	nu iast.	year someone (8)	•

B The coast



Our local **beach**¹ is mainly **sandy**, with a few **rocks**² and **pebbles**³ down by the **shore**. There's a **steep cliff**⁴ rising above the beach, and children often play in the **caves**⁵

there. At the end of the bay there's a small harbour⁶. When the weather's bad, the sailing boats⁷ are protected from the waves⁸ and the rough sea. We often see large ships⁹ on the horizon¹⁰.



bay

coast the area of land that is close to or next to the sea or an ocean.

shore the land along the edge of the sea, a lake, etc.

steep A steep hill or cliff goes up quickly from a low place to a high one.

protect sb/sth from sth keep sb/sth safe from sth. protection N.

rough A rough sea has big waves.
opp calm.

6 Which words are being defined?

- ▶ a small stone you find on a beach pebble
- 1 the line between the land or the sea and the sky
- 2 a large piece of stone
- 3 an area of sand or small stones beside the sea
- 4 a high steep area of rock next to the sea
- 5 a large boat often used to carry passengers
- 6 the land at the edge of the sea where there is sand or rocks
- 7 a place where ships or boats are tied up and protected from the sea _____
- 8 a large hole in a cliff or under the ground
- 9 the area of land next to the sea
- 10 an area of the coast where the land goes in to form a curve

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ It was a nice day, so we went to the beach
- 1 When it's stormy, the sea gets very _____
- 2 A huge _____ hit the boat and we capsized.
- 3 The harbour _____ the little boats in bad weather.4 At one end of the beach there are rocks and pebbles, but the other end is _____
- 5 You can't climb the cliff; it's too ______.
- 6 I could see a boat _____ the horizon.



Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the picture. What are the words?

I can describe the climate Do Units 11 and 12 first

A The weather



Word/Phrase	Example	Meaning	
pour (with rain)	It's pouring outside!	rain heavily.	
soaking wet	It was pouring with rain and I got soaking wet.	extremely wet.	
drizzle v, n	It was drizzling when I left the office.	rain lightly, with very small drops .	
rainbow	Did you see the rainbow ?		
bitterly cold	It's bitterly cold today.	extremely cold.	
chilly	It gets chilly in the evening.	a little too cold to be comfortable.	
mild	It's been a very mild winter.	warmer than usual for the time of year.	
heatwave	I hate this heatwave!	a period of unusually hot weather.	
muggy syn humid	It's really muggy today.	warm and damp in an unpleasant way.	
mist n misty ADJ	You get a lot of mist in the mornings in autumn.	thin cloud near the ground which is difficult to see through (not as thick as fog).	
frost n frosty adj	There was a frost last night; there's ice on the car.	the weather condition when the temperature is below 0°C and ice forms on windows, the ground, etc.	
breeze n breezy adj	It's hot today, but there's a lovely breeze .	a light wind.	
gale	There were gales last night.	a strong wind.	

Tick (✓)the correct answer.

	Which is colder?	☑ a chilly day	☐ a mild day
1	Which is stronger?	☐ a gale	a breeze
2	Which is colder?	a breezy morning	a frosty morning
3	Which is warmer?	a muggy evening	a chilly evening
4	Which means more water?	☐ It poured for an hour.	☐ It drizzled for an hour.
5	Which is harder to see through?	fog	☐ mist
6	Which means more water?	☐ I got wet.	☐ I got soaked.

Complete the words in the texts.

While we were out, it suddenly started to ▶ pour with rain. We didn't have an umbrella,
so we got (1) s wet. When the rain stopped, the sun came out and we could see a
(2) r day for November.
She woke up. It was (4) b cold, and she noticed the (5) f on the windows. By
midday, though, the temperature had gone up. As she left the house, she felt a few (6) d of
rain on her head, then it (7) d for the rest of the day.
Last summer was unusually hot; we had a (8) h which lasted for several weeks, and it was incredibly (9) m and unpleasant at night.

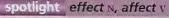


Test yourself. Cover the words/phrases and examples in the table and look at the meanings. What are the words?

OUR ENVIRONMENT

Global warming is the **gradual** increase in the average temperature of the earth's atmosphere, and is caused by harmful gases. Many environmentalists believe that most of this pollution is the result of human activities. Here are some of the effects:

- As the ice at the poles melts, sea levels could rise by almost a metre in the next century.
- · There will be more extreme and unpredictable weather, e.g. heatwaves or floods.

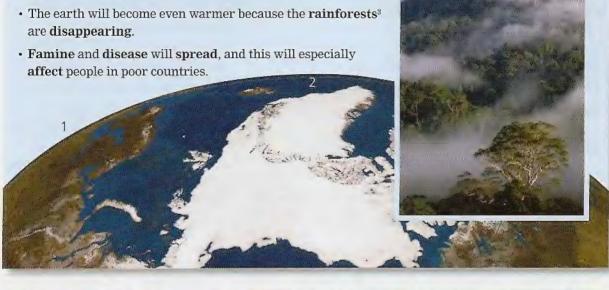


An effect is a change which is caused by something.

What are the **effects** of global warming?

To affect something means to make it change in a particular way.

Climate change will affect all our lives (= will make our lives change).



Glossary		etelenana (2.189/18), feeletia tuuri (266/18), (1	
climate	• the normal weather conditions	human	 connected with people.
	of a particular region.	melt	If you heat ice, it melts: it
(the) environment	the natural world; the air,		changes from a solid to a liquid.
	land, and water in which	rise	» increase; go higher. rise N. орр
	people, plants, and animals		fall v, n.
	live (an environmentalist is sb who studies the	extreme	 much hotter, colder, or more violent than usual.
	environment).	unpredictable	- If sth is unpredictable, you can't
gradual	 happening slowly over a long period of time. gradually ADV. 		say how it will change in the future. orr predictable.
the atmosphere	 the gases around the earth, 		predict v.
	planets, etc.	disappear	stop existing, syn vanish.
harmful	 causing damage, injury, or illness. harm sth/sb v. 	famine	• A famine is when there is not enough food in a country.
gas	 a substance like air, e.g. oxygen and hydrogen. 	disease	illness in people, animals, or plants.
pollution	 dirty and dangerous gases, chemicals, etc. that harm the environment. pollute v. 	spread	 affect more and more people or things.

4	Complete	the	words
V	complete	me	word

▶	h <u>uma</u> n	4	h r m f	8	l q u d
1	prdctble	5	a t m oere	9	d s s e
2	disear	6	e n v r o m t	10	c l m t
3	f m ne	7	n II t n		

d or bod? Write C or D

ac	ou of bau! Wifte d of b.		
►	This gas won't harm anyone. <u>G</u>		
1	Some kinds of animals are vanishing.	5	The weather is less extreme.
2	The flood water is falling	6	The earth's temperature is rising
3	Famine is spreading.	7	The ice at the poles is gradually melting.
4	This liquid is harmful.	8	The river is polluted.

6 Circle the correct word.

- ► Ice is a solid/liquid.
- How does the situation effect/affect you?
- 2 It's all very predictable/unpredictable: you never know what's going to happen.
- 3 My brother studies the environment/an environmentalist.
- 4 Global warming is caused by people/human activity.
- 5 Eat your ice cream quickly it's spreading/melting.
- 6 Water is a liquid/gas.
- 7 The rainforest is gradually disappearing/melting.

1 How worried are you about global warming?

5 What kind of pollution is common in your country?

8 There are harmful gases in the atmosphere/effect.

Complete the sentences.

	The earth is gradening getting warmer.
1	We had a lot of e weather last year: a long heatwave and gales in the autumn. I
	think it's all part of c change.
2	If you freeze water, it changes from a L to a s
3	The beach was p with oil, which seriously a the sea birds and animal
4	Environmentalists p that there will be a r in sea levels in the future.
5	With gwarming, some kinds of plants and animals are dvery fast.
6	Certain diseases s from person to person very quickly.
7	Phas a very h effect on the environment.
8	After many months without rain, there is a real danger of f in this part of Africa.

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

2	Do you have rainforests in your country? If so, what is happening to them?
3	Has the climate changed in recent years in your country? If so, how?
4	Which human activities do you think are harming the environment most?

Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

14 I can describe natural disasters

A Types of disaster











Hurricane1: this word is used especially of storms in the western Atlantic. It is a violent storm with very strong winds. In other parts of the world, especially Asia, it is called a typhoon.

Earthquake²: a sudden violent movement of the ground causing damage.

Tidal wave³: a very large ocean wave that is caused by a storm or earthquake, and which destroys things when it reaches land.

Volcanic eruption4: a volcano is a mountain with a hole in the top, and when it erupts, hot gases and lava are forced out into the air and onto the surrounding land.

Drought5: a long period with no rain. Crops die, and people may starve to death.

Glossary

disaster a very bad event. causing harm or death.

violent very strong and usually causing damage, violence N.

sudden happening very quickly. suddenly ADV.

ground the top part of the earth's surface that people walk on.

damage harm or injury caused when sth is broken, damage v.

destroy sth break sth completely so it can't be used again. destruction N.

erupt explode and throw out fire, burning rocks, etc.

lava hot liquid rock (see picture). surrounding that is near or around sth. surroundings N.

crops plants that are grown for food, e.g. rice and potatoes.

starve (to death) suffer (or die) because vou don't have enough food.

0	Combine five more pairs of words from the box to form compound words or phrases.

earth / volcanic tidal surrounding starve land eruption violent wave guake ✓ to death storm

earthquake

What nouns are formed from these adjectives and verbs?

➤ volcanic volcano 2 violent __ surrounding

1 destroy 3 erupt damage ____

3 Complete the words in the sentences.

▶ When the tidal wave reached land, it was over ten metres high.

1 During the h______, winds reached over 150 kph, and many homes were either completely d or badly d lt was a terrible d for the island.

They expect a period of d : the c will die and people could s

3 The volcano e without warning and the g was covered in red, hot l 4 There was a s_____ and v_____ storm. It was the beginning of the t__



Test yourself. Cover the texts and look at the pictures. Can you name each disaster and what happens?





EARTHQUAKE HITS KASHMIR

ate last night a sudden earthquake struck the region of Kashmir on the ate last night a sudden earthquake struck the respective for the borders of India and Pakistan, and hundreds of people are thought to have lost their lives as buildings collapsed while they slept.

Thousands have now been evacuated, but there are fears that many are still trapped inside their homes, so the death toll could rise. The damage has already been

7 The storm has done a great deal of damage. ...

8 He was injured while trying to take his son to safety from the fire.

considerable and the next 48 hours will be crucial, not only to rescue more people but also to try to maintain supplies of water and electricity.

Glossal y								
hit sth/sb	 make sudden violent contact with sth/sb. syn strike sth/sb. 							
collapse	llapse If a building collapses, it falls to the ground. collapse N.							
evacuate sb	te sb w move sb away from a dangerous place, evacuation N.							
fear	• a feeling that sth bad might happen. fear v.							
trap sb	[*] If sb is trapped , they are inside sth and cannot get out.							
death toll	 the number of people killed in a disaster, accident, etc. 							
considerable	• very large in size or amount.							
crucial	• very important.							
rescue sb	a take sb from a dangerous place to safety. syn save sb.							
maintain sth	make sth continue at a certain level.							
supply (PL supplies	an amount of sth that you need.							
Complete the tex	ct with words from the box in the correct form.							
supply trap ea	rthquake 🗸 maintain strike/hit fear collapse evacuate rescue							
(2) ar passed, the first job At the same time, to disaster area. One of	quake (1) a city, there is always a danger that buildings will ad people will be (3) inside. As soon as the immediate danger has is to (4) people from the area, and (5) those in danger the government will send in (6) of food, water, and blankets to the of the hardest things of all is to (7) a supply of clean drinking water, the (8) that more people could die.							
Replace the unde	erlined words with a different word that has the same meaning.							
1 Many buildings2 It could be a <u>ver</u>	e afraid that there will be more earthquakes. fear fell to the ground. y important decision.							
	ve all been moved from the village.							
	e who are inside their homes and cannot get out.							
	e the hurricane will <u>reach and attack</u> Florida within 24 hours.							
6 The number of	people killed could be as high as 2,000.							



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

15 I can describe animals and insects

A Creatures great and small: wild animals and insects 🕟



Glossary

creature a living thing such as an animal, bird, fish, or insect. **wild** living in natural conditions; not looked after by people. **insect** a small animal with six legs, one or two pairs of wings, and a body in three parts.

 ▶ tier _ tiger
 4 grilla
 8 sark

 1 lepard
 5 wale
 9 money

 2 elepant
 6 sider

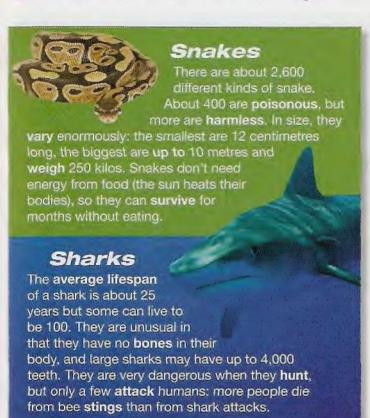
 3 eale
 7 nake

Which creature:

- 3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the creatures.

B Unusual facts about animals





Glossary

poisonous producing a dangerous substance (poison) that can kill or harm you.

harmless not causing damage, injury, or illness, opp harmful, harm N. V.

vary (of a group) be different from each other.

up to used when saving the most an amount can be.

weigh have a certain weight N. which is how heavy sth is.

survive continue to live in a difficult situation, survival N.

average normal or typical.

lifespan the time that sth is likely to live (for people, we say life expectancy).

bone



hunt sth go after sth to catch and kill it. attack sb/sth try to hurt sb/sth by using physical force. attack N.

sting a sudden pain caused by poison sent into the skin. sting v.

True or false? Write T or	rF	or F.
---------------------------	----	-------

- ► The average lifespan of a snake is 25 years. F
- 1 Most snakes are poisonous.
- 2 Most sharks are harmless to humans.
- 3 Some snakes are longer than ten metres.
- 4 Snakes can be as heavy as 250 kilos.
- 5 Sharks have bones in their body.
- 6 Sharks sting when they attack.

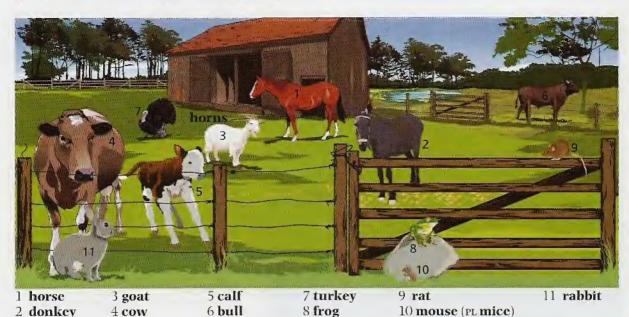
Answer the questions.

- Is attack a noun or a verb, or can it be both? both
- 1 What is the noun from the verb survive?
- 2 If animals have a *lifespan*, what do people have? Life
- 3 What is the noun from the verb weigh?
- 4 What is the adjective from poison?
- 5 What are the two adjectives from the noun harm?

Complete the words in these animal facts.

- ► The average lifespan of most bees is 30 to 35 days.
- 1 Some snakes can s..... for almost a year without food.
- 2 Nobody knows the a ______lifespan of a snake, but in zoos they can reach 30.
- 3 People h sharks for their meat and skin, but also for sport.
- 4 Over 100 people a year die from a bee or wasp s...
- 5 Snakes can grow u_____ to ten metres long.
- 6 The size of sharks can v_____ from the size of your hand to the size of a bus.

C Farm and small animals



spetlight cows and cattle A cow is the female animal that is kept on farms to produce milk. The male is a bull. Cows and bulls kept as farm animals can be called cattle. A group of cows is called a herd.

7	Complete	the	sentences.
	Complete	uic	scrittinees.

	A goat often has two horns on its head.
1	A young cow is a
2	The plural of mouse is
3	Cows, sheep, and produce milk that people drin
4	A is like a small horse with long ears.

- 5 A _____ is like a mouse, but is larger.
- 6 A lives in or near water, and can jump.
- 7 A bull is the adult _____ of the cow family.
- 8 A is a group of cows.9 A is a large bird, similar to a chicken, that can be eaten.
- 10 The general word for bulls and cows on a farm is

8 Complete these animals' names.

	r a t	3	b I	6	m e
1	h e	4	c f	7	d y
2	g t	5	f g	8	t y

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions or ask another student.

- 1 Which of the animals on this page do people eat?
- 2 Do people keep these animals in your country? If so, why? horses? ____ goats? bulls? donkeys? mice? -
- Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.

Review: The world around us

Unit 11

1 Complete the questions and answers.

	pace Quiz				
Q	How long would a ▶	rocket take t	o(1) r Mar	's?	
A	It would take (2) a	260 days.			
Q	Is the (3) e	the only (4) p	in the solar (5)	s where life (6) e	?
A	Yes, most (7) s	believe that to	be true.		
Q.	Who (8) d	the planet Venus?			
A	Most people think it	was the ancient Gree	eks.		
Q	Who (9) i	the first American r	ocket to go into (10) s	?	
A	Robert Goddard, in t	he early twentieth ce	entury.		
Q	What are 'Phobos' an	d Deimos'?			
A	They are two small n	100ns or (11) s	which (12) c	the planet Mars.	
Q	How many stars are	there in the (13) u	?		
A	Nobody knows for su	ıre, but some say (14	r ten tho	usand billion billion!	

2 Complete the definition	۱S.
---------------------------	-----

•	sun = the star that shines during theday
1	explore =round a place in order to learn about it
2	far-fetched =easy to believe
3	revolve around something = go round something in a
4	experiment = a scientific in order to learn or find out about something
5	scientist = a person who or teaches science
6	confirm = say or show that something is or definite
7	in other words: used for saying something in a way
8	invent = create something that didn't before

Unit 12

1 Circle the odd one out.

•	boat (harbour) ship							
1	rock wave pebble	3	float	sink drown	5	pond	flood la	ake
2	stream river puddle	4	bank	ocean shore	6	steep	shallow	deep

2 Complete the sentences.

	This river out to the sea.
1	The river is wide in some places but very in others.
2	Look! There's something floating on the of the water.
3	They're building a harbour to provide for the boats in bad weather.
4	The boat in bad weather and one person nearly drowned.
5	Looking out to sea, there were a couple of large ships on the
б	It wasn't very nice on the boat because the sea was so
7	The canal is ten metres wide and the water is about two metres
8	We had to climb a cliff, which was very difficult.

3	Or	ne letter is wrong in each line. Cross out the word that is wrong and write the correct ord at the end.
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	When does the time come in this morning?tide There are large socks on the beach. They travelled by chip. There's a sleep cliff by the shore. We have a number of fish in our pony. We saw some fishing boots. Look out! There's a big cave coming. It rained heavily and we had a floor. Why did the boat pink? The river blows down to the sea here. It's a very sandy peach.
Ur	nit	13
1	Co	mplete the sentences.
	1 2 3 4 5	Cars and factories are causing a lot of _pollution
2	Re	place the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.
	1 2 3 4 5	Pollution is damaging the air, land, and water in which we live. environment Global warming will cause damage to the environment. If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. With global warming, sea levels will get higher. Famine could affect more people in a larger area. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. Some rainforests will no longer exist.
Ur	it	14
1	Ma	atch two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box.
		hurricane earthquake ✓ tidal wave ½ volcanic eruption ⅓ drought
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	Many buildings collapsedearthquake Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain Winds reached 150 kph There was a huge volume of water We've had months without rain There was a sudden violent movement of the ground When it reached land, it destroyed everything along the beach Lava covered the surrounding villages People are starving to death Many trees were destroyed in the storm

- 2 Match 1-7 with a-h.
 - ► There has been considerable f
 - 1 The death ____
 - 2 The school and several houses ____
 - 3 They rescued ...
 - 4 They need to maintain ____
 - 5 People are trapped ____
 - 6 The earthquake struck ____
 - 7 People fear that

- a in the early morning.
- b more people.
- c inside buildings.
- d toll could rise.
- e more will die.
- f damage. 🗸
- g collapsed.
- h supplies.

Unit 15

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

tiger calf lion fly whale bee donkey gorilla shark leopard goat mosquito

Wild animals	Farm animals	Insects	Sea creatures
► tiger			
			XXXXXXXXXX
	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX

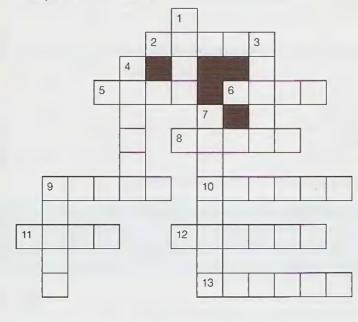
2 What is the connection between each creature on the left and a word on the right?

tigers / snakes leopards elephants eagles bears bees goats

beak stripes ✓ trunk spots sting horns fur poisonous

Tigers have stripes.

3 Complete the crossword.



ACROSS

2 birds have these



- 6 differ from each other
- 8 large animal, lives in the desert
- 9 bees can do this
- 10 a very intelligent animal
- 11 a young cow
- 12 how heavy something is
- 13 small creature with eight legs

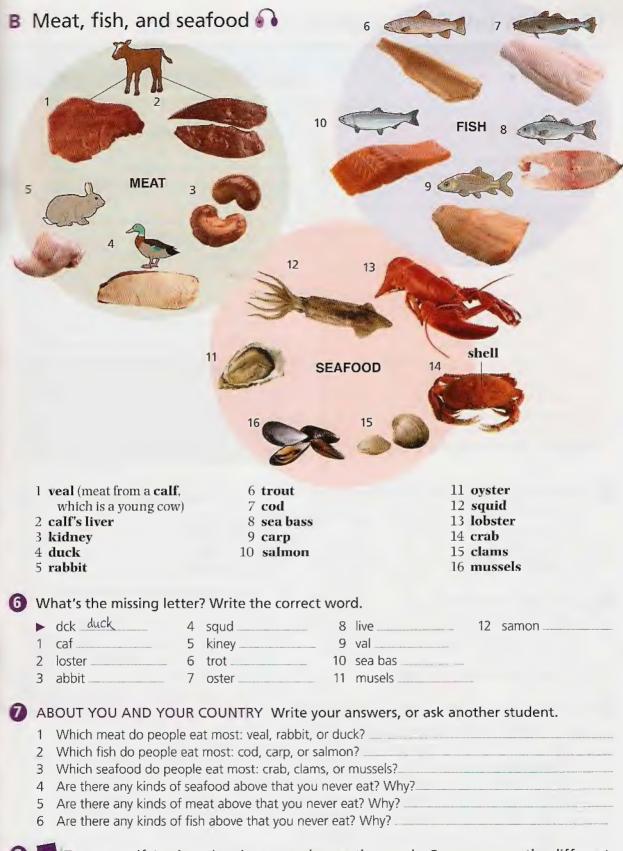
DOWN

- 1 plural of mouse
- 3 long thin creature, moves along the ground
- 4 you can die if you eat or drink this
- 7 not causing injury or danger
- 9 large sea creature, can be dangerous

16 I can describe a range of food

A Fruit, vegeta	bles, and herb	5	
1 plums 2 apricots	1 2 2	1 spinach 2 leek	2
3 raspberries 4 grapefruits	3 4	3 celery 4 broccoli	3 4
5 avocado 6 figs	5 stone 6	5 chickpea 6 fennel	s 5 6
7 coconut 8 passion fruits	7 8 0 8	7 artichoke 8 asparagu	A C STOLE OF PARTY
9 papaya 10 pomegranates	9 10	9 sweetcori 10 beetroot	1 9 10
herbs: 3 ba 1 parsley 4 th 2 mint 5 ro		2 3 4	5
Circle the odd one▶ fig coconut (particular)1 leek papaya a2 spinach basil n	arsley) raspberry rtichoke asparagus	3 celery asparagus 4 fig sweetcorn 5 stone grapefruit	oomegranate coconut
		which ones can you also ennel chickpeas	
3 Find five more frui ► BARSERPY raspl 1 MULP		OC 4 5	FRATUGERIPDAOVAOC
ABOUT YOUR COL	INTRY Write your an	swers or ask another stu	udent.
	se things in your cour	ntry? Yes. / Yes, but not n	
		parsley chick	
asparagus	artichoke	sweetcorn	fennel

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.



Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the different types of meat, fish, and seafood?

17 I can talk about diets and cooking

A Diets

Who needs to diet?

I never go on a diet: it's a waste of time. Diets list all the food that is good for you, but few people can keep them up. I haven't put on weight in twenty years. Here's why:

- I eat almost anything I like, but I don't eat a lot. And I don't eat junk food.
- I drink plenty of water. It's better for you than fizzy drinks, and cheaper too.
- I avoid snacks between meals because most of them are fattening.
- I've cut down on the amount of food I eat in the evening.
- I get plenty of exercise.

Glossary

a waste of time a bad use of your time (also a waste of money).

good for you SYN healthy. OPP bad for you / unhealthy.

keep sth up continue doing sth.

put on weight become heavier and fatter, orr lose weight.

junk food food which is not good for you (e.g. crisps).
 plenty of sth as much of sth as you need.
 fizzy drink a drink containing small bubbles of gas.
 snack a small amount of food usually eaten between meals.

fattening making you fatter.

cut down on sth have less of sth.

exercise physical activity that keeps you healthy.

spotlight diet

A person's **diet** is the food they eat. It can be a **balanced diet** (all the right food the body needs), or a **bad diet** (too much of the wrong food). Some people **diet** / **go on a diet**, which means eating less to lose weight.

		means earng less to lose weight.
0	Good for you or bad for you? W	te G or B.
	► healthy food G	4 fattening food
	1 junk food	5 snacks between meals
	2 fizzy drinks	6 a balanced diet
	3 plenty of water	7 plenty of exercise
2	Complete the sentences.	
	► Eat it – it's good for yo	
	3	diet. 4 That diet was a waste time.
	2 She's cut down cho	
	3 I tried to diet but couldn't keep it	. 6 We've got plenty orange juice.
3	Complete the sentences with a s	itable word. ABOUT YOU
	► You shouldn't eat much cream an	cheese: they're fattening .
		water: about 6 to 8 glasses a day.
		. One good way is going to the gym.
	3 It's difficult to down	on the amount of salt you eat.
	4 Doing lots of exercise is better that	n going on a
	5 I think diets are a or	time and money.
		t people can't them up.

B Cooking

Recipe for Cottage Pie



Ingredients

300 g minced¹ beef 300 g potatoes 1 large onion 1 carrot 2–3 chopped tomatoes 300 ml beef stock 1 tablespoon of flour²

butter, salt, and pepper

Peel³ the potatoes and boil until just cooked. Then mash⁴ them with butter.

Chop⁵ the onion and carrot. Fry⁶ the meat and vegetables quickly, then stir⁷ in the flour and cook for one minute. Add the stock, tomatoes, salt and pepper, and let it all cook slowly for 20 minutes. Then put it in a large dish, cover with the mashed potato and some butter, and bake in a hot oven⁸ for 30 minutes.

Glossary

recipe a set of instructions for cooking sth.

ingredients the food items you need to have to make sth to eat.

stock water with added flavour of meat, fish, or vegetables.

boil sth cook sth in water, usually in a **saucepan**.



fry sth cook sth in oil, usually in a frying pan.



add sth put sth together with sth else.

dish a container for serving food at the table (it is larger than a plate).

bake sth cook sth in the oven without oil or fat (with oil or fat = **roast**).

Which word is being defired	5	Which	word	İS	being	defined:
-----------------------------	---	-------	------	----	-------	----------

- ▶ Use a special machine to cut meat into very small pieces minCe
 1 Remove the skin
- 2 Cut into many pieces3 Put something with another thing
- 4 Press and mix until soft and smooth
- 5 Cook in water
- 6 Cook in oil
- 7 Cook in the oven without oil or fat
- 8 Cook in the oven with oil or fat

6 Complete the words in each sentence.

Boil the carrots in that saucepan
I've got a good r for spaghetti Bolognese, so we just need to buy the i the meat to the vegetables and fry it for about 10 minutes.
The frying p is fine, but I need a larger d to serve the meat on.
You have to b for about 40 minutes.
If you add some f , it will make the sauce thicker.

6 Add the s _____, then s _____ the rice continuously while it cooks.

Test yourself. Cover the text and say what you can see in the pictures. Then look at the food but cover the cooking instructions. How do you make Cottage Pie?

18 I can talk about money

A Buying things

They agree to take €20 off, so you buy it and get a receipt.

Next day, there's a problem with it, so you take it back and ask for a **refund** A phone costs €120. You can't afford it, but there's a scratch¹ on it, so you ask the shop assistant for a discount.



They refuse, so you wait for the sales

Then, it is reduced to €80 – a bargain.

You buy it and pay cash. You give them €100 and they give you €20 change.

-					
	Compl	ete	the	sent	ences

- If something costs €10 less than usual, it has €10 off
- 1 If you don't have enough money to buy something, then you can't ______ it.
- 2 If you ask to pay less than the normal price, you are asking for a ______.
- 3 If the normal price is €60 and the shop sells it for €50, then it has been by €10
- 4 The time when shops sell goods more cheaply than normal is called the ______.
- 5 If you buy something which is a good price for the product, you can say it's a ______.
- 6 If you pay with €50 for something that costs €30, you should get €20
- 7 When you have paid, the shop assistant should give you a _____.
- 8 If you want your money back on a product, you can ask for a ______.

Glossary

- afford sth If you can afford sth you have enough money to pay for it.
- **scratch** a mark on the surface of sth made by a sharp object (*see picture*).
- **discount** a cut in the usual price of something. SYN **reduction**.
- off If sth has €20 off, it costs €20 less than usual. receipt a piece of paper that shows that sth has been paid for.
- refund an amount of money paid back to you when you return sth to a shop.
- **the sales** a time when shops sell things at a lower price.
- reduce sth make sth less in size, quantity, or price. reduction N.
- bargain sth that is a good price or is cheaper than usual.
- **change** If sth costs €2 and you give the assistant €5, you get €3 **change**.

2	(Complete the questions in the questionnaire.	ABOUT YOU
	•	Do you keep the receipt when you've bought something?	I often lose it
		When you go shopping, do you always look for a b?	
	2	If you saw a product in a shop that had a s on it, would	
		you ask the shop assistant to take money o?	
	3	Do you always check your c when you pay?	
		Do you often wait and buy things in the s? If so, what things?	
	5	Do you often take things back and ask for a r?	

3 ABOUT YOU Answer the guestions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

B I'm not very good with money

LOTTERY WINNER LOSES EVERYTHING!

Maria Costas was an ordinary working mum without much income until she won over €3m on the lottery and became a very wealthy woman. She immediately bought a house worth €1m, a car that cost a fortune, and jewellery valued at €250,000. Unfortunately, the house was a waste of money. She owned it for six months, never lived there, then had to sell it for much less than she paid for it. Maria also wasted huge amounts of money on designer clothes and foreign holidays, and within eighteen months she was completely broke. Now she owes the bank over €5,000, and has credit card debts as well.

meanings?

Cover the text. Answer the questions.

Glossary	
income	 the money you earn from work, plus any other money you receive.
wealthy	rich. SYN well off.
worth	 If a flat is worth €3m, you could sell it for €3m (that is the value).
cost a fortune	be very expensive.
value sth at sth	decide what sth is worth, or what you could sell it for.
waste of money	· a bad use of money.
own sth	 If you own sth, it is yours; it
	belongs to you.
huge	very large. syn massive.
amount	a quantity of sth; a sum of money.
broke	* INF having no money.
owe sb sth	· have to pay money to sb for sth they

have done or given.

an amount of money that you owe sb.

	 How did Maria become wealthy? How much was her new house worth? What was her jewellery valued at? How long did she own her new house? Why was the house a waste of money? How much does she owe the bank? Does she have any other debts? 	She won the lottery.	المجالية ا
5	Rewrite the sentences using the words in	n capitals.	
	My boss has a lot of money. WEALTHY 1 It's a very large house. HUGE 2 The house is worth £2,000,000. VALUE 3 Rani hasn't got any money. BROKE 4 The flat doesn't belong to me. OWN 5 Her shoes were very expensive. FORTUNE 6 Gisela has debts of €5,000. OWE		
6	Complete the sentences.		
	 The watch went wrong after two months; My uncle won a huge of months I haven't got any money; I'm completely It's a nice flat, but it isn't half It's an absolutely school: then He's got a day job and an evening job, so have 	ney, so he's very off now. f a million euros. re are about 2,500 students.	

Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the

debt

19 I can talk about sleep

A Before, during, and after sleep 🕟

BEFORE: You feel sleepy, start yawning1, and decide to go to bed. You might put on pyjamas2 or a nightie³, perhaps set the alarm⁴, and then get into bed. Soon, if you're lucky, you fall asleep.

DURING: When you're asleep, you have dreams⁵ and possibly nightmares. Some people snore6; at this point they're fast asleep.

AFTER: 7.30 a.m. The alarm **goes off**. It might wake you up, or you might be wide awake already. People without an alarm might oversleep, others might decide to have a lie-in.

Glossary

sleepy tired and ready to go to sleep.

fall asleep start sleeping, syn go to sleep.

asleep sleeping.

nightmare a bad dream.

fast asleep sleeping deeply. SYN in a deep sleep. OPP wide awake.

go off ring or make a noise.

wake sb up make sb stop sleeping.

oversleep sleep longer than you should or want. have a lie-in INF stay in bed later than usual.













Replace the underlined word or phrase with words or phrases with the same meaning.

I felt ▶ tired, so I went to bed quite early last night. I went to sleep without a problem and very soon I was in a deep sleep. Unfortunately, in the middle of the night, I had a bad dream which woke me up. After that, I was awake for ages and didn't fall asleep again until about half past four, so when the alarm rang just after seven, I didn't hear it and I carried on sleeping. When I finally woke up, I felt terrible.

▶ sleepy
1
2
3
4
5
6

Complete the sentences.

- 1 Barry's still in bed and he's fast ▶ asleep . Do you want me to him up? 2 I felt really _____, so I went to bed.
- 3 I forgot to _____ my alarm last night, and I'm afraid I _____ this morning.
- 4 I don't have to get up early tomorrow, so I think I'll have a
- 5 It was after midnight but I still felt wide
- 6 I felt really tired I couldn't stop _____
- 7 My husband wears red _____ in bed and _____ so loudly that he keeps me awake.

Test yourself. Cover the text above. Say what you can see in the pictures.

B Sleep habits

A Company of the Comp	ABOUT YOU
Antonio: 'I sleep like a log wherever I am.'	
Ella: 'If I eat late, I often have a restless night.'	
Hiroko: 'I need a good night's sleep, otherwise I can't concentrate the next day.'	
Raul: 'Lack of sleep makes me really irritable.'	LULIU PRIMININI
Suzanna: 'I often have nightmares and wake up feeling exhausted.'	151111111111111111111111111111111111111
Carla: 'I've always been a heavy sleeper - nothing disturbs me.'	LILLING REPORT
Nick: 'I suffer from insomnía, so I never get much sleep.'	
Agnieszka: 'During the day, I often have a nap.'	
Omar: 'When there are things on my mind – like exams – I sleep really badly.'	

Glossary

habit a thing you do often, almost without thinking.

sleep like a log sleep very well. OPP sleep badly. have a restless night be unable to sleep well and often wake up.

concentrate (on sth) give all your attention to sth.

lack of sth a situation in which you don't have enough of sth (e.g. money, food, or sleep).

irritable becoming angry easily.

exhausted extremely tired, physically or mentally.

- a heavy sleeper a person who doesn't wake up easily. OPP a light sleeper.
- **disturb sb** do sth to stop sb who is trying to sleep, work, etc.
- **suffer from sth** have the experience of sth unpleasant.
- insomnia If you suffer from insomnia, you are often unable to sleep.
- have a nap have a short sleep, e.g. for half an hour. on my mind If sth is on your mind, you're thinking or worrying about it.
- Find six more phrases in the box.

concentrate \checkmark have like a log insomnia have a restless sleep a nap a heavy on something \checkmark on night suffer from sleeper my mind

- concentrate on something
- **5** Complete the sentences with suitable words or phrases.
 - ▶ I get very irritable if I don't sleep well.
 - 1 These days I often have a _____ after lunch; it's almost become a ____
 - 2 After a relaxing bath and a hot drink, I always sleep
 - 3 I never sleep more than three hours a night I ______ insomnia.
 - 4 I had too much to eat and drink last night, and I had a very _____ night.
 - 5 I didn't sleep well last night because I've got a lot of things on my
 - 6 Nothing ____ me at night I'm a very ____ sleeper.
 - 7 I was absolutely last night and I slept for ten hours.
 - 8 I'm afraid I'm a bit irritable at the moment. I'm suffering from a ______ of sleep.
- 6 ABOUT YOU Read the statements at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student.

20 I can talk about injuries

A Burns and cuts



Hold the affected area under **running water**¹ for 15 minutes. **Cover** it with a dry, clean **dressing**² to **prevent infection**. If **symptoms** of infection **develop**, see your doctor.



Wash and dry your hands **thoroughly**. Clean the **wound** under running water. Dry the area, and put a dressing over it **temporarily** while you clean the skin around the wound. Cover the cut completely with a dressing, or **bandage**³ it. It should **heal up** in a few days.

Glossary

cover sth put sth over sth, especially to protect it.
stop sth from happening. prevention N.
an illness caused by bacteria or a virus.

symptom • a change in your body which is a sign of illness.

develop grow or increase.

thoroughly • in a very careful and complete way.

wound an area of damage to part of your body (especially a cut).

temporarily • for a short time only.

heal or heal up • become healthy again.

Complete the words.

 ▶ prevent
 3 th_r_ghl
 6 s_mpt_m

 1 inf___ion
 4 w__nd
 7 t__por_r_ly

 2 b_nd_ge
 5 bl_d
 8 d_v_l_p

2 Complete the texts.

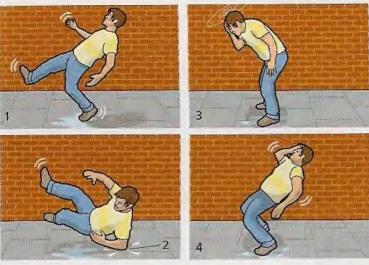
I was cooking last weekend and picked up a hot pan and waster for fifteen minutes, then I held the (1) b under (2) r water for fifteen minutes, then I (3) c it with a dressing. I made sure it was clean because you have to (4) p infection. Since then, it's got a lot better and I haven't had any (5) s of infection.

I cut my hand yesterday. I cleaned the (6) w under running water, then covered it (7) t with a (8) d , and washed the skin around it. I couldn't find a (9) b , so I went to the chemist's for one. I probably didn't clean the wound (10) t enough, as it hasn't (11) h very well, and I think I've got an (12) i



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B A nasty injury 🕟



The other day I slipped and fell backwards and banged my elbow2 on the ground.

I started to feel dizzy3 and then I fainted4. I was unconscious for a minute or so.



When I came round, my arm was very painful. It was quite swollen and bruised5, but it wasn't bleeding. I realized it was a serious injury, so I went to hospital.

True or false? Write T or F.

- 1 If you bang your head, it always bleeds.
- 2 If you faint, you become unconscious.
- 3 If you lose blood, you always faint.
- 4 A bruised knee looks blue.
- 5 A nasty burn is a serious burn.
- 6 If you slip, you can easily fall.
- 7 Your elbow is at the end of your arm.
- 8 A swollen finger is bigger than usual.
- 9 Feeling dizzy is very painful.
- 10 Backwards is the opposite of forwards.

Glossary

nasty very bad or unpleasant.

injury an area of damage done to sb's body, especially in an accident, injure v.

backward(s) in the direction behind you. opp forward(s).

bang sth hit a part of your body against sth when you are moving.

dizzy feeling as if everything is turning around and you might fall.

unconscious in a state like sleep, often caused by an injury, opp conscious.

come round become conscious again, orrs faint, pass out.

swollen larger than usual because of an injury. bleed lose blood from your body.

A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

- ► The ball hit him next to his eye; his eye was quite the next day. bruised I on the ice and fell over.
- 2 I know he slipped, but did he fall or forwards? 3 He fainted, and when he came he didn't know where he was.
- 4 Nobody was killed, but three people were in the accident.
- 5 She her head on the door and fell to the floor.
- My finger was so I put a dressing on it.

6 ABOUT YOU Which of the following have you done or experienced? Tick them.

- 1 had a swollen eye.
- 2 fainted in a public place.
- 3 had a serious injury.

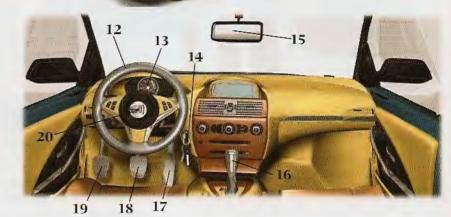
- 4 slipped and fallen into a river.
- 5 had a nasty burn on your arm.
- 6 lost quite a lot of blood in an accident.

21 I can talk about cars and driving

A The car

- 1 bonnet
- 2 windscreen wiper
- 3 windscreen
- 4 boot
- 5 wheel
- 6 tyre
- 7 door handle
- 8 wing mirror
- 9 number plate
- 10 headlights
- 11 engine
- 12 steering wheel
- 13 speedometer
- 14 ignition
- 15 rear-view mirror
- 16 gear stick/lever
- 17 accelerator
- 18 brake
- 19 clutch
- 20 horn





Combine words from the box to form six more compound words.

rear-view ✓ steering door windscreen lever mirror number wing gear wheel mirror ✓ wiper handle plate

- rear-view mirror
- Outside the car or inside the car?
 Write O or I.
 - ▶ clutch I
 - 1 tyre
 - 2 speedometer_
 - 3 steering wheel
 - 4 headlight
 - 5 brake
 - 6 rear-view mirror
 - 7 wheel
 - 8 horn
 - 9 windscreen wiper ____

3 Complete the sentences.

If you want to . . .

- start the car, turn on the ignition
- 1 stop, put your foot on the
- 2 change gear, put your foot on the
- 3 go faster, put your foot on the
- 4 store luggage, open the
- 5 look at the engine, open the _____.
- 6 see at night, turn on the
- 7 turn a corner, look in your _____
- 8 drive in the rain, turn on the ____
- 9 warn someone, press your ...
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. How many things can you name?

B Driving tips

TIPS FOR SAFER DRIVING

- Always be prepared for bad road conditions and bad drivers.
- On wet roads, brake, steer, and accelerate gently to avoid skidding.
- Watch out for motorcyclists and cyclists; give them plenty of space when overtaking.
- In car parks, reverse into a parking space rather than drive into it.
- Keep to the speed limit and don't drive too close to the vehicle in front.

Glossary

tip a piece of practical advice.

be prepared for sth - be ready and able to deal with any problems.

prepare v.

brake go more slowly or stop a vehicle by using the

brakes

steer control the direction a vehicle is moving in.

accelerate go faster, orr slow down.

skid suddenly move sideways without control.

watch out be careful because there is a possible danger.

overtake sb/sth
• go past sb/sth that is going more slowly.

reverse go backwards in a car.
rather than instead of; in place of.

speed limit the highest legal speed at which you can

drive on a road.

close to sth near sth.

spotlight keep

Keep often means 'continue or stay in a particular place or condition'.

 $\textit{Keep}\ to\ \textit{the speed limit}.$ (Stay below the speed limit.)

Keep left. (Stay on the left.)

6 Cover the glossary, then complete the meanings.

- ▶ brake = <u>stop</u> a vehicle
- 1 overtake = go ____ another car
- 2 accelerate = go
- 3 reverse = go

- 4 tip = a piece of _____
 - 5 steer = control the _____ of the vehicle
 - 6 rather than = _____o

6 Complete the sentences.

- You shouldn't overtake on a bridge.
- 1 The weather was awful and I wasn't really ______ for it.
- 2 I never go over the speed ______, or drive too ______ to the cars in front.
- 3 He crashed into the tree after he _____ on the wet road.
- 4 There's a school on the corner, so ______ out for small children.
- 5 Do you always _____ to the speed limit?
- 6 I parked in the street _____ than the car park because it's free.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Are these useful tips, or did you know them already?
- 2 Do you usually brake and accelerate gently?
- 3 Do you usually reverse into parking spaces in a car park? Why/Why not? _
- 4 Are there times when you don't keep to the speed limit? ___
- 5 Do you know what to do if your car skids?
- 6 What do you do to prepare for bad winter weather?



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

22 I can describe travel problems and accidents

A Trains and planes 📦

'We had **trouble** getting to the airport because we **got held up** in traffic.'

'I wanted to leave at 8.30, but my day return was only valid after 9.30.'

'The train was due at 9.42 but it didn't get in until 10.25.'

'I was late because they cancelled my train without warning.'

'The flight from Heathrow was delayed, so I missed my connecting flight to Palermo.'

'My brother was meant to pick me up at the airport, but he didn't turn up.'

- Good news or bad news? Write G or B.
 - ▶ I got my connecting flight. G
 - 1 The train was cancelled.
 - 2 The train's due in a minute.
 - 3 They didn't turn up.

Glossary

trouble (doing sth/with sth) a situation that causes a problem.

get/be held up If you get held up or are held up, sth has caused you to be late. syn be delayed.

day return a ticket to travel to a place and back again on the same day.

valid acceptable and able to be used.

due expected to arrive or happen.

get in (usually of a train or coach see picture) arrive.



cancel sth decide that sth that has been planned will not happen.

warning information that sth bad may happen.

connecting flight a flight that leaves soon after another one arrives.

meant to do sth If sb is or was meant to do sth, they have been asked to do it.

pick sb/sth up go to a place and collect sb/sth (usually in a car).

turn up arrive or appear (often used in the negative).

- 4 This ticket is still valid.
- 5 I couldn't get a day return.
- 6 They didn't get held up. .
- 7 We were delayed.

- 2 Complete the sentences.
 - My husband was meant to meet me, but he didn't turn up
 - 1 They've just said the train is _____ in five minutes, so that's good.
 - 2 The plane to Madrid was late, so I missed my flight to Malaga.
 - We had a lot of _____ at the border: we were _____ for two hours.
 Passengers arrived late because the train company _____ two trains this morning.
 - 5 I was ______ to meet them at the station, but I got _____ up in the traffic.
 - 6 What time does your train _____ in?
 - 7 He's gone to the airport to _____ them up.
 - 8 There was no _____ that trains might be cancelled.
- ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
 - 1 Do most trains get in on time, or are they often delayed? If delayed, why?
 - 2 When did you last miss a train or plane? Why, and what happened?

B On the roads

Hi Sammy

We've just got back from a little **trip** to Spain. We stayed **overnight** in Malaga, then **hired a car** and drove up to Seville, **stopping off** at Osuna **on the way**. We loved Seville – you really must go there. We also went down to Cadiz, **via** Jerez, but the journey was a **nightmare!** We **got stuck** in a **traffic jam** for hours, and when we finally **ended up** on **the outskirts** of Cadiz, there was more **heavy traffic** because of **the rush hour**. Still, it was nice when we got there. We went to . . .

spotlight way

The **way** is the route or direction that you need to take to get somewhere.

Is this the way to the bank? I went the wrong way and got lost. We stopped on the way to Scotland. I saw him on my way to school.

Glossary

trip a journey to a place and back again, for business or pleasure, often for a short period of time (e.g. a day trip, a business trip).

overnight for one night.

hire a car pay to use a car for a short time. syn rent a car.

stop off stop during a journey to do sth.

via going through a place (to get to another place). nightmare INF an experience that is very unpleasant.

get/be stuck be unable to move easily.

traffic jam a long line of cars moving very slowly. **end up** find yourself in a place or situation you didn't plan.

the outskirts (PLN) The outer part of a town or city is called the outskirts.

heavy traffic a lot of cars on the road at a particular time.

the rush hour the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work.

4	Match words on the left with words on the right to make eight m	ore words or phrases.
	heavy ✓ rush hire traffic off way traffic ✓ stuck up the wrong stop get end on a car hour the way jam	
	heavy traffic	
6	Complete the definitions.	
	The outer part of a town or city is the outskirts. A journey to a place and then back again is a	
0	Complete the questions.	ABOUT YOU
	 1 Have you or your family ever a car? If so, when and why? 2 On long journeys, do you want to get from A to B as quickly as possible, or do you like to off somewhere on the? 3 Do you often get in traffic? 4 Do you ever go on day? If so, where to? 	

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

C A road accident

Here is the latest travel news

There's been a serious accident on the M3 outside Winchester. It occurred just after 7.00 a.m., when a van skidded on the wet road and collided with other vehicles. The accident has blocked two lanes of the motorway. Emergency services are at the scene of the accident, and motorists are being advised to avoid the area.

And on the M23 at Junction 9 near Gatwick, an ambulance has broken down while taking an injured driver to hospital. This is causing delays for traffic on the way to the airport . . .



Glossary

serious accident

OCCUP EMI.

· a bad or dangerous accident.

happen, especially in a way that has not

been planned.

van



skid

» suddenly move forwards or sideways without

any control.

collide with sth

hit sth very hard while moving.

SYN crash into sth.

vehicle

• FML e.g. a car, bike, bus, or lorry.

block a road, etc. lane

make it difficult for anything to pass. a part of a wide road marked by painted

white lines.

emergency services at the police, ambulance, and fire services.

avoid sb/sth ambulance

stay away from sb/sth.



break down injured

o (of a vehicle) stop working.

· hurt physically.

- One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.
 - injury injured
- serius

6 bloc

- 1 amblance
- emegency ____
- 7 avid

2 veicle ____

- ocur
- 8 colide
- Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.
 - ▶ Was it a bad accident? _serious
 - 1 Fortunately the driver wasn't hurt.
 - 2 There are too many <u>cars</u>, <u>vans</u>, and <u>lorries</u> on the road. ___
 - 3 The van crashed into another car.
 - 4 The car went sideways out of control on the icy road.
 - 5 The police and an ambulance arrived within minutes.
 - 6 The accident <u>happened</u> late last night.
- 10 Complete the sentences.
 - The car was hit by a big van
 - 1 We couldn't get by because there was a fallen tree ___ the road.
 - 2 I think the driver must have _____ on the ice.
 - 3 There was a ______ accident last week when a woman was nearly killed.
 - 4 You should move into the outside to overtake another car.
 - 5 The car __ on the way to the airport and I had to ring for help.
 - 6 Several people were ______, and they were taken to hospital.

Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

23 I can talk about clothes and fashion

A Clothes







1 cap

- 2 cotton blouse/shirt
- 3 belt.
- 4 waistcoat
- 5 denim skirt
- 6 high-heeled leather boots
- 7 earrings
- 8 bracelet

- 9 silk dress
- 10 short sleeves
- 11 collar
- 12 tights
- 13 necklace
- 14 ring

- 15 V-neck sweater
- 16 button
- 17 suede shoes
- 18 pocket

spotlight jewellery and material

Necklace, bracelet, ring, and earrings are all examples of jewellery. Cotton and silk are types of material. SYN fabric.

Leather and suede are materials made from animal skin.



1 bra



2 knickers



3 slip



4 underpants 5 vest

/*************************************	_			
60	Comp	lete	the	words.

5 s___de

>	kn <u>i</u> ck <u>e</u> rs
1	n d r w r
2	m t 1
3	s I v
4	t i t s

Cover the words and look at the pictures. Are these statements true or false? Write T or F.

- Amy's wearing a necklace. F
- 1 Amy's wearing a belt.
- 2 Gavin's wearing a ring.
- 3 Beth's wearing tights.....
- 4 Beth's dress has got two buttons on it. ____ 9 Amy's wearing earrings. __
- 5 Gavin's wearing denim jeans.
- 6 Amy's blouse has got short sleeves.
- 7 Beth's dress has got two pockets.
- 8 Beth's wearing high-heeled shoes.
- 10 Amy's wearing a denim skirt.

Complete the table with words from the box.

cotton skirt waistcoat vest bracelet leather can underpants ✓ ring necklace slip bra blouse suede earrings silk

Underwear	▶ underpants	
Jewellery		
Material(s)		
Clothes		

Complete the questions with words from the box.

belts leather cap ✓ denim ring neck sleeves silk bracelet material

ABOUT YOU

- Do you ever wear a _____? If so, when and why?
 Do you wear a _____? If so, on which finger(s)?
 Do you wear a _____? If so, on which wrist?

- 3 How many leather have you got?4 How many pairs of jeans have you got?
- 5 What have you got that is made of _____ or _
- 6 Have you got any V- ____ sweaters? If so, what colour?
- 7 In summer, do you wear short _____ a lot?
- 8 Do you have a favourite _____? If so, what?
- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 4, or ask another student.



Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the items?

B Fashion

Three golden rules

for fashion

ashion expert Alyson Walsh says that every stylish woman should have a 'capsule wardrobe' - a timeless collection of clothes for every occasion. This includes: a little black dress, the perfect leans. eather handbag, a fine wool jumper, white shirt, kneeength skirt, etc. Being stylish is about what suits you and your figure. Here are three golden rules:

- Spend as much as possible on the basics (your capsule wardrobe) and don't worry too much about fashionable clothes - you probably won't wear them after one season.
- · Choose neutral colours: black, cream, white, and dark blue. Neutrals look elegant, and are versatile and easy to match. Just think of Armani fashions, year after year.
- · A simple outfit can be transformed with the latest fashion accessory, e.g. a belt.

Glossarv

stylish suit

attractive and fashionable. style N. . If something suits you, it looks

good on you.

figure

the shape of the body, especially

that of a woman.

fashionable

* popular at the present time.

OPP unfashionable.

neutral

(of a colour) not strong or bright.

neutral N.

elegant versatile attractive and well designed. having many different uses.

look good with something else.

matching ADJ.

outfit

match

a set of clothes that you wear

together.

transform sth + change sth completely, usually in

a positive way.

latest

new or very recent.

accessory

sth you wear or carry that goes with your clothes, e.g. a bag.

Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ It's a very versatile fashionable jacket I can wear it on different occasions.
- 1 You should buy that blouse; it suits/matches your skirt.
- 2 She wore a very unfashionable/stylish jacket it looked awful.
- 3 I need to get a new figure/outfit for my brother's wedding.
- 4 This coat is the latest/neutral fashion, but I don't particularly like the style/figure.
- 5 I think that dress really matches/suits you.
- 6 My mother's got a versatile/very good figure.
- 7 You can make a simple dress look great with the right outfits/accessories.
- 8 I always wear neutral/bright colours, but they can be a bit boring.

Complete the sentences.

- She can wear tight jeans because she has such a good figure handbag; they look great together. 1 I bought some pink shoes and a ____ whatever she wears. 2 I'd love to be like Mary; she looks so ____ 3 I want a pair of those trousers; they're the ... fashion.
- 4 She never wears red it doesn't
- because you can wear it with almost anything. 5 Black is very
- She's got a new hairstyle and it completely _____ the way she looks.
- Expensive _____ such as bags and belts can have a big effect on how you look.
- because it all works well together. 8 I really like her new



Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?



Review: Daily life

Unit 16

1 Complete the table with the words from the box.

fig beetroot basil \(\sigma \) cod veal sweetcorn rabbit oysters pomegranate salmon clams parsley broccoli raspberry carp thyme mussels mint sea bass liver crab kidney leeks apricot

Herbs	Fruit	Vegetables	Fish	Seafood	Meat
▶ basil					
		į			
à b					
	į.				

Unit 17

1 Complete the definitions.

5 put on weight = become

•	boil = cook in water	
1	junk food = food which is	good for you
2	cut down on food = eat	food
3	healthy food = food which is	for you
4	a waste of money = a	use of your money

_	11 y — COOK 111			
7	bake = cook in the	oven	oil or f	at
8	chop =	into small pieces		

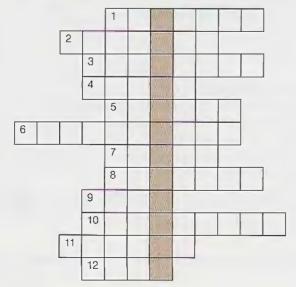
	-			
9	fattening	= making	you put	on.
40				-

6 fry = cook in

	3 J P
0	recipe = a set of instructions for
	something

Unit 18

1 Complete the crossword, using the clues at the top of the next page. The letters in the grey squares spell out another phrase related to money. What is it?



- 1 a piece of paper that shows that something has been paid for 2 informal phrase meaning 'wealthy' (two words) 3 a time when shops sell things at a lower price (two words) 4 a bad use of something, e.g. money or time 5 If something costs €15, you give the shop assistant €20 and you get €5. 6 haven't got enough money to do something (two words) 7 informal word for having no money 8 a very good price for something you are buying 9 the amount of money that you owe someone 10 a lower price than before 11 the total sum of money
- Unit 19

12 massive

1 Complete the text with suitable words.

The letters in the grey squares make the phrase

Insomnia:	how	to	get	a	good	night's	sleep
-----------	-----	----	-----	---	------	---------	-------

Insolitifia. How to get a give inglies of a
Many people Suffer from insomnia. They may not be able to (1) asleep. Others may wake up during
the night and not (2) back to sleep again; or they may wake up too early in the morning.
Is it a serious problem?
No, not really, but if you suffer from a (3) of sleep, it can make you feel tired, depressed, and (4)
It can also make it hard to (5) on your work during the day.
How much sleep do I need?
Adults need 7-8 hours a night. If you feel (6) during the day, you aren't getting enough sleep at night.
However, sleep (7) may change with age. For example, older people may sleep less at night but have a
(8) during the day.
What is a sleep diary?
A sleep diary can help you understand your sleeping patterns. You have to keep a record of when you go to sleep and
wake up, how often you have a restless (9), etc. And if you sleep badly, you can write down whether you have
things on your (10), for example, family problems, or worries at work.

Unit 20

1 Read the definitions and complete the words.

	bandage	thin white cloth you tie around a cut or wound
1	bl	lose blood from the body
2	di	feeling as if everything is turning round and you might fall
3	pre	stop something from happening
4	sym	
5	inf	an illness caused by bacteria or a virus
6	inj	an area of damage in the body, often caused by an accident
7	dev	grow, increase, or change into something
8	tho	in a very careful and complete way

Unit 21

1	M	atch 1–7 with a–h to m	nake compound v	vor	ds.
	1 2 3 4 5 6	wing _g steering gear speed rear-view door number windscreen	e plate f wheel g mirror		
Ur	nit	22			
1	Tic	ck (🗸) the words that a	are possible in the	sei	entence.
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7	We were stuck delayer. The train was cancelled we stopped on the outside He turned up in a lane. They crashed into a coact. The car broke down he hassengers were turn of the got a valid ticket has the train gets in his due.	☐ held up ☐ collide kirts ☐ the rush hou] a vehicle ☐ an am h ☐ a van ☐ an acc ired ☐ crashed ☐ . ned up ☐ injured ☐ a day return ☐ a trai	d [bula ider der ffic	in the way □ . Identify a continuous conti
2	1 2	mplete the phrases wi crash into anoth h a car p your frien t up late for	ner vehicle d up at the station	4 5 6	g held up in traffic s on the ice s off on the way for a coffer e up in the wrong place
Ur	nit	23			
1	1	cle the one which is di blouse waistcoat swe cap style boot sweat leather bracelet suede	ater outfit	5	cotton denim silk vest earrings button necklace ring suede fashionable elegant versatile
		collar pocket dress		7	
2	1 2 3 4 5	mplete the sentence so I don't like strong colours You can wear this blouse Her bag's the same colou Her new hairstyle looks ro I need a new skirt and jac I'm going to get a necklad I don't like cotton or silk.	i. with anything. It as her shoes. Beally good on her. Eket for work.		I likeneutralcolours. This blouse is very Her bag her shoes. Her new hairstyle her. I need a new for work . I'm going to get some I don't like these

24 I can describe a visit to the dentist

I'd had toothache for a couple of weeks. When I tried to bite or chew on one of my back teeth, it was very painful. I needed to have a check-up anyway, so I rang the dental surgery and made an appointment for Friday. The dentist examined my teeth and told me I needed two fillings, and said he would have to take out the tooth which was causing the pain. I've got to go back for treatment on Tuesday, and I'm dreading it.

spotlight dread, look forward to

If you are dreading something, you are afraid of something that is going to happen. If you are looking forward to something, you are happy or excited about something that is going to happen.

I dread going to the dentist.

My treatment finishes tomorrow: I'm really looking forward to that.

Glossary

have toothache

chew

painful

check-up

treatment

- · have a pain in your tooth.
- bite sth PT bit PP bitten * cut sth with your teeth.
 - · use your teeth to break up food in your mouth.
 - If something is painful, it hurts.
 - a medical or dental examination to see if you are healthy.
- dental surgery · a place where a dentist sees you (also doctor's surgery).
- make an appointment * arrange a time to go to a dentist, doctor, etc.
- examine sb/sth look at sb/sth very carefully. filling * a mixture that a dentist puts in your tooth to fill a hole.
- remove a tooth from your mouth. take out a tooth · be the reason that sth happens, cause sth
 - often sth bad.
 - the things a doctor or dentist does to make you better. treat sb v.
- Complete the sentences with I, The tooth, or The dentist.
 - ____ needed a check-up. took the tooth out. was causing me pain.
 - made an appointment.
 - examined my teeth. was dreading going to the surgery.
- gave me a filling.
- had to have some treatment. 8 was treated at the surgery.
- 9 was painful.
- 10 bit on an apple and hurt my

ABOUT YOU

tooth.

- Complete the questions.
 - ► How often do you have a check-up ?
 - 1 Do you ______forward to going to the dentist? Why/Why not? ___
 - 2 What's your dental _____ like?
 - 3 When did you last _____ toothache?
 - 4 When did the dentist last give you a _____
 - 5 Is it ever _____ when you bite or ____
- 6 When did a dentist last _____ out one of your teeth?
- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.
- Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

25 I can describe hospital procedures .

GOING INTO HOSPITAL

go into hospital go for treatment and stay there for a night or more. go to hospital go there for treatment, but not stay in.

· Your doctor is concerned about you.

concerned about sb worried about sb.

· He sends you to see a specialist.

specialist a person who knows a lot about a particular subject. e.g. a heart specialist. In a hospital, this person is often called a consultant.

· You may have tests, X-rays1. or scans2.

test a medical examination of part of your body, e.g. an eye test, a blood test.

 The specialist decides how to treat you.

treat sb give medical help to sb to make them better, treatment N.

· You may have an operation immediately if it is urgent.

operation In an operation, the doctor cuts open the body (operates) to treat the person. immediately with no delay, syn straightaway. urgent needing to be done quickly.

 The surgeon explains the benefits and risks to you. the patient.

surgeon a doctor who does medical operations. benefit a thing that has a good or helpful result. risk a danger that sth bad may happen. patient a person who is having treatment.

 After the operation you return to the ward, where the nurses care for you.

care for sb look after sb. syn take care of sb. ward (see picture)

 The operation is successful. When you are well enough, you can go home to recover.

successful If sth is successful, it has gone well. recover (from sth) become well after you have been ill. SYN get over sth.



operating theatre

ward

spotlight enough

You can use enough after adjectives and adverbs. It means 'as good, well, old, long, etc. as is necessary'.

She's not well enough to go out. (She needs to feel better before she can go out.) He's strong enough to get up. (He has the strength he needs to get up.) You can also use enough before plural and uncountable nouns.

There aren't enough doctors. (We need more doctors.)

I haven't got enough money. (I need more money.)

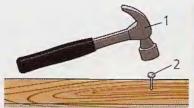


0	Co	rrect the spelling mistakes.						
_		spezialist specialist						
		consultent	6	urgente				
		inmediately		well enogh				
		recouver		succesful				
		pacient		benifit				
		straightway		sirgeon				
U		rcle the correct answer.						
		The patient surgeon has the operation.						
		The consultant/patient goes into hospital.						
		The specialist/patient orders the scans.						
	3	The consultant/patient may have to have an						
	4	The specialist/patient may need treatment u						
	5	The surgeon/patient explains the benefits of						
	6	The patient/nurse cares for the person after	the	operation.				
	7	The specialist/patient gets over the illness.						
	8	The nurse/patient works on the ward.						
6	Co	emplete the conversation with suitable w	vor	ds.				
		A Hi, Mary, how are you?						
	В	and the state of the contract of the state o						
		A I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter?						
	В							
	D	too, to see what was wrong. I've got a problem at the back of my eye, and I need to have						
		an (3) o						
		Oh, dear. Is it (4) u?						
	В	Yes, I have to have it done (5) s	-1'	ve got to go (6) i hospital tomorrow.				
	Α	And are there any (7) r with the	e tre	eatment?				
	В	(0)						
		of people can see better afterwards.						
	Α	And when will you be well (9) e	to	start work again?				
	В	He said I'll need a week to (10) g	Ç	the operation. My sister is going to				
		(11) t of me at h	om	e.				
	А	Well, good luck – I hope it goes well.						
4	Αŀ	BOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write	yo	ur answers, or ask another student.				
	1							
	2							
	3							
	כ	too?						
	4	Can you see a specialist straightaway in your country, or do you have to wait? If so, how long?						
	5	5 Do you have to see your doctor first before you go and see a specialist?						
	6			operation?				
A		Test very self Cover the meanings in	+ b.o	table and look at the procedures. Can you				

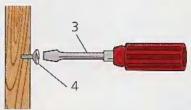
Test yourself. Cover the meanings in the table and look at the procedures. Can you remember the meanings of the new words?

26 I can explain household tasks

A Using tools and household objects



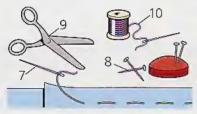
You use a hammer1 to bang a nail2 into a piece of wood.



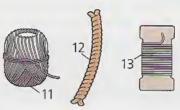
You use a screwdriver3 to tighten or loosen a screw4.



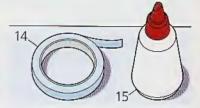
You use a drill⁵ to make a hole⁶. A hammer, a screwdriver, and a drill are tools.



You use a **needle**⁷, **pins**⁸, scissors9, and cotton/thread10 wire13 to tie things together. when you're sewing.



You use **string**¹¹, **rope**¹², or



You use TMSellotape14 or glue15 to stick things together.

Circle the correct word.

- Stick it together with (glue) cotton.
- 1 Sew it with a pin/needle.
- 2 Cut it with scissors/a drill.
- 3 Tighten it with a hammer/screwdriver.
- 4 Tie it together with rope/nails.
- 5 Bang it in with string/a hammer.
- 6 Make a hole with thread/a drill.
- 7 Stick it together with Sellotape/wire.
- 8 Loosen the screw/cotton.

spotlight Nouns

Cotton, thread, string, rope, wire, Sellotape, and glue are all uncountable nouns. Scissors is a plural noun.

Where's the string? I need some alue. Where are the scissors?

Complete the sentences.

- ► She didn't have any string, so she stuck the parcel together with Sellotape
- 1 I've got a hammer and a screwdriver, but I haven't got any other
- 2 When you make a skirt, you cut the fabric with _____, you hold the pieces together with pins, and then you ______ it with a needle and _____
- 3 If you break the handle off a cup, you can _____ it on with _
- 4 I tied all the keys together with a piece of ____
- 5 If the screws on your door handle are loose, use a ____
- 6 A drill is very useful if you need to make a ______ in a wall.
- 7 Pass the hammer and I can bang in this
- 8 We _____ a long rope to the tree for the children to play on.



Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?

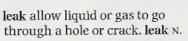
B Common problems

Our flat: things to do

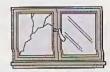
- The lamp isn't working. Try changing the light bulb.
- The radiator's leaking. We'll have to repair it.
- The window's cracked. It needs replacing.
- The TV isn't working properly.
- The radio is faulty.
- The bedroom needs decorating.
- There's something wrong with the door. It keeps sticking.
- The lift's out of order. I hope they fix it soon.
- There's a stain on the carpet which we need to remove.

MEANING

If sth isn't working, it isn't functioning or it's broken.







cracked window

replace sth exchange sth for sth that is better or newer.

light bulb

properly correctly or well.

faulty not working well; only working sometimes.

decorate a room put paint or paper on the walls.

wrong causing problems or difficulties.

stick be in one position and difficult to move.

out of order If a machine or piece of equipment in a public place is out of order, it isn't working.

stain N, v (see picture)

remove sth take sth away.



Spotlight repair, fix, or mend sth

Repair sth. fix sth, and mend sth all mean 'put sth right that is broken or damaged'. Can you repair/fix the fridge? It took ages to repair/mend the roof.

We use mend and repair, rather than fix, to talk about repairing clothes. I mended the hole in my pocket. I must get my shoes repaired.

Tick (✓) the words which are pos

	My shoe has a hole in it. Can you <i>repair ≥ mend ≥ remove</i> □ it for me?
1	This table's broken. We need to decorate \square fix \square repair \square it.
2	Is the bedroom lamp OK? ~ No, it's faulty \square out of order \square not working \square .
3	We're going to remove \square replace \square decorate \square the fridge.
	We need a new $lamp \square$ stain \square light bulb \square .
5	The public phone is out of order \square is wrong \square isn't working properly \square .
6	The radiator is <i>leaking</i> \square <i>faulty</i> \square <i>sticking</i> \square .

Complete the text.

The house was in a terrible condition. The rain had come into all the bedrooms because the roof was
▶ leaking , and there were (1) s on the walls and carpets. A builder (2) f
the roof for us, and after that, we had to (3) d all the bedrooms. We also had to
(4) r several windows that were (5) c Then we realized that the central
heating wasn't (6) w, and it cost a lot to have it (7) r The bathroom
was a problem too: the shower didn't work (8) p – some days the water was hot, others
it was freezing, and the taps were (9) L too. The previous owners had left two old cars in
the garden and we had to pay someone to (10) r them. It was all so expensive.



Test yourself. Look at the text, and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

27 I can describe housework ••

Mrs Bristow's Handy Housework Routine

Daily tasks

Make the beds and do the washing up. Clean the bathroom and kitchen. Wipe all surfaces with a soapy cloth1 to remove grease. Tidy up and throw away2 any rubbish.

Weekly tasks

Using a broom3, sweep the area outside your front door to remove mud and general dirt. Wash the floors with a mop4 and buckets and warm, soapy water. Vacuum6 the carpets, and then dust or polish the furniture. Wipe the inside of the fridge.











- Write the missing parts of speech.
 - ► dirty ADJ dirt N 2 mud N ADJ 3 greasy ADJ ______N
- Complete the phrases.

4 vacuum cleaner ν

	Do the daily .	tasks				
1		the floor to re	emove mud and dirt	-		
2	Use a	to hoover the carpet.				
3	Tidy	the kitchen every day.				
4	Remove grea	se with a soapy				
5		the washing	up.			
6	Use a	and	to wash			
	the floor.					
7		or	the furniture onc	E		
	a week.					
8	Use a cloth to		the kitchen surface	5		
9	Use a broom	to	the floor.			
0		away any rub	bish.			

Glossary

task a piece of work you must do.

do the washing up wash dishes, plates, glasses, etc. after a meal.

wipe sth clean or dry sth with a cloth.

grease oil or fat that comes from cooking. greasy ADJ.

tidy (up) make a place look better by putting things in the correct place.

sweep sth remove dirt from the floor or ground with a broom3,

mud soft, wet earth. (If you walk in a field after rain, your shoes will be muddy ADJ.)

dirt a substance that isn't clean (e.g. mud). dirty ADJ.

vacuum sth clean a carpet or floor using a vacuum cleaner⁶. SYN hoover v.

dust sth remove very small pieces of dry dirt (dust N) from sth. dusty ADJ.

polish sth make sth shine by rubbing it with a cream or liquid (polish N).

- ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
 - 1 Look again at Mrs Bristow's tasks. In your home, which do you do?
 - 2 Which tasks does someone else do in your home?

28 I can talk to a hairdresser

- I'd like to have my hair cut / have a haircut.

I'm **letting** it grow long, so just trim it / give it a trim. please. I'd like to keep the fringe1 and the parting2 on the left.



What would you like?

I want to keep the same hairstyle, please. I'd like a cut and blow-dry (= dry with a **hairdryer**).

hairdryer



I want to have it permed / I'd like a perm. please.



Could you colour it for me, please?



spotlight have/get sth done

If you have sth done or get sth done, you pay sh to do sth for you. Compare:

I have my hair cut every month. (I go to the hairdresser's.)

I colour my hair every month. (I do it myself.)

Glossary

let allow sth to happen without trying to stop it. trim sth cut sth a little so that it is shorter and tidier, syn give sth a trim, trim N.

keep sth make sth stay in a particular state or condition and not change.

hairstyle the way your hair is cut and arranged.

-					
	Compl	ete	the	word:	s.

▶	haircu
1	f re

Put the words in order, and add one more word.

- ▶ going / I'm / hair / to / cut / have I'm going to have my hair cut.
- 1 could / colour / you / me / for / please?
- 2 Sasha / her / letting / is / hair
- 3 fringe / like / a / parting / I'd / and / a / right / the ____
- 4 please / blow-dry / like / a / and / I'd
- 5 want / please / hairstyle / same / I / to / the
- 6 to / she's / her / trimmed / going / hair

ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Are you letting your hair grow at the moment?
- 2 When did you last have your hair cut?
- 3 Have you got a fringe or a parting?
- 4 Where do you get your hair cut?
- 5 In your family, who has their hair permed or coloured?



Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the requests?

Review: Getting things done

Unit 2/

O1	111	24
1	fro 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	How long have you toothache? had list when you bite? I will probably have to the tooth out. This is the tooth which is the pain. When did you last a check-up? Can you come back to the tomorrow? Just ask the receptionist to make an for you. I'm going to your teeth and then decide what you need.
Ur	iit	25
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	hich words are being defined? a person who knows a lot about a subjectspecialist_ give someone medical help to make them better worried about someone or something a doctor who operates on you another word for 'immediately' something that has a good or helpful result look after someone, especially if they are ill become well after you have been ill a person who is ill and having medical treatment the place in a hospital where sick people stay a danger that something bad could happen a
Ur	iit	26
1		I'm going todecoratethe bedroom. Sandro doesn't like the colour of the walls. There's a on the carpet. Do you know how to it? Did you know the lift was order? ~ Yes, but someone is going to it later today. I'm afraid this radiator is ; there's water on the carpet. I've got a hole in my pocket. Could you it for me, please? This lamp isn't Have we got any light ? I'm afraid there's something the front door. We may have to get someone to it.

- 2 Which word is being described? Write it at the end.
 - ➤ You use one when you're sewing. __needle_
 - 1 You use one to bang a nail in the wall.
 - 2 You use one to make a hole in the wall.
 - 3 You use one to tighten a screw.
 - 4 You use them to cut things. ...
 - 5 You use it to tie a boat to a wall.
 - 6 You use it to tie some sticks together. _
 - 7 You use it to stick a broken bowl together.
 - 8 You use it to wrap a parcel.

Unit 27

1 Complete the sentences.

Mr Bristow's Handy Housework excuses

- ► I couldn't do the washing up because there was no hot water.
- 1 I couldn't sweep the floor because I couldn't find the
- 2 I couldn't wash the floor because there was a mop but no
- 3 I couldn't hoover the carpets because the _____ wasn't working.
- 4 I couldn't away the rubbish because the bins were all full.
- the furniture because the cloth was dirty. 5 I couldn't
- 6 And I didn't _____ the surfaces because they all looked clean to me, anyway.

Unit 28

- 1 There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.
 - ▶ I like your new style of hair. I like your new hairstyle.
 - 1 I made my hair cut last week.
 - 2 I just want trim, please. ____
 - 3 I'd like a cutting and blow-dry, please.
 - 4 Are you leaving your hair grow? ___
 - 5 Can you pass me the scissor? ___
 - 6 She's got a parted on the left.
 - 7 I'm having my hair colour tomorrow. __
 - 8 Can I borrow your hairdry? _____

29 I can describe urban life

A The inner city

I parked in the multi-storey car park and went the rest of the way on foot. The street lights had just come on, and I could see the pavements were filthy. At the entrance to the subway, there was an old guy begging for money. I gave him something and hurried on down. There was the usual graffiti all over the walls, and litter everywhere. I came up the other side and passed a man who was whistling quite cheerfully, but I found this part of the inner city so depressing that I wondered if my decision to walk had been a good idea.

Glossary

multi-storey • a large car park with several floors.

car park

pavement • the part of the road where people walk.

filthy · very dirty.

subway

· a tunnel that goes under a road or railway so people can walk to the other side.

ask for food or money. beg

hurry move or do sth quickly, syn rush.

graffiti pictures or writing on a wall in a public

place (often humorous or political).

» paper and rubbish that is dropped and left litter

on the ground in a public place.

whistle make a musical sound with your lips

nearly closed.

inner city the part of a large city which is near the

centre and often poor.

depressing * making you feel sad and without hope. wonder ask yourself questions about sth.

Correct the spelling mistakes.

>	hury	hurry
1	fillthy	<u>.</u>

3 payment

5 grafiti

2 liter

1 filthy = very ______

4 whisle

6 deppresing

Complete the definitions.

inner city = poor parts of a city, near the centre

5 multi-storey = with several _____

6 beg = ask for _____ or __

2 rush = move or do something 3 pavement = place where people 7 whistle = make a sound with your ____ nearly closed

on a wall in a public place 8 graffiti = _____

4 litter = paper dropped on the ...

Complete the sentences with a suitable word. ► My dog comes back to me when I whistle

1 I hate people who drop ______ in the street. Why can't they put it in a bin?

2 It's a dangerous road, so use the _______ to get to the other side.

3 Leila says that someone in our class is getting married. I _____ who it is.

4 You've got lots of time – you don't need to ______ to get the train.

5 Two men were cleaning the _____ off the walls in the subway.

6 The street was filthy and it was pouring with rain. It was very



Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?



B In a suburb

The area where I live is ideal. It's a suburb not far from the centre and it's quite lively, but there's still a feeling of space, and my block of flats is surrounded by trees. It's also a handy place to live because there are good local shops, and a bus service that gets me into the centre in 15 to 20 minutes. The only disadvantage is that with the growth in the population. it's gradually becoming more built-up than it used to be, which is a shame.



- Same or different? Write S or D.
 - One of the suburbs/areas outside the centre. S
 - 1 The ideal/perfect place to live.
 - 2 A mountainous area/region.
 - 3 We need more growth/space.
 - 4 It was a pity/shame.

spotlight area, region, district, part

The word area can be used for part of a town. country, or the world. A region is part of a country or the world, e.g. a desert region. A district is part of a town or country, often with special qualities, e.g. the financial district. A part is often used when we are talking about a town, e.g. a lovely part of the city.

Glossary

suburb an area outside the centre of a town, where a lot of people live.

ideal perfect; the best possible.

lively full of interest, and with things to do.

space a place or area that is empty and not used. surrounded by sth If a building is surrounded

by sth, that thing is all around it.

handy INF located near to things you need. SYN convenient.

local located in the area where you live.

disadvantage a situation or thing that is not good or causes problems. syn drawback. OPP advantage.

growth an increase in size or number.

built-up with a lot of buildings.

a shame a fact or situation that makes you feel disappointed, SYN a pity.

- 5 A handy/lively area. ..
- 6 It's a commercial district/area.
- 7 It's a real disadvantage/drawback.
- 8 It's a large space/suburb. ...
- Complete the sentences with a suitable word.
 - ▶ There used to be lots of space, but now it's a really built—up area.
 - about two kilometres from the centre.
 - 2 Unfortunately, the whole area is ____ __ by factories, which is a
 - 3 There are a few _____ shops just round the corner.
 - because it's close to my children's school and the place where I work.
 - 5 It's a nice area with great shops; the only ______ is that the bus service is terrible.
 - 6 We've found our _____ house: it has absolutely everything we want.
- ABOUT YOUR AREA Write your answers, or ask another student.
 - 1 Is your area built-up, or is there a feeling of space?
 - 2 What is your home surrounded by? ...
 - 3 What local shops do you have?

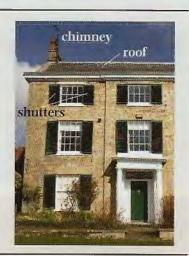
 - 4 Is it a handy place to live for you?
 - 5 What are the disadvantages?

30 I can describe parts of a building ...

A substantial and impressive semi-detached house full of original features, and just a short walk from the town centre.

Inside, the hall leads to two spacious reception rooms and an enormous kitchen. Upstairs there are four bedrooms and two bathrooms on the first and second floors, with a narrow staircase to a further bedroom in the attic. There is also a basement which could be converted into a separate one-bedroom flat, and a cellar currently used to store things.

Outside, the house has pretty shutters either side of the front windows. There is a lawn at the front, and a **drive** provides plenty of parking. There is also a small walled garden at the back.



Glossary

substantial large and/or strong.

impressive (of a building) large and very good to look at.

semi-detached joined to one other house, forming a pair of houses.

original * existing from the time when sth was first made or done.

feature * an important part of sth, and often a part that you notice.

lead • If sth leads to a place, you can go along it to that place.

spacious large, and having a lot of space. * very large. syn huge. opp tiny. enormous

staircase a set of stairs.

attic • the space or room under the roof of a house.

a room or part of a building that is partly or completely basement

below ground level.

convert sth into sth * change sth from one form or use to another.

not connected or together. separate

cellar an underground room without windows, where things

are often kept.

currently * at the moment (NOT actually).

store sth • keep sth in a place for future use. storage N.

lawn an area of grass in a park or garden.

drive a wide path for cars that leads to the front door of a house.

walled • If a garden or other area is walled, it has a wall around it

(a wall is usually made of brick1 or stone2).

spotlight passage, corridor, hall

A passage is a long. narrow way with walls on both sides that leads somewhere, e.g. an underground passage. A corridor is a passage in a large building or on a train. A hall is a room or small passage just inside

the entrance to a house.





Correct the spelling mistakes.

▶ starcase staircase 3 seperate ... 6 spaceious _____ 1 impresive _____ 4 attick ____ 7 currantly ___

5 basemant 2 kellar __ 8 featur

0	Circle the correct word.
	 The flat is substantial/impressive, but not very attractive. I'm on the ground floor and my sister lives downstairs in the cellar/basement. There were no seats on the train, so I had to stand in the hall/corridor. There's a very wide hall/corridor in our flat. He parked his car in the attic/drive. Just after the newsagent's, there's a little passage/hall that leads to the High Street. We've got a small field/lawn in the garden where we sit in the summer.
Ð	Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.
	There's a large living room. spacious The living room is absolutely huge. Where do you keep your garden furniture in the winter? They've got a very small garden. There's a very elegant set of stairs up to the first floor. The back door goes into the garden. We could change that room into a bathroom.
0	Complete the words in the text. My brother has just bought a very ▶ substantial six-bedroom house. It's a 1930s semi- (1) d house, and (2) c it is in terrible condition, but it will be very nice when he has done some work on it. As you approach it, there's a long (3) d up to the front door, with enough space for about three cars. Inside, the hall (4) L to the living room, dining room, and kitchen, and from the kitchen there are stairs down to a (5) c where they plan to (6) s wine and other things. At the back there's a (7) h garden, big enough for a football pitch, and around the garden there's a high stone (8) w There are two garages, and they might (9) one into a study.
0	Complete the sentences.
	At the back, there's a garden with a huge lawn. One of the main of the building is the beautiful windows. Can you see the smoke coming out of the ? It's an old house and it still has the windows and fireplaces. There's a big cupboard in the hall which is useful for . I need about 100 to finish the low wall at the front. I'll have to go up on the to repair the chimney.
6	ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student. 1 Have you got shutters at your windows? If so, are they on the outside or inside? 2 Have you got a garden with a lawn? If so, what do you use it for? 3 Is there an attic in your building? If so, what's in it?

5 Is there a drive outside your building? 6 Would you describe any rooms in your home as spacious or tiny? Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

4 Have you got a basement or cellar? If so, what are they used for?

31 I can describe objects

A What's it made of? a rubber tyre a woollen blanket / plastic toys a metal ladder a blanket made of wool a silver candlestick a gold medal a wax candle a cardboard box a steel pipe a concrete bridge iron railings a wooden fence /

- Circle the most logical word.
 - ▶ a table made of wood/wool
 - 1 a rubber boot/book
 - 2 a concrete/cardboard wall
 - 3 a rubber ladder/tyre
 - 4 a wooden/woollen sweater
 - 5 a wooden/silver fence
 - 6 a silver/woollen medal
 - 7 a wax/wooden candlestick
 - 8 a plastic/concrete toy
 - 9 wax/gold earrings
 - 10 a plastic blanket/pipe
 - 11 concrete/metal railings

spotlight Noun + noun

Sometimes we use a noun with another noun to say what things are made of, what they are for, etc. A rubber tyre is a tyre made of rubber; a letter box is a box for letters.

a fence made of wood

Complete the sentences.

- A sweater is often made of wool Jewellery is usually made of s_____ or g____

 Toys are usually made of w_____ or p_____ 3 Bathroom and kitchen pipes are usually made of p______ or m___ 4 A ladder is usually made of w_____ or m____ 5 A box can be made of p______, w_____, or c____ 6 A bridge can be made of i______, s_____, or c___
- Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the words?

B Shapes and lines

5hapes	Noun	Adjective	Lines	Adjective
	circle	round, circular		straight
	square	square		curved
	rectangle	rectangular		parallel
	triangle	triangular		vertical
5	oval	oval		horizontal
	point	pointed		diagonal

- Complete the words.
 - ▶ straight 1 poin____ 2 L-sha____ 3 cur____ 4 rectan..... 5 verti......

circu ___

8 cir..... 9 trian_____ 10 horizon..... 11 squ____ 12 paral..... 13 diam..... 14 s____-shaped

spotlight shape, -shaped You can describe the shape of things using shape or -shaped: a card in the shape of a heart a swimming pool in the shape of a leaf an L-shaped room = a room in the shape of the letter L a diamond-shaped buckle

a star-shaped button

6 Complete the sentences below with words from the box.

square round oval triangular curved diagonal. rectangular straight pointed ► A <u>diagonal</u> line connects opposite 4 The box your CD comes in is _____ 5 A shape with three sides is ____ corners in a square. 6 A knife is _____ at the end. 2 A computer screen is usually _______. 7 A ball has a ______surface. 8 A ruler is _____, not curved. 3 A DVD is What can you see in the pictures? a heart-shaped cushion / a cushion in the shape of a heart 5 3

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and lines in the table and cover the words. Say the words.

32 I can describe the senses

A Seeing and hearing 6 •

Example	Meaning
Look¹ carefully, and you can see the bridge over the river. From here it looks² very small.	look ¹ turn your eyes to sth and pay attention to it. see know or notice sth using your eyes. look ² seem from what you can see.
We watched TV for an hour.	watch sth look at sth for some time to see what happens.
He appears¹ to be very happy. A dog appeared² from behind a tree.	appear¹ seem. appear² If sth appears, you suddenly begin to see it. opp disappear.
The children stared at the man with the long red hair.	stare at sb/sth look at sb/sth for a long time without moving your eyes.
Jay always notices what I'm wearing. He's very observant.	notice sth see sth and be aware of it. observant good at noticing things.
He glanced at me and smiled.	glance at sb/sth look quickly at sb/sth.
A I can hear something. B It sounds like a child crying.	hear sth receive sounds with your ears without trying. sound like sth make a noise that is like sth.
She listens to the radio a lot.	listen pay attention to sth you hear, often for a long time.
I overheard them in the bank.	overhear sb hear other people's conversation by accident.
I'm sorry, I didn't quite catch what you said.	catch sth hear or understand what sb is saying; usually used when you don't hear or understand sth.

spotlight can + sense verbs

We don't use see, hear, smell, or taste in the continuous tenses; we often use can (as in the examples above). I can see two boats in this photo. (NOT I see or I'm seeing two hoats.)

- Circle the correct answer.
 - ► Can you head/listen to that noise?
 - 1 Did you notice/watch the colour of her eyes? 6 I see/can see something in your eye.

 - 3 Don't look/watch behind you.
 - 4 How long did you see/watch TV for?
- 5 I glanced at/stared Julia.
- 2 I can't see/look at anything from here.
 7 I overheard/caught a funny story on the bus.
 - 8 What can you listen/hear?
- Complete the sentences with a suitable word.
 - ▶ When I told them, I noticed that they both looked very surprised.

 - She said her name but I'm afraid I didn't _____ what it was.
 I _____ hear a bird singing. It _____ like a blackbird.
 - 3 Why is that man _____ at me? Have I done something wrong?
 - 4 I spoke to him about the exam. He doesn't ____ ____ to be nervous.
 - 5 Did you see Nadia last night? I thought she ...
 - 6 I at my watch and realized it was time to go.
 - 7 Sally always notices if I change my hairstyle. She's very _
 - 8 A minute ago she was here, then she I don't know where she is now.
- Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the words in bold mean?

B Smelling, tasting, and touching

Word	Example	Meaning
smell sth	I can smell lunch	notice or recognize sth using your nose.
smell like sth	it smells like fish.	have a smell like the smell of sth / sth else.
stink inf	This towel stinks. I must wash it.	have a horrible smell.
flavour	They sell 30 flavours of ice cream.	the sensation of sth in your mouth (e.g. a chocolate/strawberry flavour).
taste	Try this wine. It tastes very strange.	have a particular flavour.
salty	The soup is very salty.	having the taste of or containing a lot of salt.
bland	This cheese is quite bland.	without much flavour.
touch sth	When I touched the back wall	put your fingers on sth.
feel feel like sth	it felt a bit damp (= a little wet).	give a sensation of or like sth when touched (e.g. it feels hot, it feels like wood).
press sth	If you press that button, you get a ticket.	put your hand or finger on sth firmly.
grab sth	He grabbed my mobile and ran off.	take sth with a sudden movement.
tap sb/sth	Someone tapped me on the arm.	touch sb/sth quickly with your hands or feet.
rub sth	I rubbed the book with a soft cloth to get the dirt off.	move your hand firmly backwards and forwards over the surface of sth.

Replace the underlined phrase with a single word that has the same meaning.

- ▶ Most cities <u>such as</u> London have a traffic problem. <u>like</u>
- 1 This blanket has a horrible smell.
- 2 My towel still feels a little wet.
- 3 The soup is without much flavour.
- 4 The film was similar to his others.
- 5 I put my hand on the radiator and it felt cold. ...
- 6 She moved her hand firmly over her leg.

spotlight like

Like can mean 'similar to' and it can mean 'such as': This flower smells like honey. (The flower has a smell similar to that of honey.)

Some people like Maggie live alone. (Maggie is one example.)

Complete the sentences.

- You don't need salt. It's already very salty
- 1 The persimmon is a strange fruit. It looks ______ a tomato but doesn't taste _____ one.
- 2 They were both _____ their feet to the music.
- the button if you want the receptionist to come. 3 ..
- 4 Be careful don't the door. The paint is still wet.
- 5 He _____ me on the shoulder and asked me to move my head.
- 6 The policeman _____ the thief's arm and pushed him to the ground.
- 7 When I came downstairs, I could _____ the steak frying; it was wonderful.
- 8 You had ice cream, didn't you? What ______ did you have? ~ Strawberry, but it didn't like strawberry.

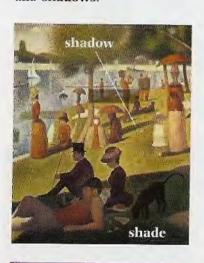


Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

33 I can describe a painting .

This **painting**, Bathers at Asnières by Georges Seurat, illustrates a typical scene of 19th-century leisure and the developing industry in this suburb of Paris. In the foreground a group of workmen are relaxing by the river; in the distance you can just see the factory where they probably work. Everyone is looking out at the river and ignoring each other, even the little dog in the bottom lefthand corner2. We can sense the warmth of the summer's day in the bright sunlight, light colours, and shadows.







- 1 (in) the foreground OPP background
- 2 (in) the bottom left-hand corner
- 3 (in) the top right-hand corner
- 4 (on) the left-hand side
- 5 (on) the right-hand side
- 6 (in) the centre/middle (of) the picture

Glossary

illustrate sth

 explain sth in a picture or diagram. illustration N.

scene

 a view you can see in a picture or from the place where you are.

leisure industry time when you do not have to work.

• the production of goods in factories.

industrial ADL

in the distance

far away from you.

just

 If you can just see sth, you can only see it with difficulty.

ignore sb/sth

pay no attention to sb/sth.

even

used for emphasizing sth that is surprising.

sense sth

 get a feeling about sth that you can't directly see or hear.

warmth · a pleasant heat.

bright

having a lot of light. opp dark. brightness N.

spotlight painting and drawing

Bathers at Asnières is a painting. Seurat was a painter or artist (artist is a more general word).

A drawing is a picture made with a pencil or pen, but not paint. draw v.

I paint a lot of portraits. I can't draw faces very well.

0	Lo	ok at the big picture on page 90. Write your answers to the questions.
	•	Where is the man in the red swimming costume sitting? In the middle of the picture.
	1	How many people are there in the foreground?
		Are the boats in the foreground or the background?
	3	Are the men sitting in the shade?
	4	Is the dog in the bottom left-hand corner?
	5	Can you see the dog's shadow?
	6	Is the picture a drawing or a painting?
	7	Where are the factories?
	8	On which side of the picture is the boy in the river? Are the colours dark or bright?
	9 10	
	10	Which side is the man wearing the light coloured hat.
3		over the glossary on page 90. Complete the definitions.
	\blacktriangleright	even = used to emphasize something that is surprising
	1	ignore = pay attention to someone or something
	2	leisure = time when you don't have to
	3	sense = have aabout something that you can't see or hear
	4	shade = a place which is and cool because the sun doesn't shine there
	5	scene = a view you can in a picture or from the place where you are
	6	bright = having a lot of
a	Pu	t the words in order. Use contractions, e.g. it's, they're.
•		dog/foreground/the/in/is/the The dog's in the foreground.
		the / it / you / see / in / can / distance
	1	bottom / the / corner / he / is / in / lying / left-hand
	3	of / right-hand / is / on / the / it / side / the/ painting?
	4	they / the / centre / drawing / of / are / in / sitting / the
	5	in / left-hand / some / there / corner / are / trees / top / the
4	Co	mplete the sentences with one word from each pair.
		warm/warmth bright/brightness ✓ just/even illustrate/illustration
		industry/industrial painter/painting shade/shadow
		This painter often uses dark colours, not bright ones.
	1	He painted many scenes of factories and factory workers.
	2	The paintings the friendship between the three women.
	3	You can feel the of the sun shining down on you.
	4	You can see the on the wall in the art gallery.
	5	People go swimming in the river, in winter when it is cold.
	6	It's so hot! Shall we go and sit in the?
A		
U		BOUT YOU Think about a painting you know and like. Write your answers, or ask other student.
	1	What's the name of the artist who painted it?
	2	Do you know when it was painted?
	3	What does the painting illustrate?
	4	What do you like about the painting?
	5	Do you do any painting or drawing yourself? If so, what do you do?

34 I can describe actions

A Using your hands 💫



Don't **squeeze** the **tube** in the middle!



She's **tearing** the letter **up**.



He **dragged** the **cabinet** across the floor.



He **knocked** on the



He **scratched** the **lid** of the box.



Shake the bottle before opening it.



The thief **smashed** the window.



She **folded** the paper **in half / in two**.



She **sprayed** the **leaves** with water.

- Can you do these things? Write Yes or No.
 - ▶ smash a tube of toothpaste No
 - 1 fold a sheet in half 2 scratch coffee
 - 3 drag a suitcase along a path
 - 4 spray perfume on yourself ____

- 5 squeeze a wet jumper to get water out
- 6 knock on water
- 7 tear up a cabinet
- 8 shake a tin of paint
- 2 Complete the sentences with verbs from the box in the correct form.

spray knock ✓ scratch drag smash fold tear up shake squeeze

► I was woken up by someone knocking on my window.

1 The boat was incredibly heavy so we had to ______ it down the beach to the sea.

2 I _____ all my old bank documents and threw them away.

3 He _____ his scarf and put it on the table.

4 Don't _____ that bottle of sparkling water before you open it.

5 He kicked the ball hard and unfortunately _____ the neighbour's window.

6 You'll need to _____ about six oranges to make a glass of juice.

7 My little brother took a nail and ______ the side of the car. My dad was furious.

8 She put on her make-up and ______ perfume behind her ears.



Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?

B Making noises

Word	Example	Meaning
shout	Don't shout! I can hear you.	speak in a loud voice.
whisper	He whispered 'I love you' in her ear.	speak very quietly so that other people can't hear you.
cry	The baby next door cried all night.	tears drops of liquid that come out from your eyes when you cry.
scream	The plane dropped suddenly and we screamed.	cry out in a high voice because you are in pain, upset, frightened, etc.
burst into tears	He sat down and burst into tears.	start crying suddenly.
burst out laughing	I walked into the room and they all burst out laughing.	start laughing suddenly.
breathe (in/out)	Breathe in, count to ten, and then breathe out.	take air into your lungs and let it out again. breath N.
sigh	He sat down and sighed: it had been a hard decision.	let out a long deep breath that shows you are sad, bored, relieved, etc.
sneeze	I've got a terrible cold; I've been sneezing all day.	sneezing

spotlight loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence

Loud means 'making a lot of noise', opp silent, silence N.

The radio's too loud. We worked in silence.

If you speak out loud (syn aloud) you speak so that people can hear you.

I read the letter out loud / aloud to my father.

Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- ▶ If you shout angrily at a child, they might <u>Cry</u> 1 When you have a cold, you might _____ a lot. 2 If you eat onions, your _____ might smell. 3 If something is incredibly funny, you might 4 If your nose is blocked, you have to _____ and out through your mouth. 5 If you don't want to be heard when you're speaking to someone, you should ____ 6 If you are very relieved that something has gone well, you might If you suddenly get some very sad news, you might ______. 8 If your friend isn't looking and a car is coming, you would ______ to him. 9 If all the class wanted to hear a short story you've written, you could read it _____ 10 The room was completely _____ ; no one said a word.
- 11 If you upset her, she will burst into
- 12 You can't speak in an exam; you must work in ____

ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student. When did you last . . .

- 1 hear someone screaming? Who was it, and why?
- 2 burst out laughing? Why?
- 3 whisper to someone? Why? ..
- 4 read something out loud? What was it?

Review: Describing things

Unit 29

JI	111 29	
1	1 The suburbs of a2 It's depressing if3 A multi-storey of4 The pavement is5 The inner city is	ite T or F. to go through a subway. F a city are the areas where people with very little money live your home is surrounded by litter ar park has only one floor where people walk often quite built-up ps near your home isn't very convenient
	was (1) f restaurants rour Not far away, th (5) h before, you used pavement (7) b my friends live in	t. where I live now is very clean – not like the area I used to live in, which It's also quite (2) I because there are several cafés and the corner, but there isn't a supermarket nearby, which is a (3) p ere's plenty of open (4) s to go for walks, and it's also very because I'm close to the station, so I can get to work easily. Where I lived to see lots of (6) g on the subway walls, and people sitting on the for money. But there is one (8) d to where I live now: the older part of town, so I see them less often.
Jr	nit 30	
1	Write a sentence	linking a word on the left with a word on the right.
	windows ✓ semi-detached chimney cellar lawn drive Windows may	front door storage house garden shutters roof nave shutters on the inside or outside.

Unit 31

1 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

	iron woollen wax	rubber	wooden	gold steel ✓	concrete	cardboard
1	a steel pipe a fence a tyre	4	a	candle medal blanket	7	abox railings abridge

Α	nswer the questions.			
•	What shape is a triangle? triangular			
1	What shape is a tyre?			
2	How many sides does a rectangle have?	t		
3	When people sleep are they vertical or horizontal?			
4	What shape has four equal sides? a			
5	What kinds of lines always have the same distance be	etween	them?	lines
6	What kind of line doesn't have curves? a			
nit	32			
M	atch 1–8 with a–i.			
•	pay attention to something you hear	а	touch	
1	look at something or someone quickly		stare at	
2	notice something using your nose		listen to ✓	
3	put your hands or fingers on something	d	tap	
4	touch something quickly with your hands or feet		•	
5	have a particular flavour	f	smell	
6	look at something or someone for a long time		taste	
7	become impossible to see or find	h	glance at	
8	hear someone's conversation by accident	i		
	Interpretation of the box in the	hand trates a laughte nd her, old ho	d foreground (2) er in the (3) you can (4) ouse, perhaps w corner of the seems much mo	of peace and and in the see one here they all live. It's tect the small child a painting, there is a bre interested in what is
nit	34			
0	ne word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and v	write t	the correct or	ne at the end.
-	Did you hear someone stream? SCream			
1	The police had to stash the door open.			
2	Don't bear up that paper – we can use it again.			
3	If you sold that in two, you can put it in this envelope	<u> </u>		
4	He strayed us with water.			
5	The little girl was frying because her dog had disappe			
6	He burnt into tears for no reason at all.			
7	She signed noisily and left the room.			
8	Don't snake that – it might explode!			
9	I saw her bragging an enormous box along the street			

35 I can talk about crime

A What is crime?

Crime is activity which is against the law: for example, if you steal someone's property, you are committing a crime and breaking the law. Some offences are only minor, e.g. illegal parking; but for more serious and especially violent crimes, e.g. killing or attacking someone, a person could go to prison for a long time.

spotlight crime

The noun crime can be countable and uncountable.

There are many victims of violent crime (u).

It is a **crime** (c) to avoid paying tax.

Glossary

offence

against the law against the rules of a country. SYN illegal. OPP legal. steal sth PT stole w take sth belonging to sb else without permission.

PP stolen property

sth that belongs to you (e.g. a computer, jewellery).

commit a crime · do sth illegal.

break the law

do sth illegal/against the law, orr obey the law.

an illegal activity, syn crime. (The person is an offender / a criminal.)

minor not important, opp serious.

violent using force to hurt sb physically. violence N.

kill sb make sb die.

attack sb start fighting or hurting sb. go to prison

go to a place where criminals have to stay after committing a crime. SYN go to jail.

Circle the verbs below. Don't circle the other words.

offenceminor(kill)violentlawstealcrimeprisoncommitillegal seriousattackcriminaloffendobey

- Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.
 - steal | take something belonging to someone without permission 5
 - 1 illegal | against the law 5 criminal | offender
 - 6 commit a crime | break the law. 2 an offence | a crime
 - 3 legal | illegal _____ 7 prison | jail ...
 - 4 kill someone | attack someone ____ 8 minor crime | serious crime
- Complete the sentences using a word from the box. Put the verbs in the correct form.

violent serious against break property steal jail minor violence go 🗸

- She did something terrible, and I heard that she went
- 1 There is a lot of _____ in the centre of town at night.
- 2 A group of boys _____ the man, but fortunately he wasn't badly hurt.
 3 The young man _____ my bike and sold it in the market.
- was stolen from several houses in the street last night.
- 5 It was a very ____ crime; several people had to go to hospital.
- crime, and he'll probably go to ______ for a long time. 6 He committed a
- the law. 7 I've never
- 8 He parked in the wrong place; it was only a _____ offence, but it's still _____ the law.
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B Types of crime

Crime	The crime of	Verb	Criminal
theft	taking something which belongs to someone else without permission.	He steals cars and sells them.	thief
robbery	stealing from a person or place, often using violence.	They were planning to rob the bank.	robber
burglary	entering a building illegally and stealing things from it.	They broke into the house and stole some jewellery.	burglar
shoplifting	stealing things from a shop.	She stole a skirt from the supermarket.	shoplifter
mugging	attacking someone in a public place in order to steal from them.	He mugged people for their money late at night.	mugger
assault	hurting someone physically.	He assaulted/attacked a man. He stabbed¹ him.	attacker
murder	killing someone deliberately (= you wanted or planned to do it)	He murdered his neighbour. 2 Why did he shoot ² him?	murderer

spotlight steal and rob

You steal money or things, but you rob a person or place. Someone has stolen my bike. Thieves stole €2000 from the shop. I was **robbed** at the football match. They **robbed** the museum last night.

- One word in each sentence is wrong. Cross it out.
 - ► Thieves, robbers, murderers, and burglars all steal property.
 - 1 Rob, steal, murder, and attacker are all
 - 2 Theft, mug, robbery, and assault are all crimes.
- 3 Shooting, assaulting, stabbing, and breaking into are all ways of attacking people physically.
- 4 Mugging, assault, shoplifting, and murder are all acts of violence.
- 5 Mugger, shoplifter, thief, and burglary are all criminals.

- 6 Complete the sentences.
 - ➤ The thief stole \$1000. Two robbers ______ into the museum and ____ three paintings. A guard tried to stop them, but one robber had a knife and ______ him in the chest.
 - 2 The driver killed a man, but it wasn't murder, because he didn't do it ____
 - 3 Someone _____ me on the way home last night. He had a gun and said he would me if I didn't give him money and my mobile phone. It was horrible.
 - 4 He will be in prison for the rest of his life for ______ his wife. He bought a gun and her while she was asleep.
 - 5 A ______ broke into our house and took our jewellery and cameras.
 - The three men that bank because it was in a very quiet area.



Test yourself. Look at the crimes, and cover the other three columns. Can you remember the meanings and the verbs?

36 I can describe the justice system Do unit 35 first

A A police investigation

A crime is reported to the police, usually by the victim.

The police investigate it. The victim and witnesses tell the police what they know.



The police may take fingerprints1. or take photos where the crime took place.



If possible, they catch the suspect and arrest2 him.



If there is enough evidence. they will charge the suspect and he will go to court3.

Glossary

report sth give information that sth has happened.

victim a person who has been robbed, injured, etc.

investigate sth try to find out about sth.

witness a person who sees sth happen (e.g. a crime or an accident).

we use may to say that sth is possible, syn might. may

take place happen.

catch sb PT caught find and hold sb.

PP caught

suspect a person who the police think has committed a crime. a facts, signs, or objects that make you believe sth is true. evidence

charge sb • (of the police) say officially that they believe sb has done sth illegal.

Circle the correct word.

When a robbery has \(\bigcirc\) (aken place) reported, someone will (1) investigate/report it to the police. (2) Victims/Suspects and witnesses will tell the police what they saw. After that, the police will begin to (3) investigate/charge the crime. They may take photos and take (4) fingerprints/suspects where the robbery (5) took place/caught. They (6) will/may catch the (7) suspect/victim; if they do, they will (8) report/arrest him. If they have enough (9) evidence/victims, they will (10) catch/charge the suspect, and he will have to go to (11) court/the police station.

Answer the questions. One question has more than one answer.

▶ Who has to find the evidence? The police 5 Who is caught?

1 Who takes fingerprints?

2 Who is charged? ..

3 Who investigates the crime?

4 Who is hurt by the crime?

6 Who usually reports the crime?

7 Who is arrested?

8 Who sees the crime take place?



Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

B In court

In Britain, serious crimes such as robbery and murder are tried by a judge1 and jury2. At the trial, the prosecution aims to prove that the accused3 (or defendant) has committed the crime; the defence aims to prove he is innocent. At the end, the jury decides whether the defendant is guilty or not guilty. If he is guilty, he is sentenced by the judge. He may get a fine or a prison sentence.



True or false? Write T or F.

- In serious crimes, the judge decides whether the accused is guilty or not.
- The prosecution defends the accused.
- 2 The defendant is sentenced by the judge.
- 3 If the jury decides the defendant is innocent, he may go to prison.
- 4 With serious crimes, the jury decides what the sentence will be...
- 5 The defence aims to prove that the accused did not commit the crime.
- 6 If the accused is guilty, he may get a fine.
- 7 The judge has to prove whether the defendant is guilty or not.
- 8 Trials take place in a court.

Glossary

try sb ask questions and listen to evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth

illegal.

trial an examination of evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.

the prosecution • the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has committed a crime. prosecute sb v.

· give evidence to show that sth is prove sth true. proof N.

the defence the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has not committed the crime, defend sb v.

innocent . If you are innocent, you have done nothing wrong, opp guilty.

· tell sb who is guilty what they sentence sb will have to do, e.g. go to prison. sentence N.

fine a sum of money you have to pay if you break a law, fine sb v.

Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

-	He may get a prison <u>Sentence</u> .	SENTENCE
1	The accused is by the judge and jury.	TRY
2	The defence must that the accused is innocent.	PROOF
3	The has to show that the accused committed the crime.	PROSECUTE
4	If the is guilty, he may go to prison.	DEFEND
5	The guilty person is by the judge.	SENTENCE
6	Atakes place in court.	TRY
7	A person who is guilty may be a sum of money.	FINE



Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

37 I can discuss health issues

A Diseases common among younger people 🕟

Nowadays fewer children suffer from infectious diseases, but the number of children around the world with asthma has increased. Doctors believe that the breathing difficulties of asthma sufferers are often caused by allergies to smoke, food, or pollution. There has also been a dramatic increase in obesity in young people in the last 20 years. Amongst other things, it can lead to heart attacks, diabetes, and depression.

0	Write	the	related	adjective.
---	-------	-----	---------	------------

\triangleright	infection	infectious
1	allergy	
2	obesity	
3	depression	
4	dishates	

Circle the correct word.

- Breathing problems can be caused by asthma/depression
- Diabetes/Asthma is related to sugar in the blood.
- 2 She has a food allergy/asthma.
- 3 Diseases/Asthma can be infectious.
- 4 Instances of asthma have increased/decreased.
- 5 The increase is dramatic/infectious.
- 6 He had a heart/lung attack.

Glossary

suffer from sth have the experience of sth bad. infectious An infectious disease passes easily from person to person. infection N.

disease an illness (e.g. skin disease, kidney disease).

asthma a medical condition which makes it difficult to breathe.

increase get larger in number or amount. increase N. OPP decrease V. N.

breathe (in/out) take air into your lungs (see picture) and let it out again.

allergy a medical condition that makes you ill when you touch, eat, or breathe sth that doesn't normally make other people ill. allergic ADJ.

dramatic sudden and surprising.

obesity the state of being so fat that you are unhealthy. **obese** ADJ.

lead to sth cause or have sth as a result, often sth bad.

heart attack When sb has a heart attack, their heart (see picture) suddenly stops working normally.

diabetes a disease in which your body can't control the level of sugar in the blood. diabetic ADJ.

depression a feeling of being very unhappy (this can also be an illness). **depressed** ADJ.

Complete the sentences.

▶	If you have breathing difficulties, you may be suffering from asthma .
1	I can eat most things, but I'm to seafood. It makes me really ill.
2	So many children eat junk food; we have a big problem with in our country.
	My uncle had a heart last year, but he's fine now.
	He lost his job and became very, but he's happier now.
5	More people from asthma than in the past.
6	He's, so he has to test his blood sugar levels regularly.
7	When you in, your fill with air.
8	Obesity can to a number of serious
9	Fortunately there has been a small in numbers of children suffering from infectiou
	disposes

B Diseases common among older people 🕟

Word	Example	Meaning		
disabled disability N	My sister is disabled; she can't walk.	not able to use a part of your body properly.		
blind go or be blind syn lose your sight	My uncle is going blind .	not able to see.		
deaf go or be deaf	I'm a bit deaf, so please speak up.	not able to hear.		
(have a) stroke	She had a stroke, but she's able to walk again now.	a sudden illness which affects the brain (see picture) and can stop you walking, talking, etc.		
heart disease	He suffers from heart disease.	a serious long-term condition causing problems for your heart.		
cancer e.g. skin cancer	He got lung cancer from smoking.	a very serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body.		
arthritis arthritic ADJ	I can't walk very far because of my arthritis.	a disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc.		
memory loss	She suffers from memory loss; she forgets things easily.	a condition in which you lose your ability to remember things.		

4 Complete the words.

	lung can <u>c</u> er	4	b I
1	m m r 1 s s	5	stre
2	arrtic	6	h rt d s s
3	b r n	7	d s b 1 t y

spotlight go + adjective

Go + adjective means 'become', e.g. go blind, go deaf. You can also use it to describe a change of colour: His hair went white.
She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- 1 Arthritis means your fingers, feet, etc. may be painful.
- 2 If you are going deaf, you can't see very well.
- 3 If you lose your sight completely, you go blind.
- 4 People with cancer often have a tumour in their body.
- 5 Heart disease is the same as a heart attack.
- 6 If you suffer from memory loss, you can remember things.
- 7 A stroke attacks the lungs.
- 8 Being deaf and blind are disabilities.

6 Complete the text.

Elderly people usually become more ▶ _ d	disabled as time	goes by. My grandmother, for example,
suffers from (1) a, and she	can't walk very easi	ily. Last year she started to go a bit
(2) d, but fortunately she ha	asn't lost her (3) s	, so she can still enjoy the TV
Sadly, she suffers from (4) m	loss, but that's ver	ry common with people of her age. No
one in our family has suffered from either	r (5) c	or (6) h disease, however.

Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

38 I can talk about politics

A The British political system 🕟

In the United Kingdom (the UK), elections are held about every five years. The UK is divided into 646 political areas, called constituencies, and in each constituency people vote for one person representing the political party they want to see in power. The politician with the most votes becomes the Member of Parliament (known as an MP) for that area. Parliament, therefore, consists of 646 MPs. and the party with the majority of MPs forms the government. The leader of that party also becomes prime minister.

Glossary

election the time when people choose individuals to speak for them and act for them. **elect** y.

hold sth organize an event such as an election.

constituency one of the areas into which the country is divided for voting in political elections.

vote for sb/sth choose sb/sth in an election, vote N.

represent sb/sth act officially for people or an organization.

political party a group of people with the same ideas who want to win an election (e.g. the Labour Party, the Conservative Party).

in power in political control of the country.

politician a person with a job in politics.

parliament the group of people elected to make the laws in a country.

consist of sth be formed or made up of sth.

majority the largest number or part of sth. opp minority.
government the group of people in control of a country. govern v.
prime minister (or PM) the leader of the government in some countries.

0	True	or	false	in	Britain?	Write	Т	or	F.
---	------	----	-------	----	----------	-------	---	----	----

- ▶ The British parliament consists of 646 elected representatives. ⊤
- 1 Elections must be held every four years.
- 2 People can only vote for one person in this election.
- 3 Two or three people may be elected in each constituency.
- 4 If you are a Member of Parliament, you are in the government. ____
- 5 The leader of the largest political party in parliament becomes prime minister.
- 6 The party with the minority of elected MPs forms the government.

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ PM is an abbreviation of <u>prime minister</u>
- 1 How often do you hold _____ for parliament?
- 2 Parliament of people from a number of different political
- 3 In the UK, the Conservative Party was in _____ from 1979 to 1997.
- 4 Who did you _____ for in the last election?
- 5 Politicians _____ the people who elect them.
- 6 She had over 50 per cent of the votes, so a _____ of the people voted for her.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often does your country usually hold elections?
- 2 Which political party is in power at the moment?
- 3 How long have they been in power?
- 4 What is the title of the leader of the party?
- 5 How many people are in parliament?

B Political objectives

The government has announced that its first priority will be education, and today the prime minister will focus on the need for more young people to go to university.

A new transport **policy** will be announced today, which aims to **persuade** motorists to leave their cars at home.

The government will **face** strong **opposition** to their new **immigration** policy.

An Olympic athlete has been chosen to **launch** the government's new fitness **campaign**.



spotlight oppose, opposition

To **oppose sth** means to disagree with something and try to change it. **opposition** N. The main political party in parliament, but not forming the government, is called **the Opposition** (used with a singular or plural verb).

Glossary

objective

 a thing you are trying to do. syns aim, goal.

aim, goai

announce sth

say sth officially and in public.

announcement N.

priority

 a thing that is important or that you must do before anything else.

focus on sth

give all your attention to sth.

focus N.

need for sth

a situation in which you must

have or do sth.

policy

 a plan to do sth, agreed by a government, company, etc.

persuade sb (to do sth) give reasons to make sb agree (to

do sth).

face sth

have to deal with a difficult

situation.

immigration

 the process of coming to live in a country that is not your own (the people are called immigrants).

start sth new, especially a

campaign

launch sth

campaign or product.

(often used in politics or

business) a plan to do a number of things with a specific aim.

Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ If you persuade somebody to do something, they (do)'don't do it.
- 1 If you announce something, you say it in public/private.
- 2 A priority is important/not important.
- 3 If you face a problem, you avoid it/deal with it.
- 4 If you launch something, you start it/finish it.
- 5 Immigration is the process of coming/going to live in a foreign country.
- 6 If you oppose something, you agree/disagree with it.

5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Helping poor people is a major <u>priority</u> for the government.
- 1 Do you agree with the government's economic
- They've launched a ______ to educate people about the tax system.

 Some MPs already agree with the prime minister, but he still has to ______ others.
- 4 The USA received a lot of European ______ in the early twentieth century.
- 5 The main _____ of the education policy is to give parents more choice.
- 6 It's clear that the _____ disagree strongly with the government's policy.
- 7 In his speech, the prime minister will ______ on health issues.
 8 The government has expressed the ______ for change in their education policy.
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

39 I can talk about war and peace

A Conflict

...The **bomb exploded** in the city centre killing at least a **dozen** people ...

... Soldiers¹ fought a two-hour gun² battle and captured a number of enemy fighters ...

...The **army** have captured the airport and are now **in control of** the situation. Most enemy soldiers have now **surrendered**.

...If the current crisis gets worse, civil war could break out at any time ...





1 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- ► They're in control _d_
- 1 The conflict.....
- 2 Soldiers fought ...
- 3 Two bombs
- 4 Soldiers captured
- 5 The soldiers
- 6 A dozen

- a surrendered.
- b the main port.
- c guns were found.
- d of the city. 🗸
- e a long battle.
- f exploded.
- g lasted many years.

Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.

- They were <u>physically trying to hurt each other</u>. fighting
- 1 They were the men we fought against.
- 2 It's a dangerous and difficult period.
- 3 Many fighters have given up.
- 4 They took control of the city.
- 5 There were a dozen soldiers.
- 6 When did the bomb go off?

Glossary

conflict an angry argument or state of fighting between people or countries. (**War** is fighting between countries or groups using guns, etc.)

bomb a container packed with materials that can burst out with force.

explode burst with force and a loud noise. syn go off. explosion N.

dozen twelve or a group of twelve (half a dozen = 6). soldier (*see picture*) a person who is a member of an army.

fight PT fought When people fight, they try to hurt or kill each other (sb who fights is a fighter). fight N.

battle a fight between armies in a war.

capture sb/sth 1 catch and keep sb so they can't leave. 2 take control of sth.

enemy the people your army or country is fighting against.

be in control of sth have the power or ability to deal with sth.

surrender stop fighting and admit you have lost. SYN **give up**.

crisis a time of great danger or difficulty. critical ADJ. civil war a war between groups of people who live in the same country.

break out (used about fighting, wars, fires, etc.) start suddenly.

0			
E	Complete	the	sentences.

- ► It has become a serious <u>Crisis</u> and could end in war.
- 1 Why did war break
- 2 The exploded at 10.15.
- 3 Fifty people died in the first of the war.
- 4 There are 50,000 _____ in the army.
- 5 Are they in _____ of the situation?
- 6 The conflict could result in civil

B Compromise



Example	Word and meaning
The US and its European allies are both determined to find a solution.	ally a country that agrees to support another country. determined having a strong desire to do sth and be successful.
The two countries involved are hoping they can reach an agreement.	involved taking part in sth or connected to sth. reach an agreement arrive at a decision that both sides agree on.
Leaders from the two main parties are now negotiating, and there is some hope of a peace settlement.	leader a person who is in charge or control of sth. negotiate talk to sb in order to decide or agree on sth. peace settlement an official agreement that ends a war (peace is a time when there is no war).
The two sides have finally agreed a ceasefire.	side either of two or more groups who are arguing or fighting with each other. ceasefire an agreement between two sides to stop fighting.
If both sides are willing to compromise, there could be a settlement fairly soon.	willing to do sth happy and prepared to do sth. opp unwilling. compromise accept less than you want in order to reach an agreement. compromise N.





Cover the table above. Match 1-7 with a-h.

- a taking part in something

 1 ceasefire b having a strong desire to do something

 2 ally c an agreement to end a war or argument ✓

 3 determined d happy and prepared to do something

 4 willing e accept less than you want

 5 negotiate f an agreement to stop fighting

 6 compromise g talk to somebody in order to agree something

 7 involved h a country that has agreed to support you
- 6 Complete the texts.

The civil war has now lasted almost ten years.

Allies of the two (1) in the conflict have managed to get them to agree to a temporary (2) on several occasions, but they have never been able to get the two (3) of the sides to negotiate a peace (4) to carry on fighting to the bitter end and are completely (6) to compromise.

The two countries (7)	in the
conflict have finally ag	reed to come to the
negotiating table. Neit	ther will be willing to
(8) very i	much, but there is now
at least the possibility t	that the two leaders
could (9)	an agreement that
will lead to a more last	ing (10)
settlement.	





Test yourself. Look at the examples in the table and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

40 I can talk about events in history

Date	Event	Meaning
1066	William of Normandy invaded England and then defeated King Harold in a battle.	invade enter a country with an army to attack and take control of it. invasion N. defeat sb win a battle, vote, game, etc. against sb.
1781	William Herschel discovered the planet Uranus.	discover sth find sth that nobody has found before. discovery N.
1917	The Russian Revolution	revolution action taken by a large group of people to change the government, often using violence.
1923	Turkey became a republic.	republic a country with no king or queen.
1947	India gained independence / became independent.	gain independence become free from control by another country. independent ADJ.
1957	The European Common Market was established.	establish sth start or create an organization or system, establishment N.
1975	Prince Juan Carlos became king of Spain.	prince the son or grandson of a king or queen (a daughter is a princess).
1981	President Sadat of Egypt was assassinated.	president the leader of a country with no king or queen. assassinate sb kill a famous person, often for political reasons. assassination N.
1981	Attempt to assassinate President Ronald Reagan.	attempt the act of trying to do sth difficult (often without success). attempt to do sth v.
1990	Nelson Mandela was released from prison.	release sb allow sb to be free. release N.



Cover the table above. Match 1-5 with a-f. Then write the nouns formed from each verb in the third column.

Verb	Meaning	Noun
▶ discover_ c	a kill a famous person	▶ discovery
1 release	b enter another country with an army and attack it	
2 assassinate	c find something that nobody has found before 🗸	May compressing to more political source.
3 establish	d try to do something, often without success	
4 invade	e start or create an organization	
5 attempt	f allow somebody to be free	

Can you complete these sentences about other events in world history?

- 1 President Kennedy was _____ in 1963.2 Bill Gates and Paul Allen _____ the Microsoft Corporation in 1975.
- 3 The 'Velvet _____' took place in Czechoslovakia in 1989.
- 4 American forces _____ the British at the Battle of New Orleans in 1815.
- 5 In 1981 there was an ______ to assassinate Pope John Paul II.
 6 Argentina gained ______ in 1816 and Brazil became ______ in 1822.

Review: Social and political issues

Unit 35

•		
1		attacks someone physically is an attacker commits a crime is a kills someone deliberately is a attacks someone in the street for money is a breaks into a house and steals things from it is a steals your car is a steals things from shops is a steals from a bank is a bank .
2		The man robbed/mugged the post office. She shot/stabbed him with a kitchen knife. You don't go to prison if you obey/break the law. People who commit/break an offence may end up in prison. The two men broke into jail/the museum and stole/robbed some paintings. It was a terrible accident. Don crashed into another car and murdered/killed the driver. You don't see much violence/violent on the streets. Murder is a very serious/minor crime. They attacked/killed the guard, and he's still in hospital.
Jr	iit	36
1	a b c d e f g	The jury decided that the defendant was guilty. The police charged the suspect. A crime was committed. The suspect went to court. The police caught the suspect. The jury listened to the evidence. The police investigated the crime. The victim reported the defendant to two years in prison.
2	Co	omplete the sentences.
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7	The suspect may be guilty orinnocent . The trial takes in a court. The prosecution try to that the defendant committed the crime. The defendant is also called the Often a has to tell the court what they saw or know about the crime. If he is guilty, the defendant may get a or a prison The defendant might be guilty, or he be innocent. When the police investigate a crime, they are looking for, for example, fingerprints.
	8	If the police find a suspect, they will them and question them at the police

Unit 37

2	other people. 3 A sudden illness affecting the brain; you r 4 A medical condition which makes breathi 5 A condition in which the heart stops work 6 A serious illness in which tumours often g 7 A disease which causes pain when you be 8 A disease in which the body can't control	touch, breathe, or eat something that doesn't affect may not be able to talk afterwards. In a difficult. It is in a suddenly. It
1.	7 Obesity can lead heart disease. 8 He suffers from loss and can't remember	
	nit 38	
1	Match 1–10 with a–k.	Dec les este de la constante
	I don't belong to any political J The announcement was made by They hold The government will face We need to launch They want to persuade I don't know which party Wouldn't vote She's the Member J don't agree with their immigration The government needs to focus	 a Ben Jones represents. b a campaign. c for that party. d on better health care. e elections every four years. f policy. g the prime minister. h of Parliament for Hampstead. i strong opposition to their plan. j party. ✓ k people to accept the scheme.
2	Which words are being defined?	
	the time when people choose politicians to something that you are trying to achieve disagree strongly with something o something that is very important or that you appear the group of people elected to make and of a person whose job is in politics p in political control of a country in p be formed or made up of something c	osomething ou must do before anything else p change laws in a country p

Unit 39

1 Answer the questions. Tick (/) Yes or No.

	Yes	No
► Is a dozen less than ten?		1
1 Is a soldier a member of the army?		
2 Is a ceaselire at the beginning of a conflict?		
3 When a bomb goes off, is there an explosion?		
4 When two sides reach an agreement, do they usually compromise?		
5 If an army surrenders, does it stop fighting?		
6 Are your enemies on the same side as you?		
7 Are your allies on the same side as you?		
8 Is a civil war between people from different countries?		

2 1	s the	meaning	the	same	or	different?	Write	S	or	D.
-----	-------	---------	-----	------	----	------------	-------	---	----	----

- ► He's one of our allies. | He's one of our enemies. □
- 1 The two leaders are negotiating. | The two leaders are fighting.
- 2 They arrived at a settlement. | They reached a settlement.
- 3 There are two sides. | There are two leaders.
- 4 There's a crisis in the country. | The situation is critical in the country. ____
- 5 He wanted to do it. | He was unwilling to do it.
- 6 They captured the enemy leader. | They fought the enemy leader.
- 7 It was a long battle. It was a long war.
- 8 The war broke out in 1993. | The war started in 1993.

Unit 40

1 Complete the sentences.

▶	 Napoleon Bonaparte was 	deteated at the Battle	e of Waterloo in 1815.
1	1 In 1969, Sirhan Bishara Sirha	an was sent to prison fo	the of Robert Kennedy in
	June 1968. He is still there a	ind will never be	
2	2 Seventy days after Ronald R	eagan became	of the United States in 1981, John
	Hinckleyto	him. Reagar	n survived the attack and lived for another
	23 years.		
3	3 The Frenchsta	arted in 1789 and lasted	for ten years.
4	4 Fidel Castroa	new Communist govern	nment in Cuba in 1959.
5	Marie Curie, a Polish–French	scientist,	radium in the early part of the twentieth
	century. She died from expo	sure to radiation in 193	4.
б	Diana, of Wal	es, the first wife of Princ	e Charles, was killed in a car crash in Paris
	in 1997.		
7	7 China became a	in 1912 after two the	ousand years of imperial rule.
8	3 Zimbabweind	lependence in 1980.	

41 I can understand newspapers

A Newspaper publishing

LIFE AS AN EDITOR

eet Cyrus Davis, who has Mspent his whole working life in journalism. He's now the editor of The Evening Star, a local daily paper published in Birmingham. He's been a news reporter on several national papers, a sports editor, and a headline writer. 'The Star covers current affairs, sports, crime, and so on, but one section of our paper is about culture. It's a good paper, but newspaper sales generally are declining because of TV and the internet. It's a bad time for the press.'

Glossary		
whole journalism	complete: with no parts missing. syn entire . the profession of collecting and writing about news	in
	newspapers, on TV, etc. (a person who does this is a journalist).	
editor	the person in charge of a newspaper, magazine, etc. $\mbox{\bf edit}v.$	
daily	You can get a daily (newspaper) every day, except Sunday.	
publish sth	prepare and print a book, newspaper, etc. publishin	g I
several	more than two, but not many.	
national	connected with all of a country (international = involving two or more countries).	
headline	the title of a newspaper article (see next page).	
current affairs	important political or social events happening now.	
section	one of the parts into which sth is divided.	
culture	activities involving art, literature, music, etc. cultural ADJ.	
decline	become weaker or smaller. decline N.	
the press	newspapers and the journalists who work for them.	

- Circle the adjectives. Don't circle the verbs and nouns.
 - ▶ Internationa who leed it press declined aily journalisment irecultures ection national cultural
- Is the meaning the same or different? Write 5 or D.
 - She edits the newspaper. | She's the editor. ____S
 - 1 I didn't understand the article. | I didn't understand the headline. __
 - 2 Which section do you read first? | Which part of the paper do you read first? __
 - 3 I'm interested in current affairs. | I'm interested in cultural events. ...
 - 4 The number of journalists has declined. | The number of journalists has gone up.
 - 5 She read the entire paper. | She read the whole paper.
 - 6 She's worked there for several years. | She's worked there for many years.
- Complete the sentences.
 - ► The article is in the sports section on page 34.
 - 1 I always turn to the section on c ______ first to read about the latest films and books.

 - 3 The paper is p in Denton and sold everywhere in the region.
 4 I spent the w morning reading the news about the immediately situation.
 - 5 Newspaper sales are going up in China, but they're d______ in Europe.
 - 6 Do you buy a d______newspaper?
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B Headlines 💫

FOOTBALL FANS CLASH WITH POLICE

200 AXED CAR WORKERS PROTEST IN CITY CENTRE clash with sb fight or disagree seriously with sb about sth. clash $\ensuremath{\mathtt{N}}$.

axe sb/sth cut numbers of people, jobs, etc. by a large amount (an axe is a large tool used for cutting wood).

protest say or show that you don't agree with sth, especially in public. protest N.

Bomb scare in city centre

scare a situation in which many people are afraid or worried (e.g. bomb scare, health scare, food scare).

NURSES **DEMONSTRATE** OVER TAX CHANGES demonstrate take part in a public protest for or against sth. syn protest. demonstration/protest N.

THREAT to Hollywood Star threat a statement that sb may kill, hurt, or punish you if you don't do what they want. threaten v.

MAN **CLAIMS** DOG CAN TALK claim sth or claim that say that sth is true without having proof.

GOVERNMENT
PROMISES HIGHER
PENSIONS

promisc (to do) sth say definitely that you will do sth, or that sth will happen. SYN make a promise. promise N.

pension money paid regularly by the government or a company to sb who has stopped working because of old age (sb who receives a pension is a pensioner).

GOVERNMENT PLEDGES
AID FOR ETHIOPIA

pledge sth make a formal promise to do or give sth. pledge N. aid money, food, etc. that is sent to a country or to people to help them (aid V FML means 'give help').

- 6 Circle the correct word.
 - ► She claimed/oromised to work hard.
 - 1 There was a health scare/aid last week.
 - 2 Twenty workers were protested/axed.
 - 3 Police clashed/aided with protesters.
 - 4 They took part in a demonstration/pledge.
 - 5 She claimed/promised she was French.
 - 6 I receive a company pension/pensioner.
 - 7 There was a threat/clash to kill him.

spotlight. Verbs and nouns with the same form.

There are many words in English in which the base form of the verb and the noun are the same, e.g. clash, protest, claim, promise, pledge, and aid. There was a clash between the protesters and the police.

The police and the protesters clashed.

(See the Vocabulary Building tables on page 202.)

- 6 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word with the same meaning.
 - ► She went to the <u>public protest</u>. <u>demonstration</u>
 - 1 The company <u>made a formal promise</u> to improve services.
 - 2 He says that he is the tallest man in the country.
 - 3 We're sending money and food to the earthquake zone.
 - 4 I had a <u>frightening situation</u> last night I saw a snake in the garden.
 - 5 You should <u>act with others to say that you disagree</u> about price rises.
 - 6 My brothers <u>disagreed seriously</u> with the organizers over the arrangements.
 - 7 The man <u>said he would hurt</u> me.
 - 8 I made a <u>spoken agreement</u> and I won't break it.



Test yourself. Look at the headlines and cover the meanings. Can you explain the headlines?

42 I can talk about films

A Film awards Glossary

The BAFTAs are the British equivalent of the Oscars. The highest award, the Academy Fellowship, is a prize given for an individual's work and achievements during their career; previous winners include Hitchcock and Fellini. There are awards for the outstanding film of the year, and for special achievement by a British director, writer, or producer in their first film. There are also awards for best actor and actress in a leading role and in a supporting role. Achievements are also recognized in editing. lighting, and so on.

editing

the equivalent	sth that has the same value, amount, meaning, or
of sth	importance as sth else. equivalent ADJ.
award	 You get or win an award when you do very well in a competition.
prize	sth of value that you get when you are successful in a competition, race, etc.
individual	• one person who is seen separately from others or a group.
achievement	• sth you have done successfully that was difficult. achieve v.
winner	a person who wins a competition, game, etc.
outstanding	* extremely good; excellent.
director	 the person who tells actors what to do in a film, play, etc. direct v.
producer	• the person who is responsible for the business side of a film, play, etc. produce v.
leading role	* the most important role (or part) in a film or play (a supporting role is the next most important role).
role	• the part an actor plays (e.g. the role of Julius Caesar).

in which order. edit v.

• the process of deciding which parts of a film to show and

Complete the words.

>	<u>out</u> standing	3	porting ro	6	a c e v e
1	evalent	4	ividual	7	w n r
2	d u c e	5	ar d	8	p z e

True or false? Write T or F.

	A producer plays the leading role in the film.	F	
1	An actor directs the film	6	A producer edits films.
2	An outstanding film is very bad.	7	It's an achievement to win an award.
3	A BAFTA winner gets an award.	8	A role is what an actor wears.
4	A leading role is always a man's role.	9	A producer organizes the film's finances.
5	An individual is one person.	10	A director tells actors how to act.

Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

\blacktriangleright	Who was the <u>business manager</u> of the film? <u>producer</u>
1	Was she the <u>person who won?</u>
2	Did they get the success they wanted?
3	Who played the most important role?
4	Who <u>organized the business side of</u> the film?
5	Which part did Leonardo di Caprio play?
6	Who won the <u>prize</u> for supporting actress?
7	Is an Oscar equal in importance to a BAFTA award?
8	Was he the first <u>single person</u> to win three awards?



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B Opinions 🕟

Love it or hate it?

An **extraordinary** and **moving performance** by a great leading actor.

A **gripping** and **entertaining** thriller, and full of **drama** – I loved it.

I'm usually a fan of Jan Loos, but this movie had such a weak plot. Very disappointing indeed.

Very violent and too much **swearing** – totally **unsuitable** for children. **Disgusting!**

spotlight indeed

Use **indeed** after very and an adjective or adverb to emphasize a statement.

The film was very boring **indeed**.

I liked it very much **indeed**.

Glossary

extraordinary very unusual or much better than usual. SYN incredible. OPP ordinary.

moving causing strong feelings, especially of sadness. performance the act of playing a role in a film or play. gripping very exciting; holding your attention. entertaining interesting and fun.

drama exciting things that happen; an exciting event. dramatic ADJ.

fan sb who really likes and is enthusiastic about a person or an activity.

movie (especially in US English) a film.

plot the series of events that form the story of a film, novel, etc.

disappointing not as good as you had hoped.

swearing rude language that may upset people. swear v.

unsuitable (for sth/sb) not right or appropriate for sth/
sb. orp suitable.

disgusting very unpleasant.

6	Ar	e the adjectives	positi	ve or negativ	/e? Writ	te P or N.
	•	extraordinary P	2	ordinary	4	unsuitable

► extraordinary P 2 ordinary 4 unsuitable 6 moving 1 gripping 3 incredible 5 disappointing 7 disgusting

6 Circle the correct word.

- ► There's a lot of swear swearing in the film.
- 1 It's very funny extremely/indeed.
- 2 The plot/performance is about three men who have to look after a baby.
- 3 The drama/movie is on at the Odeon cinema.
- 4 It was an ordinary/extraordinary film I really loved it.
- 5 That film won't be suitable/disgusting for you it's much too violent.
- 6 Her performance/fan was really gripping you must see it.

Complete the words in these sentences.

1 'Casino Royale' is a really enter ______ film. 2 Forest Whitaker gave an extra ______ perf _____ in 'The Last King of Scotland'. 3 I thought 'Snakes on a Plane' was very disapp ______ ind ____. 4 I'm a f ____ of Cate Blanchett. ______ (1985) 5 'The Pianist' was very mov _____.

8 ABOUT YOU Replace the underlined names and titles with your own examples of films and actors in the 'About you' column. Compare with another student if you can.

43 I can talk about art and photography

A Painting and drawing





At an art **exhibition**, a **variety** of paintings and **drawings** may be **on display**: for example, **portraits**¹, **landscapes**², and **still lifes**³ (note the plural here is *lifes*, not *lives*). Some artists work in **oils** (**oil paints**)⁴, while others use **watercolours**⁵.



Styles vary too: some works of art are realistic, others are abstract⁶. Skilled artists use a range of techniques to create different sorts of effects.

Glossary

exhibition a collection of paintings, objects, etc. that are shown in public.

variety a number of different types of the same thing. vary v.

drawing a picture made with a pencil, pen, etc., but not paint.

on display being shown in a place where people will see it. Syn **on show**.

style the way that sth is painted, drawn, built, etc.

work of art a very good painting, drawing, book, etc. (a really great work of art, e.g. *Mona Lisa* by Leonardo da Vinci, is a masterpiece).

realistic showing things as they are. realism N.

skilled having the ability and experience to do sth well, syn **expert**.

technique a particular way of doing sth, often needing special skills.

create sth cause sth new to happen; produce sth new. **sort** a type or kind.

-								
6 D	Is the	meaning	the sam	e or	different?	Write !	5 or	D.

- ▶ watercolours | oil paints D
- 1 a drawing | a painting
- 2 on display [on show
- 3 realistic | abstract
- 4 create | make something new ____
- 5 a sort | a type
- 6 a portrait | a painting _____
- 7 a still life | a landscape ____
- 8 skilled | expert
- 9 a work of art | a painting

2 Complete the text.

Picasso is a great artist who worked in a variety of different (1) s , some realistic and others (2) a . He developed a wide range of painting (3) t . He usually painted using (4) o , but he liked to (5) v , things and sometimes used (6) w . He loved to paint people, and produced a beautiful (7) p , of his mother. Many people believe that his real (8) m , was *Guernica*, which he painted during the Spanish Civil War. In the past, the painting was on (9) d , in (10) e , all over the world, but it is now permanently in Madrid.



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the words?



lens





Word	Example	Meaning
out of focus	The photos are out of focus.	not showing things clearly. OPP in focus.
focus on sth	I focused on the girl's face.	change the camera until the image is clear.
transfer sth (from to)	I transferred the photos from the camera to a laptop.	move sth from one place to another.
develop a film	Could I have this film developed, please?	make pictures from a piece of film using chemicals.
automatic	With an automatic camera, photos are usually in focus.	able to work by itself without direct human control.
studio	She has a studio where she does fashion photography.	a room where a photographer or artist works.

4 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

	photographer	camera		flash	a film	
	focus ✓	album		of film	focus	lens
	in focus		5	develo	p	
1	digital		6	roll		
2	zoom		7	built-ir	1	
3	amateur		8	photo		
4	out of					

spotlight photography, photograph, etc.

Photography is the act of taking pictures or photos/photographs. Someone who does this as a job is a photographer; someone who does it as a hobby is an amateur photographer.

A	Write the wor	ds in the	correct order	to form	sentences
	AALLE FILE AAOL	us III tile	COLLECT OLDER	to lollil	30110011003.

- ► 1/film/please/roll/have/a/could/of Could I have a roll of film, please?
- 1 can / studio / in / films / develop / she / her___
- 2 frame / the / put / photo / I / the / in ...
- 3 negative / two / please / of / can / prints / have / I / this? _
- 4 the / focused / the / in / he / girl / foreground / on _
- photographers / automatic / often / cameras / amateur / buy ___
- 6 you / computer / to / can / the / transfer / pictures / the _

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Are you interested in photography? If so, why? ____
- 2 What kind of camera have you got? ...
- 3 What features does it have?
- 4 What kinds of problems do you have when you take pictures?

44 I can talk about music

A Musical instruments and musicians 6 1 trumpet 2 saxophone 3 flute 4 organ 5 keyboard spotlight The suffix -ist We often use this suffix for the person who plays a particular instrument, e.g. guitarist, violinist, pianist, 8 cello 9 guitar 6 piano 7 violin saxophonist, cellist, organist. But we say trumpeter. Franz Lizst was a **composer** but also a great **pianist**. drummer, and usually Chris Martin is the lead singer and main songwriter in the keyboard player. The word rock band Coldplay. for a flute player is flautist: Mark Elder is the conductor of the Hallé Orchestra. note the change in spelling. Glossary band a number of people who play music together. musical instrument a thing that is used for playing SYN group. conductor the person in an orchestra who directs musician a person who plays a musical instrument. the musicians. composer a person who writes music. compose v. orchestra a large group of musicians who play lead singer the main singer in a band. music together. songwriter a person who writes the words and music for a song. Complete the words for the musical instruments, then write the person who plays them. pjano / pianist 4 gu ____/___ 1 vi/____/ 2 or ____/ Complete the words in the sentences. ► They both play in a rock band 1 My brother plays the violin in an o______. 2 Noel Gallagher plays the g______ in the rock b______ 'Oasis', and his brother Liam is the I_____singer. 3 Do you play a musical i ______? 4 I don't like modern c ______ such as Bartók and Stockhausen. 5 Paul Simon sings and plays the guitar but is most famous as a s...... 6 Mike's playing guitar, but who is the keyboard p.____? 7 There are five in the band and they're all good m_____ 8 Sir Georg Solti was the c______ of several wonderful orchestras.

B Who do you admire?

Music questionnaire

- 1 Write the name of a modern band or solo artist that you admire.
- 2 Has their music been influenced by cnyone/anything?
- 3 Do they write and **record** their own music or play other people's?
- 4 Do they often do live concerts? Have you seen them play live?
- 5 What was the last album they released?
- 6 Why does their music **appeal** to you? Is it because of:
 - a great voice / talented musicians / lovely melodies / good lyrics?

Glossary

solo artist a singer or musician who is not part of a band.

admire sb like sb and think they have achieved a lot. admiration N.

influence sb/sth make a change to the way sb thinks, influence N.

record sth put music, a film, etc. onto a CD or tape. **recording** N.

album a collection of songs (often eight or ten).

release sth put an album onto the market so people can buy it. release N.

appeal to sb be attractive or interesting to sb. **appeal** N.

voice the sound a person makes when they talk or sing.

talented having a lot of ability. talent ${\tt N}.$

melody a series of musical notes in a particular order. Syn **tune** INF.

lyrics the words of a song.

spotlight living, alive, live

Living and alive mean 'not dead', but alive is not used before a noun. He's one of the greatest living composers. Mozart isn't alive today.

Live ADJ, ADV (sounds like five) means 'seen or heard as it is happening'.

We saw the band play live, then watched a recording of the concert on TV.

- 4 Circle the correct answer.
 - James Brown isn't live alive any longer.
 - 1 I like the tune but not the lyrics/melody.
 - 2 Is he a solo/single artist?
 - 3 I've never seen the band live/alive.
- 4 Katie Melua has a great tune/voice.
- 5 He's one of the best living/alive songwriters.
- 6 The song has a beautiful melody/voice.
- 7 His music appeals/influences to me.
- 5 Complete the text with words from the box.

albums influenced talented ✓ release appeals solo recorded admire recording

Gilberto Gil is a Brazilian singer and guitarist, and one of his country's most ➤ talented songwriters. As a young musician in the 1950s, he was (1) _______ by the bossa nova style of João Gilberto, but he didn't (2) ______ his first album, Louvação, until 1967. He travelled in the 1970s, (3) ______ an album in English, and, in 1980, introduced reggae to Brazil with his (4) ______ of the Bob Marley song, 'No woman, no cry'. He has played with many musicians, while continuing his career as a (5) ______ artist. In all he has produced over 40 (6) ______ . His music (7) ______ to people because of the rhythm and melodies, but people also (8) ______ him for his work in politics and for social causes.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.

45 I can talk about people and places in sport

A People 🕟

Word	Example	Meaning
referee ref inv (see picture)	The referee gave out five yellow cards.	the official person in control in some sports (in tennis this is an umpire).
linesman (see picture)	The linesman put his flag¹ up for offside, but I think he was wrong.	a person who helps the referee in some sports. syn referee's assistant .
manager	José Mourinho has been manager of Porto and Chelsea.	the person in control of a football team (also coach in some countries).
coach	Andy Murray has a new tennis coach.	a person who gives practical teaching to make sb better in a sport.
captain	Fabio Cannavaro was the Italian captain in the 2006 World Cup.	the player who is leader of the team.
spectators	Spectators ran onto the pitch (= the area where the game is played).	people who watch a game (also the crowd).
supporters	Many football supporters travel all over Europe to see their team.	people who regularly watch a team play. syn fans. support v.
commentator	I thought the commentator was talking rubbish.	a person who describes a game on TV or the radio.

spotlight Suffix -er and player

We usually add -er or player to a

noun or verb for the person who

does a sport: golfer, swimmer,

skier, racing driver, boxer,

tennis player, rugby player. But: athletics/athlete. gymnastics/gymnast.

Cover the spotlight box and complete the list of people.

▶ football footballer 4 motor racing _____ 1 golf _____ 5 rugby 2 athletics _____ 6 skiing 3 boxing ____ 7 gymnastics

Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ They have a special manage/coach to improve their fitness.
- 1 The captain/manager wears an armband during the game.
- 2 The referee/umpire gave him a red card.
- 3 I lead/support Real Madrid, and go to most of their home games.
- 4 In the men's singles final at Wimbledon, they had a Portuguese referee/umpire.
- 5 There were 40,000 in the ground, of which about 5,000 were Arsenal spectators/supporters.

Complete the words in the text.

'There was trouble at last week'	's game. Our ▶ captain	got a red card in the second half
for arguing with the (1) r	, and then the othe	r team scored a goal in the last
minute, although the (2) l	had his (3) f	up for offside. Even the
(4) c on the radi	o thought it was offside, but	the ref gave the goal. At the end of
the match, some (5) f	who were in the (6) c_	then ran onto the
(7) p, and the re	eferee had to have a police es	cort. In the press conference after
the game, our (8) m	was still very angry.'	

B Places

The Camp Nou Stadium, the ground of Barcelona football club, is the largest stadium in Europe with a capacity of 98,800 spectators.

Hochenheim is a motor-racing circuit where the German Grand Prix sometimes takes place. One lap of the track is 4.574 kms.

The Centre Court at Wimbledon is famous worldwide. Now they have constructed the new roof, the All England Championship won't be interrupted because of rain.

A standard Olympic swimming pool is 50 metres long, 25 metres wide, and has a minimum depth of two metres.

spotlight long, wide, deep

Long, wide, and deep can describe measurements.

The pool is 50 metres long.

= The length of the pool is 50 metres.

The pool is 25 metres wide.

= The width of the pool is 25 metres.

The pool is 2 metres deep.

= The **depth** of the pool is 2 metres.



Glossary

stadium a large structure where people sit and watch sport.

ground an area of land where a game is played and people watch.

club A football club is the team, the management, and the ground.

capacity the amount or number that a space or container will hold.

circuit an area of land, often in a circle, where a race takes place, syn track.

lap one journey around a track.

court a place where tennis, basketball, or badminton are played.

worldwide everywhere in the world. syn all over the world.

construct sth build or make sth. construction N.

championship a competition to find the best player or team in a sport.

interrupt sth stop the progress of sth for a short period of time.

standard normal; average.

minimum smallest possible or smallest allowed. OPP maximum.

Complete the sentences.

- ► Worldwide means all over the world.
- 2 A synonym for *circuit* is
- 3 The noun from wide is ____

- 5 The noun from deep is _____.
- 6 The noun from *construct* is ______.
- 7 One journey round a track is a ____

Complete the words in each text.

- 1 Liverpool Football ► Club is planning to c a new football s , with a c..... of over 60,000.
- It's the most expensive t______ ever c______, costing \$240m. 3 The French Open Tennis C at Roland Garros is famous w as the only one
- of the four major tournaments that is played on clay c_____s.
 - m_____ is one metre, and the m_____ is two metres.

46 I can describe sporting events Do Unit 45 first

A The Olympics 🞧



- The first games took place in 776 BC, with one competition, a race of about 192 metres.
- The first modern Olympics took place in 1896 with 241 competitors taking part in nine sports: athletics¹, cycling², fencing³, gymnastics⁴, weightlifting⁵, shooting⁶, swimming, tennis, and wrestling⁻, By 2004, there were over 11,000 people competing in 28 sports.
- Gymnast Larissa Latynina holds the record for the most Olympic medals (18).
- Boxing is now the only Olympic sport where professionals are not allowed to compete.

Glossary

take place (used about a meeting or an event) happen.

competition a situation in which two or more people are trying to win sth or be better than sb (a person trying to win is a competitor). compete v. competitive ADJ.

race a competition to see who is fastest or best, or who wins.

take part in sth join with other people in an activity. SYN participate.

medal a piece of metal given to an athlete who comes 1st, 2nd, or 3rd.

professional a person who plays a sport for money as their job. opp **amateur**.

spotlight record

A record is the best performance in something, especially sport.

She holds the record for the long jump. (She has the record.)

He broke the record in the 100 metres. (He set a new record.)

6 wre
petition.
es part on Tuesday.
1?
record?
events.
n.
Olympics.
Olympics.
r

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the sports?

B Winners and losers

In a very one-sided contest, Roger Federer defeated Andy Roddick 6-4, 6-0, 6-2 in the semi-final of the Australian Open to go through to his tenth grand slam final. Federer won the first set quite easily, then broke Roddick's resistance in the second with some brilliant tennis. Afterwards, Roddick was very critical of his own performance, but praised his opponent for some outstanding tennis. Federer is now clearly the favourite to take his third Australian Open, and tenth grand slam overall. This would put him just one behind Rod Laver, a tremendous achievement for someone who is still only 25.

spotlight defeat

As a verb, to **defeat sb** means to be stronger or better than somebody in a game, fight, etc. syn **beat sb**.

Italy **defeated** Wales 2–0 in the last match they played.

As a noun, a **defeat** is an occasion

As a noun, a defeat is an occasion when you don't win something.

We won our first match, then followed it with three defeats.

Glossary • If a game is **one-sided**, one person or team is much better than the other. one-sided an activity between two players or teams to see who is best. contest semi-final · one of two games to decide who plays in the final. the last game or match in a competition. final the action of trying to stop sth happening or stop sb doing sth. resist v. resistance very good, clever, or skilful. syn outstanding. brilliant * saying what is wrong with sth/sb. criticize sth/sb v. critical of sth/sb performance the way in which sb plays or does sth. perform v. * say that sb/sth is very good. praise N. praise sb/sth a person who plays against you in a sport or competition. opponent favourite * the person or team who is expected to win. opp outsider. overall · including everything; in total. achievement a thing that you have done successfully through hard work or skill. achieve sth v. Complete the sentences. ► The noun related to **perform** is <u>performance</u>. 4 The noun related to **praise** is _____. 1 The noun related to achieve is 5 Outstanding is a synonym for 2 The verb related to critical is ____ 6 An **outsider** is the opposite of a ___ 3 The noun related to resist is ______ 7 **Beat sb** is the same as ____ 6 Complete the sentences. We were defeated in the semi-final, which was very disappointing. 1 Nadal won the match in the end, but it was a great ______ 2 He was the winner in 1998, 2003, and again in 2008, so that's three titles ____ 3 Bjorn Borg won Wimbledon five times, which is a fantastic ____ 4 He was the ______, so we expected him to win, but it was a very one_____ contest. 5 Tiger Woods aims for perfection and is always very ______ of his own performance. 6 Who will her ______ be in the final? ~ I don't know. It depends on the other _____ -final.

Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words.

What are the meanings?

47 I can talk about books

A Types of book 🔊

I read a huge amount. As an editor, I'm always using reference books such as dictionaries, encyclopedias. manuals, catalogues, and so on. But I read a lot for pleasure too, and I particularly like poetry. At home all my books are arranged in alphabetical order (I know that's a bit strange!). I've got loads of novels, murder mysteries, science fiction, etc. But there is non-fiction as well; I read quite a lot of biographies. My husband says I'm book-crazy.

Glossary	are the arminer of the think and the administration of the article of the arminer of the article of the arminer of the article
10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-1	a phock was used to find a pieus of information
	a book you use to find a piece of information.
encyclopedia	 a book or set of books that gives information about many different subjects, arranged in alphabetical order.
manual	a book that tells you how to do or use sth such as a car or
	a computer.
catalogue	a complete list of things you can buy or see somewhere.
pleasure	a feeling of enjoyment.
poetry	 poems in general (a poem is a piece of writing arranged in short lines which express thoughts and feelings through sound and rhythm).
alphabetical	* listed in the same way as the alphabet: A, B, C, etc.
novel	 a book that tells a story about people or events that are not real.
mystery	a story in which the events are only explained at the end
	(c.g. a murder mystery).
science fiction	books about events that take place in the future, often involving travel in space. syn sci-fi INF.
non-fiction	books about real facts, people, events, etc. orp fiction.
biography	* the story of sb's life written by someone different (an autobiography is the story of sb's life written by that
	person).

Omplete the table with words from the box.

catalogue / murder mystery autobiography manual reference book encyclopedia novel biography sci-fi

Fiction	Non-fiction	
	catalogue	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	parting approximate the state of the numerous properties the state of	000

- 2 Complete the sentences.
 - ► A dictionary is arranged in <u>alphabetical</u> order.
 - 1 If you don't know the date of the French Revolution, look it up in an ______
 - 2 Shakespeare is famous for his plays, but he also wrote beautiful ______.
 - 3 Dictionaries are a kind of _____book.
 - 4 What kind of books do you read for ______ in the evenings?
 - 5 Do you read crime stories? ~ Yes, I'm reading a murder ______ at the moment.
 - 6 What's the tenth letter of the _____? ~ It's 'J'.
 - 7 Did David Beckham write his life story himself? ~ Yes, it's his
 - 8 If you don't know how your camera works, you should look in the ______.
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

Choosing a book 🎧	Glossary	
	title	• the name of a book, play, film, etc.
Booksellers' survey: how did you	cover	the outside part of a book, magazine
choose the last book you read?	attract sb's	"If sth attracts your attention, it
and front cover just	attention	interests you so that you want to look at it.
d my attention.	browse	spend time pleasantly in a shop
A Company of the Comp	browse	looking at things.
was browsing in a bookshop. I just picked p a paperback that looked interesting.	paperback	a book with a thick paper cover
o a puperback man looked imerosing.		(a hardback has a hard cover).
	readable	easy or interesting to read.
nmendation by a friend – he said ery readable and well written.	gift	a thing that you give to sb, e.g. for the
Try readable direction		birthday. syn present .
	author	*the writer of a particular book, play
It was a gift , but I like the author so I was really pleased.	_	read sth quickly. SYN skim sth.
	sth	
ced through the first	chapter	one of the parts into which a book divided.
ter – it looked fascinating.	fascinating	• very interesting.
	+ past participle, t about a subject),	e.g. well written (of a book, well known (= famous).
article, etc.), well informed (= knowing a localistic (✓) the correct sentence ending. Who is the author ☑ gift ☐ ? The cover attracted my chapter ☐ attention The author was well known ☐ well written I read the second title ☐ chapter ☐ . The book looked very readable ☐ well info I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the	+ past participle, t about a subject).	well known (= famous). erback .
article, etc.), well informed (= knowing a lo Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending. Who is the author ☑ gift ☐ ? The cover attracted my chapter ☐ attention The author was well known ☐ well written I read the second title ☐ chapter ☐ . The book looked very readable ☐ well info I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the complete the text. My cousin has just written a reference book. H	+ past participle, t about a subject), a □ . rmed □ . hardback □ pap acting □ browsin	well known (= famous). erback . g . known, but he's a good (1)
article, etc.), well informed (= knowing a lo Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending. ► Who is the author ☑ gift ☐ ? 1 The cover attracted my chapter ☐ attention 2 The author was well known ☐ well written 3 I read the second title ☐ chapter ☐ . 4 The book looked very readable ☐ well info 5 I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the	+ past participle, t about a subject), a subject pap acting □ browsing □	well known (= famous). erback . mg . known, but he's a good (1) because it's called 'How to make a lo ! It's being published in hardback elling things on the internet, and it's c there's a picture of m
article, etc.), well informed (= knowing a lo Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending. Who is the author ☑ gift ☐ ? The cover attracted my chapter ☐ attention The author was well known ☐ well written The book looked very readable ☐ well info well written well written well written well written well written well info wel	+ past participle, tabout a subject), tabout a subject), tabout a subject), the control of the	erback
Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending. Who is the author ☑ gift ☐ ? The cover attracted my chapter ☐ attention The author was well known ☐ well written The book looked very readable ☐ well info was in a bookshop the other day, just attracted in a reference book. He a His book might attract a lot of (2) of money by doing very little' — isn't that a great and (4) p I read the first (5) c really (6) f I couldn't put it down cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask What kind of books do you find most fascing the surface in the first (5) or a sill with the surface in the	+ past participle, t about a subject). n □ . rmed □ . hardback □ pap acting □ browsin e's not ▶ well 2) a 3 (3) t 4 about s 4. On the front (7) t's a funny book a another studer hating?	well known (= famous). erback known, but he's a good (1) because it's called 'How to make a loog of the lit's being published in hardback elling things on the internet, and it's c there's a picture of mind it's (8) well w
article, etc.), well informed (= knowing a location of the correct sentence ending. Who is the author ☑ gift ☐ ? The cover attracted my chapter ☐ attention of the author was well known ☐ well written of the book looked very readable ☐ well infoor of the look looked very readable ☐ well infoor of the look in a bookshop the other day, just attract of the look looked were reference book. He was in a bookshop the other day, just attract of the look looked were reference book. He was in a bookshop the other day, just attract of the look looked were little in it is not that a greater of the look looked were little in it is not that a greater of the look looked were little in it is not that a greater of the looked loo	+ past participle, tabout a subject), tabout subject a funny book a funny book a funny book a funny fu	erback
Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending. Who is the author ☑ gift ☐ ? The cover attracted my chapter ☐ attention The author was well known ☐ well written The book looked very readable ☐ well info was in a bookshop the other day, just attracted in a reference book. He a His book might attract a lot of (2) of money by doing very little' — isn't that a great and (4) p I read the first (5) c really (6) f I couldn't put it down cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask What kind of books do you find most fascing the surface in the first (5) or a sill with the surface in the	+ past participle, tabout a subject). n □ . rmed □ . chardback □ papacting □ browsin e's not ▶ well 2) a . 3 (3) t . about s 4. On the front (7) t's a funny book a another studer chating?	erback

Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

48 I can describe festivals



'LA TOMATINA': THE WORLD'S BIGGEST TOMATO FIGHT

The event takes place every August in Buñol, Spain. People come from all over the world to participate in this huge social occasion, which includes music, parades, dancing, and fireworks. The main event is a tomato fight in which 100 tons of over-ripe tomatoes are thrown in the streets. Trucks bring the tomatoes into the town, and the fight begins; it ends after exactly one hour. No one is very sure how or why this festival started!

CHERRY BLOSSOM FESTIVAL, JAPAN

Cherry **blossom** is the national flower of Japan. And as spring **approaches**, people make special trips to various viewing sites to see the first signs of the cherry trees in flower. The trees are sometimes **lit up** at night. The festival includes all sorts of delicious food, games, rides, **parades**, folk music, religious ceremonies, and a beauty **contest**.





THE RIO CARNIVAL ('CARNAVAL')

One of the most spectacular entertainments in the world, Carnival is a wild four-day celebration of music, dance, and food and drink, all over Rio. The event means a lot to the people from the poorest neighbourhoods, who spend months in preparation. It is an opportunity for the whole community to go out and have fun together. It ends with the Samba Parade, for which the performers dress up in the most striking costumes.

spotlight festival, carnival, parade

A festival is a day or days when people celebrate something, often a religious event. A carnival is like a festival with people dancing and playing music in the streets. A parade is an organized event in which people move (parade v) through the streets, often on special vehicles, wearing costumes (special clothes), and playing music.

Glossary

participate (in sth) * be

become part of an activity, syn take part in sth.

occasion

a time when sth happens.

fireworks

objects that burn or explode in the sky with colours and noise.

ton

a unit for measuring weight in Britain (one ton = 1,016 kilograms).

throw sth

use your hand and arm to send an object through the air.

blossom

a flower or mass of flowers especially on fruit trees in spring.

approach sb/sth

come nearer to sb/sth.

light sth up

make sth bright with light, syn illuminate sth.

contest

a competition to see who is the best (e.g. a beauty contest).

spectacular

very impressive; large, beautiful, and often with lots of colour.

entertainment

 an activity that people enjoy watching and listening to, e.g. theatre, film, music (the people who entertain you are entertainers).

wild

exciting and enjoyable.

mean a lot to sb

be very important to sb.

neighbourhood

 $^{\circ}$ an area of a town and the people who live there.

community

all the people who live in an area or town.

have fun

· cnjoy yourself.

dress up striking

put on special clothes either for fun or for a formal event.
very attractive in a way that causes people to notice.

0	Fi	nd one spelling mistake in each sentence	e. V	Vrite the correct word at	the end.
	1 2 3 4 5 6	The event is really designed to serve the local It was really amazing to see the trees iluminated Carneval takes place once a year, usually during As we approached the centre, we saw that the It was a really espectacular evening, which we the fastival takes place every three years. The display of firewerks was absolutely amazing picked tuns of grapes. Spring is the time when people make special	ted ng t e en e w ing.	at night the holiday season tertainment had started ill never forget	
2	M	atch 1–8 with a–i.			
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7	The trees are covered in _e	b c d e f g h	contest. flowers at the entertainers. lit up the night sky. fun together. blossom. take part in the event. occasion. a lot to the community. special costumes.	
8	1	We had a good time watching the carnival parties with a good time watching the carnival parties with a good time watching the carnival parties were going to a party so we decided to partie the church is usually lit up at night. She was wearing a very attractive and unusually is a great time because everyone goes onto The festival is an important event in the local	out al d the	ne. <u>fun</u> on special clothes for it. ress. e streets.	
4	Co	omplete the questions.			ABOUT YOUR
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	What is the most important f or Do people p through the streets as Do you have other kinds of e duri Have you ever t p in a p Have you ever d u in a solf so, what did you wear? Are there any special o when you Do these different events m a lot to Would you like to p in any of the form through the streets as Do these different events m a lot to Which one(s) and why?	s a programment of the second	part of it? t? de? If so, what did you do? ial costume for a festival? e fat night? ou personally?	national transfer to the state of the state
6		BOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answe	ers	to the questions in Exerc	ise 4, or ask

Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Say the words.

Review: Media and entertainment

Unit 41

1	One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end. I spent the whose day waiting for the electrician to come. The president received many death threads during his life. Sales of newspapers have reclined over recent years. I worry a lot about bomb stares where I live. Are you interested in currant affairs? I saw a huge demonstration today; people were protecting about the war. Do you usually get a dairy paper? ~ Yes, I get The Times.
2	One word is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.
	cultural editor pension made ✓ journalist claims headline
	I do promise to help her, so I will do it
Ur	nit 42
1	Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?

- 1 the process of deciding which parts of a film to show.
- 2 film
- 3 the part an actor plays
- 4 the person who comes first in a competition
- 5 extraordinary; very much better than usual
- 6 the series of events that form the story of a film
- 7 not as good or interesting as you had hoped
- 8 rude language that may upset people

The letters in the grey squares make the word

Unit 43

1 Which words or phrases are being defined?

▶	an <u>exhibition</u> of paintings: a collection of paintings which are on display to the public
	an camera: one which works by itself
2	an painting: a painting that shows the artist's feelings rather than showing the
	exact appearance of people or things
3	a a place where an artist or photographer works
4	focus: not able to be seen clearly
5	a drawing: one that shows things as they really are
6	a a painting or drawing of the countryside
7	a: a type or kind
	artist: an artist who has a lot of shility and experience

Unit 44

1 Complete the words. Then write P next to those that are people.

```
      ▶ record
      ▶ violinist
      ₱

      1 c nd ct_r
      7 tr_mp_t

      2 l d s ng_r
      8 m l d

      3 k yb rd pl y r
      9 fl t st

      4 c mp s r
      10 g t r st

      5 fl t
      11 s x ph n

      6 b nd
      12 s l rt st
```

Unit 45

1 Tick (✓) the two correct words or phrases.

▶ five thousand spectators 🗸 commentators 🗆 supporters 🗸

	2	a football ground stadium circuit 4 a motor-racing track ground circuit 5 a football club referee umpire 6 a worldwide deep standard pool
2		mplete the sentences with a suitable word.
	>	The other members of the team chose him as their <u>captain</u> .
	1	They're a new stadium. It will be finished next year.
	2	The ground has a of 50,000.
	3	I watch my team every week. I've them for 25 years.
	4	Alonso completed the last of the circuit in one minute and 37 seconds.
		The game was for 25 minutes because the lights went out.
		A of 28,000 watched the last game.
		Who won the Drivers' World last year?

8 The ______ of a football pitch is about 100 metres; the _____ is about 50.

Unit 46

1	Match	1_9	with	a-i	
	TVICECTI		AAACIA	u i	

•	It was an outstandingf_	
1	About thirty took part	
2	It was a very one-	

2 It was a very one-3 He was critical

4 He still holds

5 She's the favourite
6 She's in the semi-

7 The game takes _____

8 He's a difficult ...

9 She won five titles

a overall

b of the performance.

c the record.

d place on Tuesday.

e in yesterday's race.

f to win.

g performance. 🗸

h sided contest.

i final

j opponent

Unit 47

1 Tick the correct column.

	Yes	No
► If a novel is readable, it means that you have definitely read it.		1
1 Reference books are useful when you want to get information.		
2 There is often a picture on the cover of a book.		
$3\ \Lambda$ well-known person is someone only a few people have heard of.		
4 An encyclopedia is arranged in alphabetical order.		
5 If you are browsing in a shop, you definitely won't buy anything.		
6 You'll find novels in the non-fiction section of a bookshop.		
7 An autobiography is someone's life story, written by someone else.		
8 A manual is something most people read for pleasure.		

Unit 48

1 One word or phrase is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end. Use words from the box in the correct form.

	wild	festival	community 🗸	throw	mean	striking	parade	take part	neighbourhood
•	Anyon	e in the v	vhole / can part	icipate.	COMML	ınity			
			gh the main stre				m e		
2	The pe	ople in th	ne where I live a	re very fi	riendly.		-64		
3	It's a tv	vo-day, v	which we have e	very yea	r				
4	It was	quite a pa	arty; we had gre	at fun.					
	-		parades?						
	, ,		ival: it a lot to m						
			ly dress with gol						
8	We all	had to a	ball and try to h	it the me	oving ob	ject.			

49 I can get through exams 6

A guide to exam success

- Follow the invigilator's instructions. Don't take any forbidden items into the room, or try to communicate with other candidates. You will be disqualified for cheating.
- Before you start, read the paper carefully. Don't waste time copying the questions; the examiner knows what they are.
- Planning is essential in successful writing, Devote 5–10 minutes to making notes.
- Have a positive attitude. It's your chance to show what you know.
 And it will be a relief when it's all over in a few hours.

Glossary			
success	 the achievement of sth you have wanted. succeed v. 	paper carefully	the written questions in an exam.If you read sth carefully, you read
follow instructions	do what sb tells you to do.		slowly and pay attention.
invigilator	 the person watching students in the exam room. 	examiner	 the person who will read and mark the candidate's answer.
item communicate	a thing or an object.talk to or make signs to sb.	planning	 the act or process of making plans for sth.
with sb	and to of indicate organization	essential	- completely necessary and
candidate	 a person taking an exam. 		important in a particular situation.
disqualify sb	 officially stop sb from taking part in sth because they 	devote time to sth/sb	* give proper time to sth/sb.
	have broken a rule.	attitude	* the way you think, feel, or behave.
cheat	a do sth dishonest to get an advantage for yourself (a person is a cheat N).	relief	 the feeling you have when sth unpleasant stops. relieved ADJ.

Circle the correct word.

- ► Read the planning paper carefully.
- 1 The examiner/invigilator watches students during the exam.
- 2 What's the best way to achieve relief/success in the exam?
- 3 If you want to succeed/cheat, you should study hard.
- 4 A positive attitude/candidate will help you be more successful.
- 5 Students should communicate/follow the instructions they hear.
- 6 If you cheat, you will be disqualified/relieved.

2 Complete the words in the text.

My brother has very	little ► success i	n exams. He gets very nei	vous and generally has a
negative (1) a	to them. He's	s so nervous that he can't	follow the (2) i
given by the (3) i		forgot that he had his did	tionary in his pocket; he was
accused of (4) c	and was (5	i) d for takin	g a forbidden (6) i
into the exam room.	My mother gives his	m lots of advice, though;	she tells him not to panic and to
read the (7) p	slowly before	he writes anything, and	that it's (8) ethat he
plans his answers (9)) c Ho	wever, he never (10) d	enough time to the
(11) p,	so the (12) e	must find his answ	ers very difficult to understand.
In our house, it's alw	ays such a (13) r	if he passes an	exam.



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

50 I can describe university life

A Academic life 🕠

Word	Example	Meaning
academic	I enjoy academic subjects like history.	connected to education, especially school or university.
undergraduate	Undergraduates usually do a three-year course.	a university student studying for their first degree.
graduate	She's an Oxford graduate. He graduated last year.	a person who has finished their degree (when they finish, they graduate v).
tutor	You can ask your tutor for advice on your work.	sb who teaches and looks after a student or a small group of students.
professor	She's a professor of law.	the highest level of teacher in a university.
lecture	I went to an interesting lecture on Italian politics.	a talk given to a large group to teach them a subject (the person is a lecturer N).
seminar	Are you going to the seminar this morning?	a class at a university where a small group discuss a subject with a tutor.
debate	We had a great debate.	a formal discussion.
attend sth	You have to attend lectures.	go to sth, or be present at sth.
take notes	Don't forget to take notes.	write words quickly to help you remember sth.
read widely	Try to read widely.	read a lot of different kinds of books.
write a thesis	I'm writing a thesis on global warming.	do a long piece of writing on a particular academic subject.
do research	You do research for a PhD.	do a long and careful study of a subject.
continuous assessment	We don't have exams; it's all continuous assessment.	a way of judging students by looking at the work they do during the year.

Tick (✓) the words that are people.

•	professor 🗸		assessment X		
1	thesis	4	graduate	7	seminar
2	debate	5	undergraduate	8	research
3	lecture	6	tutor	9	lecturer

2 Complete the text.

If you are an ▶ undergro	aduate at university in Britain, you s	pend a lot of time study	ing alone,
but you also have to (1)	a a lot of (2) s	and (3) I	and take
(4) n	eminars, the discussion is usually led	d by a (5) t	. You have to
read (6) w	and you may have to express your	opinions on a range of	(7) a
topics. In many courses,	there is continuous (8) a	: the marks you get t	for your essays go
towards your final results	s, after which, if you are successful,	, you (9) g	



Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B Student life

Advice for new students

6 Would you like the c.....

Can you remember the words?

- In Britain, many university students live away from home. This means you get the freedom and opportunity to meet new people. Most students choose to live in a hall of residence in their first year, where you are less likely to be homesick or lonely.
- Student life is all about learning to manage your money: tuition fees, loans, bills, accommodation fees, etc. You may be able to get a scholarship, and many students find part-time jobs to help pay the bills.
- At university, you can be flexible about when you study, but be sure to get out of bed in time for lectures, do your work on time, and plan your revision period before exams.

Glossary			
	in a different place from your home. orp at home.	fees	 money you pay for the professional advice or service of a doctor, lawyer etc. (tuition fees are the money
freedom	 the right or ability to say or do what you want. 		that you pay to be taught).
opportunity	the possibility to do sth that you want to do. syn chance.	loan	If you take out a loan, you borrow money, usually from a bank.
hall of residence	 (in universities) a building where students live. 	scholarship	money that an organization gives sb to help them study.
homesick	 sad because you are away from home and you miss it. 	flexible revision	 able to change easily. flexibility N. the process of studying sth again to
manage sth	* be in control of sth.		prepare for an exam. revise v.
4 Complete the	e sentences with words from t	he box.	spotlight in time, on time
	on time in time manage flexi ty freedom homesick	ble✓	If you are in time for something, you arrive before or at the correct time. If you are on time for something, you
1 I had the 2 The train wa 3 I think child	u any day this week – I can be fleet the president. as, fortunately. ren have too much before the exam.		arrive at exactly the correct time. He arrived in time for the lesson. (= before the lesson started.) The lesson started on time. (= at the correct time.)
	v how to my money. to see Joel before he	left	
_	ad for a year but I was		d my family.
6 Complete the	questions. Then write your a	nswers, or a	sk another student.
			ABOUT YOU
2 Do most stu 3 Do they hav	s usually live at home, or a udents live in halls of r fees? The to pay t fees? The to take out l to pay	_?	me?
,	et a s to help pay for t		Hadfilliti I and the second se

___ to study abroad?

Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings.

51 I can apply for a job A

Applying for a job with FamAid UK

Wherever you are **based**, you can apply for any advertised **vacancy**.

Work permits

For jobs in the UK, you will usually be expected to have a **valid** UK work permit. For jobs outside the UK, the local FamAid office will **advise** you about the permit you may need.

Closing dates

Your **application** must reach us by the advertised closing date. Online applications will be **acknowledged automatically** by email.

Selection process

If we would like you to attend an interview, we will contact you. At that time, and if required, we will also assess other skills you may have or need.

If you are not successful, we will contact you and, wherever possible, **give** you **feedback**.

If you are the successful **candidate**, we will offer you the position, but this is **subject to** satisfactory **references**. We shall also request **confirmation** that you are medically fit to do the job and have the necessary permit/visa.

Glossary			
apply for sth	 ask for sth in writing (often a job or course). 	process	• a series of things that are done for a particular reason.
be based somewher	place , that place is the centre for your work.	interview	a meeting in which sb is asked questions to find out if they are suitable for a job, course, etc. (the person who asks the questions is an
vacancy	 a job that is available for sb to do. 		interviewer), interview sb v.
work permit	an official document	contact sb	phone or write to sb.
	which says you are allowed to work.	assess sth/sb	 decide on the quality or ability of sth/sb. assessment N.
valid	 If sth is valid, it is legally acceptable and can be 	give sb feedback	give sb advice or criticism about how they have done sth
advise sb	used. tell sb the best thing to	candidate	 a person who makes a formal application for a job.
	do, syn give sb advice (advice n , u).	reference	a statement or letter which describes sb's character and
acknowledge sth	 let sb know that you have received sth from them. 		ability to do a job (a person who writes this is a referee).
	acknowledgement N.	confirmation	a statement in writing
automatically	 without any human control. 		which says that sth is true or accurate. confirm v.

spotlight Formal language

In a written text like this, some language will be formal. For example: **attend sth** (= go to/for sth), **require sth** (= need sth), **request sth** (= ask for sth), **subject to sth** (= depending on sth), **position** (= job), and **shall** (= will). The words in bold are more formal than the words in brackets, which we would normally use in spoken English.

Verb Noun Verb Noun	
The state of the s	Walking Walking Walking Walking
advise advice confirm	MVA-W
apply acknowledge	MMINIMAN ANALYSIS ANALYSI ANALY
assess interview	
-	was at the end
There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sente My old boss said he would be my reference. My old boss said	he would be my referee
1 They said they'd contact to me.	
2 Is she applying a job?	
3 Have you got a work permission?	
4 The company is based on Tokyo.	
5 He gave me some good advices. 6 She gave me foodback after the interview.	
7 I have to confirmate it in writing.	
8 If you apply for a job, it's quite a long processment.	
Replace the underlined words with a more formal word or ph	arase with the same meaning
► We will contact you as soon as possibleshall	
Has the company <u>asked for</u> references?	
2 They offered me the job on Thursday.	
3 I went for an interview last week.	
 4 If you <u>need</u> more information, please contact me. 5 We're going to give him the job, <u>depending on</u> satisfactory references. 	ences
The reguling to give him the job, <u>depending on</u> satisfactory refer	
Complete the sentences with a single word.	
You can't use this visa any longer – it's not <u>valid</u> .	
1 I work in lots of places, but I'm in Bristol.2 She was angry because they didn't that they had r	acoived her letter
2 She was angry because they didn't that they had r3 He offered me the job on the phone, but I haven't had written	
4 They said they would me by phone when they've	
5 You don't need to ask for confirmation; they will reply	
6 They interviewed four other for the job as well as a	
7 Val wrote to the company for a job, but there are no	at the moment.
9 He wants to for the job, but he still has to fill in the	eform.
10 You have to do tests and have several interviews; it's quite a long	
ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another	er student.
1 What jobs have you applied for in the past?	
2 How many interviews have you had?	
3 Have any interviewers given you feedback after the interview?	
4 How many times have you been the successful candidate?	
5 Who were your referees?6 Have you ever had to get a work permit? If so, where?	
Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at remember the meanings and other parts of speech?	t the words. Can you

WORK AND STUDY 133

52 I can describe jobs

A Careers

Careers 4 U advertises jobs across a range of market **sectors**. Register by email now and you can be first in line to apply for **jobs** as they appear. Just complete the following:

Please select any two sectors in which you have experience and/or qualifications.

- **engineering**
- management
- military
- x retail
- trainingpublishing
- **⋈** finance
- manufacturing
- recruitment

Spotlight career, job, profession

A career is the series of jobs you have in a particular area, e.g. a career in publishing. A job is any work you do to earn money, e.g. being a waiter, teacher, etc. A profession is a job with a high level of training and/or education, e.g. the medical/teaching profession.

Glossary

- sector a part of the business activity of a country
 (public sector = controlled by the government;
 private sector = controlled by private companies).
- **experience** the things that you have done in your life.
- **qualifications** the exams you have passed or courses you have finished.
- **engineering** the activity of designing roads, railways, bridges, etc.
- military connected with soldiers, or the army, navy, and air force.
- **training** the activity of teaching people the skills they need for a job. **train sb** v.
- **publishing** the business of producing and selling books, magazines, etc. **publish sth** v.
- manufacturing the business of producing goods in factories. manufacture sth v.
- management the control of a business or organization. manage sb/sth v.
- **retail** selling goods to people directly in shops, on the internet, etc.
- $\label{eq:finance} \textbf{finance} \ \text{the activity of managing money}.$
- **recruitment** the business of finding people for job vacancies, **recruit sb** v.

0	What sector do these people work in?		
	 ▶ I produce books and then we sell them. publishing. 1 I teach people their jobs. 2 I'm a soldier. 3 I sell clothes. 4 I design motorways. 5 I produce cars. 6 I'm the boss of a company. 7 I control the money in our business. 8 I fill job vacancies in companies. 		
2	Complete the words in the text. I've just left university and I'm hoping to have a career in the private (1) s , and eventually I'd like to be in (2) m and have my own business. I had a couple of jobs in small companies in my holidays, so I have a little (3) e I'm hoping to work for a large company to start with; they do a lot of (4) t , and I'll be able to get some extra (5) q too. My father's in the legal (6) p , but for some reason, he wants me to have some experience in the (7) m as a soldier. I've no idea why, though.		
8	ABOUT YOU Look at the website again. Which sectors do you have experience or		

qualifications in?

B Jobs 🕟

Job	What does he/she do	?	Glossary
plumber	installs and repairs water central heating, baths, et	r pipes, taps, tc.	install sth put in some equipment so that it is ready to use.
mechanic	repairs engines, especial	ly in vehicles .	vehicle e.g. car, bus, lorry.
electrician (installs, connects, or repositions.	airs electrical	electrical of or about electricity
carpenter	makes or repairs parts of and other objects made o		object a thing that can be seen or touched but is not alive.
nanny	takes care of / cares for ch their own home.	ildren in	take care of / care for sb/sth look after sb/sth.
travel agent	makes travel arrangemen	its for people.	make arrangements for sb/sth make plans or preparations for sb/sth.
estate agent	buys and sells houses or I people.	and for	land an area of ground; an area used for a special purpose.
importer	imports goods.		import sth buy goods from another country to sell in your own country. OPP export sth.
priest	performs religious ceremosome religions.	onies in	
civil servant	works for the civil service, government departments military.		i.e. in other words; that is (used when you are explaining or defining sth).
sales rep / representative	travels to different places products of a particular co		product a thing that people make or grow in order to sell.
Cover the t	able above. Are these sent	ences true o	or false? Write T or F.
	(ports goods to sell. F nt sells holidays.		onducts religious ceremonies.
	akes wooden objects.		nic can repair vehicles ician fixes electrical wiring
3 A civil servant v	works for a company.	7 A plumbé	er can fix your central heating.
Cross out one w	ord which is wrong. Write	the correct	word at the end
	entral heating; I need a plumbe		
1 Our estate agent made the arrangements, i.e. buying tickets,			s, booking hotels.
The estate agent sold the landing which belonged to the farWhat produces does that company make?			irm
4 My sister does	quite a lot of training for the ci	vil servant	
5 I believe he exp 6 A nanny takes o	oorts silver jewellery from abroa care for children.	ad	
	ants have to travel a lot.		
Test yourself. Look at the jobs and cover the other columns. What do the people do?			

53 I can describe a career



A Career structure

Two years ago, I got a challenging job with good prospects in local radio. I worked hard and, as a reward, I was promoted. I was delighted. I was quickly transferred to a different department. Then things went wrong: one colleague got the sack, and another handed in his notice. After that, ten people were made redundant. I didn't want to be out of work, so I decided to look elsewhere. I applied for a job in TV and was appointed assistant director. Amazing!

spotlight dismiss, sack, fire

An employer may dismiss an employee if their work is not good enough or if they have done something wrong. In less formal English, you can say sack sb, give sb the sack, or fire sb. An employee can get the sack INF.

Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

He was sacked was given the sack got the sack was fired / was dismissed

for being rude.

Glossary

challenging difficult to do, but interesting and enjoyable. **challenge** N.

prospects (PL) chances of being successful in the future.

reward sth you get because you have done sth helpful, worked hard, etc. **reward sb** v.

promote sb (usually passive) give sb a better job at a higher level in a company. **promotion** N.

transfer sb/sth (from ... to ...) move sb/sth from one place to another.

department a section of a business, university, etc. **hand in your notice** say officially that you want to leave your job. syns **resign**, **quit** INF.

make sb redundant (often passive) make sb leave their job because they are not needed any more.

out of work not working and unable to find a job. SYN **unemployed**.

elsewhere in or to another place. **appoint sb** choose sb for a job.

5 prospects | chances of success

	1	out of work unemployed6	hand in your notice resign .	
	2	be promoted be appointed7	be sacked be promoted	
	3	get the sack sack someone8	transfer sb move sb to ano	ther office
			make someone redundant	fire someone
0		omplete the sentences with a single word.		ABOUT YOU
		I was glad to be appointed to the jo	b I have. (chosen for the job)	drantal estiminate in the control of
	1	My job's very (difficult but interest	sting)	
	2	I want to transfer to another (sec	ction of the business)	and a build season of the season and the
	3	I have good in my job. (chances of	f success)	
	4	I'd really love to be (given a bette	er job in the company)	
	5	I'm bored at work, so I'm going to look	(in another place)	
	6	I've never been		
	7	I'd hate to have to someone. (dism	niss)	
	8	If I hated my job, I would definitely	(hand in my notice)	

ABOUT YOU Have you got a job? If so, are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you?

Write true or false, or talk to another student who has a job.

B A job with responsibility 🔊

K.	ATE	Amy, I know you work on reception at the sports	Glossary	. (
		centre, but what does that involve ?	what does (your job) involve?	۵	= what do you have to do (in your job)?
Α	МҮ	Well, I handle all customer bookings, and	handle sth/sb	61	take suitable action in a situation. syn deal with sth/sb.
		answer enquiries over	enquiry	A	a question about sth (make an enquiry).
		the phone or face-to-	face-to-face	48	with and looking at sb.
		face. Occasionally I also have to deal with complaints from	complaint		${\bf a}$ statement that you are not satisfied with sth (make a complaint). complain ${\bf v}.$
		members of the public,	members of the public	Ą	people in general (also the public).
		and if there's a problem, I'm the one who has to	solve a problem	n	find an answer to a problem. syn find a solution.
		solve it. So it's not just clerical duties, then?	clerical	t.	connected with office work, especially keeping records or accounts (the person who does this is a clerk).
Λ	MY	Oh, no. Some weekends	duties	3	the tasks you do when you are at work.
		I'm in charge of the whole centre, and in an emergency it's my	in charge of sth/sb	0	in a position of control over sth/sb. syn responsible for sb/sth.
		job to make sure that	make sure		check sth so that you can be certain about it.
		everyone is safe. I have a lot of responsibility .	responsibility	P	the fact or duty of being in control of sth, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong.
	► 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	does her job involve? When I'd like to an enquiry about I talked to her to-face. It's very hard to deal this sit Who's charge of this depar You have to sure the door if We're not responsible the composition to a complaint about	at does her job involve the club. cuation. tment? s locked. cleaning. roblem?	?	
			1.1		
	Complete the texts. A I used to have a boring office job – I was a clerk in the civil service for five years, but I couldn't stand it and left. I've now got a job in a tourist information office in Liverpool and I really like it. My (1) d include helping people to find accommodation, dealing with their (2) e about places to visit, and finding (3) s to their travel problems. I'm also (4) r for the Beatles tour: I take people to John Lennon and Paul McCartney's childhood homes. I try to make (5) s everything goes well. B I work in a travel agent's, and my job (6) i organizing trips for people. I love meeting the (7) p and I really enjoy (8) h the money side of things. Some of my work is just routine (9) c work; other times, I have a lot of (10) r For example, if a				formation office in Liverpool and I really di accommodation, dealing with their to their travel problems. I'm also in Lennon and Paul McCartney's childhood ell. organizing trips for people. I love meeting the me money side of things. Some of my work is
	-				



Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

54 I can describe working conditions



Job questionnaire

- 1 Do you feel your job is stressful?
- 2 How much time off do you get every year?
- 3 Do you ever have to do shift work?
- 4 Do you often have to work overtime?
- Do you normally receive an annual bonus?
- Are you entitled to sick pay?
- Do you have the right to join a trade union?
- 8 Do people in your kind of job ever go on strike?

spotlight time off

If you have, get, or take time off, you are not at work, school, etc. perhaps because you're ill, or on holiday. I had a day off to go to a wedding. He's taking a month off work.

Glossary

working conditions . the arrangements made at a place of work for physical comfort and safety.

stressful shift work

- making you worry a lot. stress N.
- a pattern of work in which you sometimes work during the day and sometimes at night.

overtime

the time you spend working after your normal working hours (you can work overtime or do overtime INF).

bonus

an extra payment that is added to what you normally receive. money you receive when you are

(do) sth

sick pay

be entitled to be allowed sth or to do sth because it is the law. SYN have the right to (do) sth.

ill and cannot work.

union OR trade union an organization of people in the same kind of work who try to get better pay and working conditions for their members.

go on strike

refuse to work for a period of time as a protest for more money, better conditions, etc.

- Complete the words.
 - ▶ I often do sh i f t work.
 - 1 I belong to a t ____ union. 2 We went on st _____ last year.
 - 3 Do you get an annual b ____ s?
- 4 Our w ing c itions are good.
- 5 | often have to work o
- 6 She t _____ two weeks o ___ in summer.
- 7 Does he suffer from st _____ in his job?
- Write the words in the correct order, and add the final word.
 - ▶ you/working/have/good/do Do you have good working conditions?
 - 1 is / she / trade / member / a / of / a / ?
 - 2 we / sick / are / to / entitled / ? __
 - 3 take / like / to / I'd / week / a . .
 - 4 you / shift / don't / why / like /?. 5 // left / today; / time / on / didn't / l / do .
 - 6 go/why/the/on/did/workers/?
- ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write your answers to the questionnaire. If you haven't got a job, ask a student who has.
- Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

Review: Work and study

Unit 49

1		Ewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same I'm a careful driver. CAREFULLY I drive carefully. You have to do what he tells you. INSTRUCTIONS Don't talk to anyone. COMMUNICATE The way you think and behave is important. ATTITUDE It was a relief to finish the exam. RELIEVED Spend ten minutes making notes. DEVOTE He would never do anything dishonest in an exam. CHEAT If you don't get what you want, try again. SUCCEED Do we need dictionaries? ESSENTIAL
Ur	it	50
1	1 2 3 4	At university, students have to attend lectures \(\text{read widely } \text{ teach professors } \). A tutor \(\text{seminar } \) lecture \(\text{is a type of class at a university.} \) Some students live and study at home \(\text{home } \text{homesick } \text{away from home } \text{.} \) Undergraduates \(\text{Professors } \text{Tutors } \text{are types of teacher.} \) In order to have enough money, students often pay tuition fees \(\text{take out a loan } \text{try to get a scholarship } \(\text{.} \) In seminars, students may have a debate \(\text{take notes } \text{ write a thesis } \(\text{.} \)
2	1	I won't have enough money to live on, so I'll have to / out a loantake
Jn	it	51
0		Do you need a reference?reference

		Do they reqire more information? They reply automaticly. It's a long selection prosess.
2	A B	omplete the dialogue. You know that job ► vacancy . Did you (1) for it? Yes, and I went for an (2) on Wednesday.
	B A B	Wow. How did it go? It seemed OK, but they didn't give me any (3) afterwards, so it's hard to know. The said they'd (4) me by the end of the week if they were going to offer me the job. What about (5)? They said they'd already spoken to one of my referees. Oh really? And were there many other (6)? Yes, over a hundred. I'm not sure if I want the job because it's based (7) Scotland. Still, at least I don't need a work (8)
Ur	nit	52
1	1 2 3 4 5	ck (✓) the correct words. A plumber ☑ A nanny ☐ An electrician ☑ often installs things. A carpenter ☐ A travel agent ☐ A plumber ☐ gets his hands dirty. A nanny ☐ A plumber ☐ An importer ☐ looks after people. A civil servant ☐ A carpenter ☐ An estate agent ☐ usually works in an office. An electrician ☐ A sales rep ☐ A mechanic ☐ often has to repair things. A sales rep ☐ A civil servant ☐ A travel agent ☐ wants to sell you something. A plumber ☐ An estate agent ☐ A carpenter ☐ has had a lot of technical training.
2		omplete the dialogues.
	1	Miguel produces his own magazine. ~ Really? And how long has he worked inpublishing_? Dr Erman seems very good, but how much does he have? ~ Oh, I think he's been in the medical for about ten years now. Who made all the travel for your last holiday? ~ My wife did, but that's her job; she's a travel
	3	How long has your father been a civil ? ~ Thirty-five years. He's spent his whole in the civil
	5	Did the company give you much after you started? ~ Yes, they sent me on several courses, and I took exams to get extra What kind of does she sell? ~ Electrical stuff mostly, but she's only been a sales for six months.
Ur	it	53
1	Co	omplete the text using words from the box in the correct form.
		clerk ✓ transfer charge responsibility involve challenging

resign complaints elsewhere promote work deal

	When I left school, I got a job as a clerk with an insurance company. It mainly (1)
•	Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out another word. What is it?
	ع المانيان المرانيان المر
	5 6
	7
	8
	9
	choose someone for a job something you get when you have been helpful or worked hard if you resign, you hand in your out of work chances of being successful in the future the tasks you do when you are at work connected with office work, such as keeping records and doing accounts find a solution to a problem deal with something or control it The letters in the grey squares make the word
r	nit 54
ı	Complete the words in the sentences.
	 She's been very ill, but she doesn't get any sick pay He always looks worried because he has such a s job. Everyone has the r to a lunch break – it's the law. I don't belong to a t any longer. Are you e to sick pay in your job? I often have to work nights, but I don't really like s work. Bus drivers have a basic 35-hour week, but many of them work o A lot of people get an annual b in addition to their salaries. Some of the workers went on s last year for higher pay.

55 I can talk about finance

A Financial terms 🕟

Example	Meaning
We need to raise capital.	capital the money you need to start a business (to raise capital is to find the money you need).
The company has an annual turnover of \$20 million.	turnover the total value of goods or services that a company sells in a particular period of time (annual = every year). SYN sales revenue.
Operating costs have gone up this year.	operating costs the amount of money that a business needs to spend to continue as a business.
Inflation is now at 3 per cent.	inflation a general rise in the price of services and goods in a particular country.
We paid £1 million in tax.	tax money you have to pay to the government.
The company made a pre-tax profit of £2 million.	profit the money you make in a business after paying costs (pre-tax is before paying tax). OPP loss.
I think the company has cash flow problems.	cash flow the movement of money into and out of a business (a cash flow problem means more money is going out than coming in).
I need a bank loan. They took out a loan.	bank loan money the bank lends and sb borrows. take out obtain (you also take out insurance).
We pay a lot of interest. The interest rate is 4 per cent.	interest extra money you pay when you borrow money (the interest rate is the exact cost of borrowing).

1 Match 1-8 with a-i.

1 2 3 4 5	annual _foperating pay raise interest take out sales make cash	b c d e f g h	a loan revenue rate a profit costs turnover capital flow 10% interest	Finance can be: 1 the money somebody borrows or receives to operate a business (They need to raise more finance.). finance v. OR 2 the activity of managing money in a company. financial ADJ. (He's the new Director of Finance /Financial Director.)
-----------------------	--	---------------------------------	--	---

2 Complete the sentences.

	We can't start the business unless we can <u>raise</u> more capital.	
1	If sales continue to rise, the annual could reach five million euros.	
2	If we spend more money this month, we'll have a cash problem.	
3	The current interest is 5 per cent.	
4	It's been a good year; we've made a pre of \$3.5 m.	
5	has gone up this year because of the increase in the price of oil.	
6	They needed more money so they another bank	
7	We usually make a profit, but if operating go up, we may make a	this year.
8	They need the loan to the new business.	



Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the examples mean?

B Financial trends

A **trend** is the general direction in which a situation is changing.

Trend	Common verbs + examples	Common nouns + examples
t	go up, rise, increase, grow Prices have risen by 10 per cent.	rise, increase, growth We saw some growth last year.
ţ	go down, fall, drop Interest rates fell last month.	fall, drop There's been a drop in sales.
-	remain unchanged/stable syn stay the same Prices have remained unchanged.	stability There has been stability in the markets.
<u></u>	<pre>peak Sales peaked in the third quarter. (third quarter = July to September)</pre>	pcak Sales reached a peak in 2007.
~	fluctuate Sales have fluctuated all year.	fluctuation There has been some fluctuation in prices.

Adjective	Meaning	Adverb
a slight rise in costs	very small.	Costs rose slightly.
a gradual rise in profits	slow and over a long period of time.	Profits have risen gradually.
a steady increase in the interest rate	slow but regular and continuing.	The interest rate has increased steadily.
a significant fall in profits	noticeable and important.	Profits fell significantly.
a sharp fall in sales	very large and sudden.	Sales have fallen sharply.

	4	Complete the sent	ences on the	riaht. The i	meaning must	stav the same
--	---	-------------------	--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

•	There has been a sharp fall in sales.	Sales have fallen sharply .
1	There was significant growth in sales.	Sales
2	There was a gradual rise in the price.	The price
3	There was a slight fall in profits.	Profits
4	There has been stability in costs.	Costs have remained
5	There has been a steady rise in sales.	Sales have

5 Complete the text. Use a <u>different</u> word each time.

Last year started well. In the first quarter sales ▶ <u>increased</u> significantly. The second quarter was
even better: sales increased (1) They continued to (2) steadily in the third
quarter and reached a (3) at 90,000. By the end of September, sales had (4)
up (5) almost 50 per cent. In the last quarter there was a slight (6) , but it was
still a good year. This year has been very different. Sales (7) in the first half of the year – up
one month and down the next – but in the last three months they have remained (8)

6 Look at the arrows and complete the sentences.

>	There was a 🛶	slight fa	ll in 2003.	3	Sales →	in 2006.
1	Sales ->		in 2004.	4	In 2007,	sales 🛶
2	There was a 🖊		in 2005.	5	In 2008	, sales 🔪

56 I can talk about companies Do Unit 55 first

A Setting up a business 🞧

Setting up a business is a risk. Twenty per cent of new businesses fail within twelve months; fifty per cent go out of business in three years. It may be because of poor quality services or goods, or one of these common mistakes:

- · inadequate market research
- poor control over suppliers and customers
- being over-ambitious and over-optimistic
- poor management of stock and assets
- inadequate knowledge of rivals
- employing the wrong people

spotlight Prefixes over- and under-

As prefixes, over- usually means too much and under-means too little.

He overcharged us. (He made us pay too much.) Companies often overestimate sales figures. (Companies think that sales figures will be larger than they are.) opp underestimate. With adjectives, they may be followed by a hyphen, e.g. over-ambitious.

Glossary

set up a business start a business.

risk the possibility that sth bad may happen in the future. risky ADI.

fail (about a business) be unable to continue, syn qo out of business.

quality the good or bad condition or character of sth compared with similar things.

goods (PL) things that are made to be sold.

inadequate not sufficient; not good enough, orp adequate.

market research the study of what people want to buy and why.

supplier a company that provides sth for another company. supply v.

stock everything a company has for sale at any particular time.

asset a thing of value that a person or company owns (e.g. a factory).

rival a person or company that competes with another, syn competitor.

employ sb give sb a job (an employer is sb who does this; an employee is sb who works for an employer). SYN take sb on INF.

Circle things in this list that you can own or sell.			
	competitor business employee as set mark etrival goods suppliers to ckquality and the set of the		

	competitorousmessemproyeeassetmarketrivargoodssupprierstockquarity
2	Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

This business is a risk ► This business is risky. When did she set 1 When did she start the business? Why did they go out _____? 2 Why did the business fail? 3 We are the main company that supplies them. We are their main _____ 4 Their products aren't very good. Their products are of poor 5 Do you still employ him? Are you still his When did you take 6 When did you employ her?

3 What mistakes do businesses make? Complete the sentences using words from the box.

rivals optimistic research assets estimates employs suppliers /

>	The company	doesn't have	effective	controls	over its	customers	or its	suppliers
-------------	-------------	--------------	-----------	----------	----------	-----------	--------	-----------

- 1 The company doesn't carry out adequate market _____
- 2 The company is poor at managing its stock and its ____
- 3 The company doesn't have a very good knowledge of its
- 4 The company _____ the wrong people.
 5 The company is over-____, and it over
- ____what it can achieve. _____, and it over-___

B Growth

The first years may be a **struggle**, but if a company can **survive** this difficult period, it may develop into a successful business:

- customer numbers grow and the company gains a share of the market
- turnover increases the company breaks even
- the brand develops a reputation
- the company needs more capital and may sell shares to the public to obtain the finance
- eventually this growth may result in the company being taken over

		rethinds the		
spo	THE SHARES	THE WHILE	SET S CALLS	ALC: UNKNOWN
10.00 医子丛 5	THE R P. LEW. L.	A S VALUE OF	mar	
MICH CALCULA		H.H. SHIPT	ALEXANDAR I	

The market is the amount of buying and selling of a particular type of goods, e.g. *There is a large market for these computers*.

It also refers to an area or group of people who buy something, e.g. the European market, the teenage market.

The market leader is the company with the biggest share of a market.

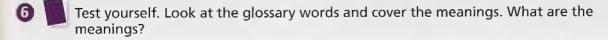
DEN Province	
Glossary	
growth	the process of increasing in size or number. grow v.
struggle •	a period of action to achieve sth difficult. syn effort . struggle v.
survive	continue to exist in a difficult situation. survival N.
gain sth	obtain sth. opp lose sth.
share	a part of sth that has been divided.
break even **	not make a profit or a loss.
brand	the name under which one or more products are sold, e.g. 'Nike'.
reputation *	the opinion that people have about sth (it can be good or bad).
shares	(USU PL) units of equal value that a company is divided
	into and which are then sold to raise money (the buyers then own part of the company).
take over a company	take control of another company. takeover N.

4 Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

•	Will they continue to grow?	Will there be continued growth ?
1	Will they take it over?	Will there be a?
2	People say the company is very good.	The company has a very good
3	They won't make a profit or a loss.	They will
4	It's the biggest company in the market.	It's the market
5	Are you worried they may not survive?	Are you worried about their?
6	They've survived, but it's been difficult.	They've survived, but it's been a

Complete the sentences.

	• -						
>	It's been a struggle, but I think the business will <u>survive</u> .						
1	The company now has a 10 per cent	of the market.					
	2 I bought 1,000 in that						
3	People go on buying the same	of breakfast cereal becau	use it's familiar.				
4	There has been considerable	in the soft drinks	: up 25 per cent in two years.				
5	I think the company may be	over by the end of the year					
6	It's been a good year: we've	another 5 per cent of the r	market.				



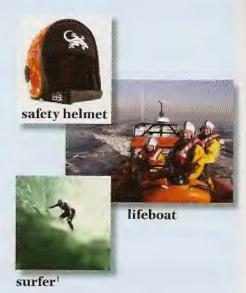
57 I can describe a successful business •

GECKO HEADGEAR Ltd is a designer and **manufacturer** of safety helmets for use at sea. The company was **founded** in 1993 by Jeff Sacree and it started by selling surfboards. However, surfing is a seasonal business, and Jeff realized he needed to **diversify**. Fortunately, he was able to **exploit a gap in the market**.

'As a **surfer**¹, I could see the **potential** for a light helmet that gave protection and **retained** heat.' He made one and sold a few to other surfers. He then **did** some **research** and discovered that men who worked in lifeboats might also be interested in his helmet. It would have to be **adapted** for their use, and for that he needed **investment**: he took out a bank loan and employed more staff. 'A good relationship with the bank is **crucial** if you're developing an **innovative** product. In our **case** the process took three years.'

After the **contract** to supply helmets for the lifeboats was successful, Jeff developed different types of helmet for different uses, and has always used customer **feedback** to **refine** the product.

'Partnerships with suppliers have also been a **key factor** in our success. We've worked closely with different manufacturers, and this has helped us to **keep ahead** of rivals.'



Glossary		A COLUMN TO THE REAL PROPERTY OF THE PARTY O	
manufacturer	 a person or company that in makes things using machines. manufacture v. SYNS producer, produce v. 	nvestment	the activity of putting money into sth, hoping that you will make more money as a result. invest in sth v.
found sth		rucial •	very important.
		nnovative 🗀 🛚	introducing new ideas. innovate v.
diversify	 introduce a wider range of 		innovation N.
		ase •	situation.
exploit sth	 make the best possible use of sth. exploitation N. 	ontract	a written legal agreement (a person signs a contract).
a gap in the market	product, which has not been	eedback	information and comments from people who have used sth.
		artnership 👢	a relationship between two people
potential	* the ability to develop into sth or		or organizations.
		ey »	very important.
retain sth	 keep or continue to have sth. retention N. 	actor	one of the things that influences a decision or affects a situation.
do research	in former of ince	eep ahead	stay in front of sb.

spotlight Verbs of change

To alter sth means to change sth, but not completely.

We've had to alter our plans.

To adapt sth means to change sth so you can use it in a different situation.

We've adapted the product for the Asian market.

To refine sth means to change sth a little to make it better.

They have **refined** the products over several years.

		swer these questions (you may need to read the text again).
	•	What is Gecko Headgear? A company that manufactures safety helmets.
	1	When was it founded?
		Why did Jeff need to diversify?
	3	What qualities did the helmet have to have?
		a) it had to be light b)
		c)
	4	How did Jeff discover that men in lifeboats were potential users?
	5	How did he get the money for extra staff?
	6 7	What information has he used to refine the products?
	8	What was a key factor in his success?
		What was a key factor in this success.
	Re	arrange the letters on the left to make words. Use the definitions to help you.
		ROTACE factor one of the things that influences a situation
	1	TOCCARNT a written legal agreement
	2	NATERIkeep or continue to have something
		RUCCLIA very important
	4	EFKABEDC comments from people who use something
		VINONTEA introduce new ideas
		REDYFIVIS introduce a wider range of products
		PERITNSARPH a relationship between two organizations
	8	LOPENITAT the ability to develop into something
•	Cir	cle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.
		We have to keep ahead of retain our competitors.
	1	His company has the ability to exploit/alter the market more fully.
	2	They are the main producers/manufacturers.
	3	It's only a small business now, but it has the feedback/potential to be very successful.
	4	If we can't use the product like that, we may have to exploit/adapt it.
	5	It was a key/crucial factor in the decision.
	6	She invested/founded the company ten years ago.
	7	They don't have enough money; they need more research/investment.
	8	We may have to alter/adapt the product.
	Co	emplete the sentences.
		We may have to <u>alter</u> a few things to get the product exactly as we want it.
	1	They were lucky because they saw a in the market.
	2	Some people take out a loan. In my I borrowed money from my parents.
	3	They are one of the leading of washing machines in this country.
	4	If we want to find out, we'll have to do more
	5	How much money did she in the company?
	6	Innovation helps a company to keep of its competitors.
	7	They can't change their minds now: they've signed the
	8	We must our most important customers. We can't afford to lose them.
	9 10	Profit was not a big in my decision to invest in the company. It's only one product and it's very limited; the company needs to
	10	tes only one product and its very inflited, the company freeds to
)		Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are
	100	the meanings?

58 I can discuss marketing

A The basis of marketing 🕟



Marketing is the activity of presenting, advertising, and selling a company's products. To do that, you need to understand the company's strengths and weaknesses, and be aware of possible opportunities and threats. This is called a 'SWOT analysis':

Strengths, e.g. specialist skills in the company

Weaknesses, e.g. limited financial resources

opportunities, e.g. increased **demand** for a product from a particular market **sector**

Threats, e.g. a downturn in the economy, reducing overall demand

spotlight skill

Skill (u) is the ability to do something well, usually needing practice, skilful adj. You often need a particular skill (c) for a job, skilled adj. opp unskilled.

He has the right management **skills**. She's a **skilful** negotiator.

We had a number of highly skilled workers.

Glossary

advertising the activity of telling people about a product to try to make them buy it. **advertise** v.

strength a good quality or feature, orp weakness.

opportunity a situation in which it is possible to achieve sth.

threat a possible danger or problem.

 $\label{limited} \textbf{limited} \ \textbf{small} \ \textbf{in number or amount.} \ \textbf{opp} \ \textbf{unlimited}.$

resources (USU PL) the supply of sth that you need, such as money or skills.

demand (for sth) the need for sth from a particular group of people.

sector a part of an economy, society, or area of activity.

downturn a time when an economy or industry is weaker than normal, orr **upturn**.

reduce sth make sth less or smaller. OPP increase sth. reduction N.



					Langu	
0	① Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.					
	>	Limited demand B				
	1	A number of opportunities.	4	Unlimited financial resources.		
	2	They have a lot of skilled workers.	5	A reduction in demand		
	3	There are a number of threats.	6	An upturn in the economy.	***	
2	Re	eplace the underlined word or phrase wi	th a	a single word. The meaning	must	
	1 2	We only have a <u>small</u> number of products available is a lot of competition in this <u>part</u> of the There isn't much <u>need</u> for beach umbrellas in	e m	arket.		
	3	They have a number of good qualities.				
	4	There is another company in the market, which	ch c	ould be a real <u>danger</u> .		
	5	Do we have the money and skills to make this	pr	oduct?		
3	Co	omplete the sentences.				
	1 2 3 4 5	New markets in Asia could be a great opporting the product if you work with advanced technology, you not make the product if you be people will know about the product if you have to the product in the product if you have to the product in the product in the product if you have the product in the product i	eed ve . e p	people with the rightit on TV. hones? the price.		

B Developing a marketing strategy 🕟

Useful marketing tips

- Don't assume you know what your customers want
- Target the 20 per cent of your customers who provide 80 per cent of your profit
- Don't ignore the competition, and be ready to respond to it
- Don't try to compete on price alone: think about quality, reliability, etc.
- You need to gather reliable data to make accurate market forecasts
- You need to have realistic objectives
- Don't forget to evaluate your strategy; and if something isn't working, change it.

Glossary

strategy a plan you make in order to achieve sth.

tip a piece of advice.

assume sth accept or believe sth is true without proof

assumption N.

target sb decide on the people you want to sell to

(your target market).

ignore sb/sth pay no attention to sb/sth.

respond to sb/sth say or do sth as an answer to sb/sth.

response N.

gather sth bring many things together, e.g.

information or data.

data * facts or information.

forecast a statement saying what will happen in the

future. forecast v.

realistic sensible, and based on what is possible in a

particular situation.

objective * sth you are trying to achieve. syn **goal/aim.**evaluate sth * study the facts then form an opinion of sth.

Cover the glossary, then match 1–5 with a–f.

- respond d a pay no attention to something
 assume b choose somebody you want to sell to
- 2 evaluate ____ c bring many things together
- 3 ignore ____ d say or do something as an answer ✓
- 4 gather e study the facts and then form an opinion f accept or believe something without proof

6 Complete the dialogues without repeating the same words.

- Did she know it was true? ~ No, she just assumed it.
- 1 Do they have a plan for this? ~ Yes, they've got a _____
- 2 He doesn't have an aim. ~ No, he needs an _____.
- 3 Has he replied to you? ~ No, there's been no _____.
- 4 Do they have the information? ~ Yes, they've gathered all the _____
- 5 Is it a sensible forecast? ~ Yes, I think it's quite _____.
- 6 Was it good advice? ~ Yes, it was a very useful _____.

6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We contacted them, but so far they haven't responded
- 1 They got into trouble because they ______ all their competitors.
- 2 Have they given you a sales ______ for next year?
- 3 We don't know if they're competing for this contract, but we _____ they are.
- 4 The company has decided to _____ the youth market next year.
- 5 We've _____ all the information together. Now we need to evaluate it.



Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

Review: Business

Unit 55

1 Find eleven more 'money' words or phrases. (You can go across and down.)

С	Р	0	0	S	T) B	C
Α	R	L	P	Т	E	Α	Α
S	0	0	G	U	S	Ň	Р
Н	F	Α	Т	R	Н	K	-1
F	1	Ν	Α	Ν	С	Е	Т
L	T	Y	L	0	S	S	Α
0	T	Α	X	V	D	1	L
W	R	Е	V	E	Ν	U	E
1	Ν	Т	Е	R	Е	S	T

- 2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.
- ► Sales went down quite a lot. Sales fell significantly .
 - 1 The price went up a little. The price
 - 2 The price went down a lot. The price
 - 3 Last year the price stayed the same. Last year the price
 - 4 Sales went down from \$3 m to \$2 m. Sales
 - 5 Sales went up and down. Sales ______.
 - 6 Last year there was a very small rise. Last year there was a

Unit 56

- 1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.
 - ► They went out of business.
 B 4 They have valuable assets.
 1 They're gaining a share of the market.
 2 They're struggling.
 6 They're taking people on.
- 3 They're taking a lot of risks.
- 7 Their shares are going up.
- 2 Complete the list of company objectives using words from the box.

quality risks set up ✓ market shares growth rivals even reputation

- Set up the business by the end of the year.
- 1 In our first year we aim to break _____.
- 2 In years 2 to 5, we want to see continued ______ in our profit.
- 3 We don't want to take too many _____
- 4 We have to watch our very closely.
- 5 We want our products to be of the highest ____
- 6 Within three years we want a 10 to 15 per cent share of the __
- 7 We want the company to develop a good _____
- 8 Within five years we would like to sell ______ to the public.

Unit 57

	Match verbs 1–8 with definitions a–i. ▶ refinei 1 retain 2 manufacture 3 innovate 4 invest 5 alter 6 found 7 exploit 8 diversify	a change something but not completely b put money into something c make the best possible use of something d start a business/organization e keep or continue to have something f introduce a wider range of products g introduce new ideas h make things using machines i change something a little to make it better
2	Replace the underlined words with a sin You have to try to keep in front of others. The introduction of new ideas was crucial. It was a very important decision. We did a careful study to find the best product My partners were prepared to put money. They signed a written legal agreement. I knew the product had the possibility to be they wanted to introduce a wider range of the single product of the possibility.	ahead duct. in the company. ecome better. on our products.
r	rit 58 Find eight more pairs of words in the bound small ✓ danger advice ability plan information response limited ✓ stra	aim reply data need threat
	small / limited	
2	Complete the words in each sentence. ▶ Developing a marketing strategy 1 Analyse the company's s and 2 Analyse the o for the compa 3 Make sure to g reliable mark 4 Don't a you know what your 5 Make sure you have realistic o 6 Don't i your competitors. 7 Try to make accurate and reliable f 8 Remember to e your marketi	ny and the threats. et d customers want. for future sales.

59 I can express probability ...

Next week in the life of pessimistic Pamela, aged 15

Sunday: I'm going to a barbecue next Saturday.

I'll definitely see Max (the boy I fancy).

Monday: My best friend Sarah said she's going.
She's **bound to** speak to him first, and
she's prettier than me, so Max is more **Ukely to** fancy her.

Tuesday: I've got nothing to wear - I doubt if he'll even

Wednesday: If he does speak to me, I expect he'll think I'm

Thursday: I've heard there's another party on Saturday Max **might** go there instead.

Friday: There's a good chance it'll rain tomorrow. The

barbecue will be a disaster.

Saturday: Woke up with a spot on my face - I'm definitely

not going.

Glossary

pessimistic always believing bad things will happen. orr optimistic.

definitely certainly; for sure.

fancy sb INF be attracted to sb.

bound to do sth If sb is **bound to do sth**, they will almost certainly do it.

likely to do sth If sb is likely to do sth, they will probably do it. OPP unlikely to do sth.

doubt (if/that ...) If you doubt if or that sth will happen, you think it probably won't happen.

expect sth think or believe sth will happen.

might used to say that sth is possible. syn may.

a chance a possibility (a good chance is a more than 50 per cent possibility).

disaster INF If sth is a disaster, it is terrible.

spot an unpleasant red or yellow mark on the skin (teenagers have them).

- Complete the definitions.
 - ▶ If something is a disaster, it is <u>terrible</u>.
 1 If something is bound to happen, it will certainly happen.
 - 2 If something is likely to take place, it will ______ take place.
 - 3 If something might happen, you can also say that it _____ happen.
 - 4 If there's a chance that something will happen, it means it is ______ that it will happen.
 - 5 If you expect something to happen, it means you ______ it will happen.
 - 6 If you think that something is unlikely, it means it is _____ not going to happen.
 - 7 If you doubt that something will happen, it means you _____ think it is going to happen.
 - 8 If you are pessimistic, you always believe that _____ things will happen.
- A friend is taking an exam next week. Will she pass? Look at the percentage (%) on the right and write sentences with a similar meaning. Don't use the verb think.

	and the second second	I MO0:
•	She'll definitely pass.	100% yes
1		95% yes
2		75% yes
3		50% yes
4		25% yes
E		100% no

3 ABOUT YOU Use the vocabulary to write sentences about your life next week.

60 I can explain similarities and differences

Labradors

In looks, Boss and Sam are almost identical except that Sam is a bit bigger. Jake and Boss are similar except for their colour. The similarity between Sam and Jake is that they both have large ears. In character though, they're not alike. Compared with Jake and Boss, Sam is very lazy. In fact, he's completely different from the other two, apart from the fact that he's greedy—all labradors are greedy given the opportunity. With the other two, the main difference is that Boss is rather quiet in comparison with Jake.



Glossary

identical without a single difference. syn exactly the same.
except not including sb/sth (except that + clause or except
for + noun).

similar (to sb/sth) like sb/sth but not the same. similarity N (a similarity between things).

alike very similar (don't use alike before a noun).

completely different different in every way.

apart from sb/sth SYN except for sb/sth.

greedy wanting to take more than you need (usually food). the main difference the most important difference.

spotlight compare v, comparison N

When you compare people or things, you say how they are different.

If you **compare** dogs **and/with** cats, dogs are usually more greedy.

Compared with/to dogs, cats are very clean.

In comparison with dogs, cats are more independent.

Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase with the same mean	0	0	1 Replace	the underlin	ned words witl	h a diffe	rent word	or phrase	with the	same	meanii	ng.
---	---	---	-----------	--------------	----------------	-----------	-----------	-----------	----------	------	--------	-----

- ▶ Barley is <u>like</u> my other dog. <u>similar to</u>
- 1 She's very tall compared with Elena.
- 2 I liked all of them except for the blue one.
- 3 The two boys aren't very similar.
- 4 The most important difference is colour.
- 5 Poland is very big in comparison with Hungary.
- 6 The twins are exactly the same.

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you <u>compare</u> the two books, it's amazing how different they are.
- 1 She is very _____ to her mother; they both laugh all the time.
- with his last album, the new one's a bit boring.
- 3 There is a ______ between the two tables: they're both made of the same wood.
- 4 This chair is like the one in your bedroom, _____ that this one's a bit softer.
- 5 Max always tries to eat his brother's food as well as his own; he's a ______dog.
- 6 Some people say my brother and I are ______, but I think we're _____ different.
- 7 I didn't like the film, _____ from the ending, which was great.
- 8 The main ______ between the two students is that Carlo has better pronunciation.

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write sentences about the similarities and differences between two members of your family or two cities in your country.

61 I can make arrangements to meet



- A Mike, we need to talk about the project. Can we get together next week?
- B Yes, sure.
- A Can you make it on Monday morning, say?
- B No, I'm not available then. How about Tuesday afternoon?
- A I'd like to, but I'm afraid I'm tied up then. Can we make it Friday morning instead?
- B I'm supposed to see Jo then. but I think I can postpone that. I'll confirm it with you tonight.
- A Great, well, I'll wait to hear from you.

- = meet
- = Are you able to come?
- = for instance / for example
- = free to see you
- = What about . . .?
- = I'm sorry, but . . .
- = busy
- = as an alternative
- = I'm meant to
- = put that off
- = tell you definitely / for sure



Glossary

How about ...? is ... suitable? syn What about ...? instead (of sth) in the place of sth (e.g. We could take the train, or we could hire a car instead.). SYN as an alternative. postpone sth decide that sth you had planned will happen at a later time. syn put sth off.

- Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase with the same meaning.
 - ► I'll confirm it later. tell you definitely
 - 1 I'm supposed to meet him at six.
 - 2 He's tied up tomorrow.....
 - 3 How about Friday?
 - 4 He's not available now.
 - 5 I'll potpone it.
 - 6 Can you come, say, at five?
 - 7 Can you make it tomorrow?
 - 8 We must get together soon.
 - 9 I'm sorry but I'm busy.

be supposed to, be meant to

If you are supposed to, or are meant to do something, another person thinks you will do it because you have agreed to

I'm supposed to meet David later, but I don't really want to go.

She's meant to finish that job today. ~ She's so slow: I don't think she will.

- There's a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.
 - ▶ She supposed to be here at 3.00. She 's supposed to be here at 3.00.
 - 1 Shall we make together for a meeting?
 - 2 I'll tell you definite tomorrow.
 - 3 I could put the meeting out until Friday.
 - 4 I'm afraid but I'm tied up then.
 - 5 A Let's meet at a restaurant, saying? B No, what about the station in place?
- 6 For an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday.



Test yourself. Look at the dialogue and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meaning of each word or phrase in bold?

62 I can discuss my likes and dislikes 📦

MISCHA BARON: the food king!	Meaning
I'm mad about food. I spend a lot of time thinking about it.	bc mad about sth/sb inf like sth/sb very much. syn be crazy about sth/sb inf.
I adore cooking, though I'm not very Keen on washing up afterwards.	adore (doing) sth INF love (doing) sth. bc keen on (doing) sth INF (usually used in the negative) like or enjoy (doing) sth.
I'm very fond of Asian food, particularly Thai and Korean.	be fond of (doing) sth like or enjoy (doing) sth, especially over a long time.
I don't like takeaway food at all.	not at all not in any way. (If you don't like sth at all , you dislike it very much.)
As a child, I loathed cabbage (I hated the smell), but I 've got to like it now.	loathe (doing) sth dislike (doing) sth very much (also loathe sb). get to like sth/sb start to like sth/sb.
There are only a couple of things I can't stand: one is snails. The other thing I absolutely detest is yoghurt. I'd rather die than eat yoghurt.	can't stand (doing) sth inf strongly dislike (doing) sth. syn can't bear (doing) sth. detest (doing) sth, hate (doing) sth (also detest sb). syn loathe sth/sb. would rather than would prefer.

spotlight Verb + -ing

Many verbs meaning 'like' or 'dislike' (= not like) can be followed by an -ing form.

Complete the table using the words and phrases in the box.

can't stand ✓ detest mad about fond of adore loathe keen on crazy about can't bear not like at all

like very much	like	dislike very much
		can't stand
	The second secon	Hestilling.
		1000-

Correct the mistakes in the sentence beginnings.

				ABOUT YOU	
•	I'm not keen for	. I'm not keen on	(and the second s	
1	I fond of		- Set res		
2	I don't stand			name and the second sec	
3	I loathe to cook			The state of the s	
4	I'm mad in		is or well		
5	I can't bearing	The state of the s		,	
6	I'm detest				
7	I adore eat				
8	I've crazy about		TO F		
9	Recently, I've got fo	r like			
10	I'm rather eat th	nan			

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences in Exercise 2. Write about food, drinks, cooking, things you like doing, etc. If possible, tell another student.

63 I can give my opinion

A Asking for and giving opinions 🕟

- A Apparently, the government wants to increase the number of young people going to university. What do you think about that?
- B **Personally**, **I think** it's a good idea. People should have the chance to go to university.
- A Maybe, but it seems to me we need more people with manual skills, not more academics. And why haven't we got those people? It's the government's fault.
- B You think the government is to blame for everything. But don't you reckon it's a good idea, in principle, for more young people to have a better education?
- A Yes, I think education is an incredibly important **issue**, but **the point is**, what kind of education do we want young people to have?

Glossary

apparently based on what you have heard or read.

What do you think about . . . ? is used to ask sb's opinion about a general topic (also How do you feel about . . . ? We usually use think of when asking about a person or thing, e.g. What do you think of his new book?)

fault responsibility for a mistake.

be to blame for sth be responsible for sth bad (e.g. *He's to blame for the accident.* = The accident **is his fault.**)

reckon (that) sth inf think or have an opinion about sth.

in principle in general, but perhaps not in all the details. SYN in theory.

issue a problem or subject for discussion.

the point is the most important part of what I'm saying is.

Write the words in the correct order.

- ▶ issue/reckon/it's/important/I/an I reckon it's an important issue.
- 1 think / this / you / idea / do / what / of ?
- 2 | I / it's / think / good / personally / a / idea

spotlight Giving opinions

I think (that) ..., Personally I think (that) ..., and It seems to me ..., are common ways of giving opinions. You may also hear In my opinion ... FML, As far as I'm concerned ..., and If you ask me

3	agree / in / it / principle / I / with
4	choice / to / it / no / seems / we / have / me
5	it / disaster / if / me / ask / a / you / was

Rewrite the opinions using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

>	I think it'll be difficult.	EASY	I don t think it 11 be easy.
1	I think we should do something.	SEEMS	
2	What do you think about that?	FEEL	
3	I think we should help them.	OPINION	
4	It's my fault.	BLAME	
5	I think it'll he a problem	RECKON	

3 Complete the sentences.

>	Personally , I thought the film was awful.
1	, the government made the mistake, so it's their
2	As far as I'm, the most important thing is to find a new manager.
3	I think climate change is one of the most important of the 21st century.
4	We both think it's important, but the is, what are we going to do about it?
5	In, I quite like his suggestion, but I don't know if it'll work.

B For or against?

The government's **considering** a **proposal** to increase the legal age to drive a car from 17 to 21. What do you think of this idea?

FOR

- Personally, I think it's very sensible. Too many young people are killed on our roads.
- Yes, I'm in favour of it, because it would reduce the number of cars on the road.
- I would support it, too. I don't think 17 year-olds are mature enough to drive a car.

AGAINST

- I'm not in favour of this. I reckon more young people will just drive illegally.
- I'm against it, too. I believe that if young people are old enough to vote, then they're old enough to drive.
- I'm opposed to it. It'll make teenagers more dependent on their parents.

Glossary

consider sth think about sth carefully before making a decision.

proposal a plan that is formally suggested. **propose** v.

sensible practical and intelligent. OPP silly. in favour of sth in agreement with sth. OPP against sth.

reduce sth make sth smaller or less in quantity or size. opp increase sth.

support sth agree with sth and sometimes offer help. **support** N.

mature acting in a sensible, adult way.

believe that have the opinion that.

opposed to sth believing that sth is wrong.

dependent on sb/sth needing sb/sth to help you.

4	Replace the underlined	words with a since	ale word that has	the same meaning.

	She is <u>not in favour of</u> it.	against
1	I think it's a <u>practical and intelligent</u> idea.	III UMMI AMIR COMMUN SATAMA, IMMIN
2	They're going to think carefully about the new plan.	er ever man man anne anne a
3	We can <u>make it less</u> .	it .
4	I <u>agree with</u> them and think they're right.	them.
5	Do you have the opinion that he's innocent?	
6	What do you think of the plan that was formally suggested?	

6 Complete the dialogues.

-	complete the dialogues.
•	Are you going to help them? ~ Yes, I'm going to <u>support</u> the plan.
1	Is he in favour of it? ~ No, he's it.
2	Will it increase the problem? ~ No, it'llit.
3	Do they like the idea? ~ No, they're to it.
4	Are you going to support her? ~ Yes, I that she's right.
5	Do you think it's sensible? ~ No, I think it's very
6	Are they against the idea? ~ No, they're in of it.
7	Does she really need our help? ~ Yes, she's completely on us.
8	Is he old enough to look after the shop? ~ Yes, he's a veryyoung man.



64 I can talk about rules

A Rules at school 🕟

The school I went to in the 1930s was very strict. We had to wear a uniform, and the headteacher insisted that we even wore it to church on Sundays. We weren't allowed to talk to the girls at the school next to ours, but of course nobody obeyed that rule. Smoking was banned everywhere. The teachers made us work very hard, and we were forced to stay after school some evenings to do four or five hours' homework. One day I laughed during a test, and the

teacher made me write to all 40 students in the class and apologize for my bad behaviour. How silly! I was very disobedient, and always being punished.



Glossary

strict expecting people to do what you say.
insist that say strongly that sth must be done.
allow sb to do sth (often passive) tell sb that they can do sth.

obey sb/sth do what sb/sth tells you to do. opp **disobey**.

rule an official statement which says what you must or must not do.

ban sth (often passive) say officially that sth is not allowed.

make sb do sth tell sb that they must do sth which they do not want to do. syn force sb to do sth. behaviour the way you do and say things. behave v. disobedient A disobedient child doesn't obey rules, opp obedient.

punish sb make sb suffer for sth they have done wrong. punishment N.

ABOUT VOU

- 1 Cross out one word to make each sentence correct.
 - ▶ Will the government ban to fast food?
 - 1 Did she force to you to eat it?
 - 2 They made us to sit there for an hour.
 - 3 I wasn't be allowed to eat anything.
- 4 Did he always obey with the rules?
- 5 She punished to me because I was late.
- 6 She insisted on that she didn't do it.
- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words on the right.

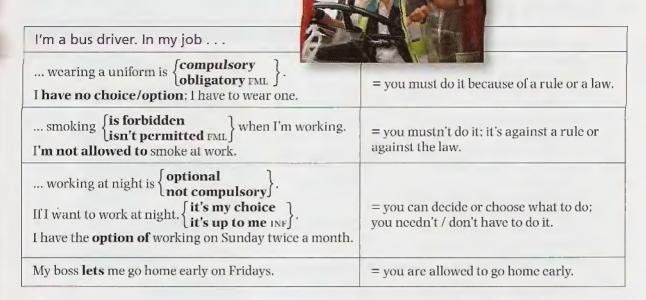
	She's very bad;	she always <u>disobeys</u> the rules.	OBEY
1	The children	very well yesterday.	BEHAVIOUR
2	You aren't	to walk on the grass.	ALLOW
3	My dog is very	; he never comes when I call him.	DISOBEY
4	They have	alcohol at football matches.	BAN
5	What was her	for breaking the rules?	PUNISH
6	His	was terrible yesterday.	BEHAVE

Complete the questions with a suitable word.

				ABOUT TOU
	hen you were at school at			
•	were girls allowed	. to wear make-up?		
1	were you an o	child? 🖺 🔒		
2	what happened if you d.	the rules	?	де запиставата записисавана пинет согла липане в
3	were the rules very s	?		and remark an artificial flor cells describe a cells flore cells f
4	what did teachers f	you to do that	t you didn't like?	mailtininachiline sudulum suurin seeliline muulastudii muusii seeli
5	did children b	better or worse tha	n nowadays?	

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

B Can you choose?



- **5** Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.
 - ► He allowed me to do it. | He permitted me to do it. S
 - 1 It's not compulsory. | It's up to you.
 - 2 She has no choice. | It's optional.
 - 3 It's his choice. | It's up to him.
 - 4 Is it compulsory? | Is it forbidden?
 - 5 It's obligatory. | It's allowed. ____
 - 6 It's optional. | It's not compulsory.
 - 7 He lets me do it. | He allows me to do it. ____
 - 8 It's not optional. | It's obligatory.
- 6 Complete each of the dialogues with one word.
- ▶ Do you have to wear a uniform? ~ No, it's not __compulsory .
 - 1 Can you leave the building at lunchtime? ~ Yes, they ______ you do what you want.
 - 2 Do you have to work at the weekends? ~ Yes, I have no
 - 3 Are you ______ to use the phone for personal calls? ~ No, it's _____
 - 4 Can he work at home some days? ~ Yes, he can; it's _____ to him.
 - 5 Do you have to do extra training for the job? ~ No, you don't it's ______, but I probably will.
 - 6 Is today's meeting optional or ______ ? ~ Well, it's your _____ , but I think you should go.
 - 7 There's a café at work; you're not ______ to eat your own food there.
 - 8 I have the ______ of working in different departments if I want to move around.
- Test yourself. Cover the left-hand column in the table and look at the explanations.

 Can you remember the words and phrases in bold?

65 I can discuss hopes and plans

A Making plans

- A Ramiro says you're making plans for your grandmother's 100th birthday in July.
- B Yes, we've still got a few things to **sort out**.
- A So you're going to have a big party, are you?
- B Yes, we're expecting about a hundred people, actually.
- A Wow! And where do you intend to have it?
- B On a river boat, and I'm hoping to get a jazz band too.
- Λ That sounds great! I hope it all **goes smoothly**.
- B Yeah, I don't want anything to go wrong because she's really looking forward to it.

Glossary

- make plans (for sth) prepare for sth you want to do in the future. syn plan sth.
- sort sth out organize sth.
- **be going to do sth** plan to do sth in the future.
- intend to do sth / plan to do sth. intention N. OFP have doing sth no intention of doing sth.
- hope to do sth want to do sth and think that it is possible.
- go smoothly

 whappen without difficulties or delays.

 If sth goes wrong, there is a problem and the plan might fail.
- look forward to (doing) sth (e feel happy about sth that is going to happen.

spotlight actually

Actually is often used when adding new information or being more exact. syn **in fact**. Be careful: **actually** does <u>not</u> mean 'at the moment'.

He's German, isn't he? ~ Yes, he's from Berlin, actually.

- 1 Same or different? Write S or D.
 - ► She's looking forward to seeing John. | She's expecting to see John. □
 - 1 Did the wedding go smoothly? | Did the wedding go wrong? ____
 - 2 He plans to go to Ireland. | He intends to go to Ireland.
 - 3 I live in Poland at the moment. | I live in Poland, actually.
 - 4 I'm hoping to get the job. | I'm going to get the job.
 - 5 I don't intend to buy the car. | I've no intention of buying the car.
 - 6 Have you planned anything for tonight? | Have you made any plans for tonight? ____
- 2 Complete the email.

We're ▶ going to take six months off work and go travelling this winter. At the moment we're (1) m plans and trying to decide exactly where to go. We (2) i to spend most of the time travelling round Australia and New Zealand as we both have family there. I'm (3) h to be able to get hotel work there, which will cover the cost of our accommodation. I'm not (4) e anything very smart, but at the same time, I've no (5) i of sleeping in a tent for the whole time. At the moment we're trying to sell our car to help pay for the adventure: I just hope nothing goes (6) w with the sale. In (7) f, if everything goes (8) s, we'll be in Sydney on Christmas Day, which will be fabulous; I'm really looking (9) f to it.

Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What do the words mean?

B Spoken responses

Are you going to move house?

	Responses	Meaning
V	Definitely.	= Yes, I'm sure it will happen.
×	Definitely not.	= No, I'm sure it won't happen.
V	I think so.	= I think it will probably happen.
×	I doubt it. / I don't think so.	= 1 think it probably won't happen.
v	I hope so.	= I want it to happen, but I don't know if it will.
×	I hope not.	= I don't want it to happen, and I don't know if it will.
V	1'm afraid so.	= I think it will happen and I'm unhappy about it.
×	I'm afraid not.	= I don't think it'll happen and I'm unhappy about it.
~	I assume so.	= I think it will happen, but I have no proof.
V	I expect so. I imagine so.	= I think it will happen.
	I suppose so. I guess so.	

-				
4	Correct the mistakes.	Write the correct	sentence on	the right.

-	I'm assume so.	l assume so.				
		Tillion (Altilion della collection (Altilion della collection)	4	l guess it.	- William of the Control of the Cont	
	I doubt so.		5	I afraid so.		and the same of th
_	I'm not afraid.		6	I don't hope.		Hallot Hallot
3	I don't think.		7	Definitely no.		

Complete the dialogues with the correct words or phrases.

- ► Is everything going smoothly with your holiday plans? ~ Yes, I hope 50
- cooking.

- likes him.

- 7 Are you going to buy that CD player? ~ D ... It's the best one on the market. 8 Are you going to take the exam? ~ Yes, I s ... , but I'd rather wait another year.
- Test yourself. Cover the responses and look at the meanings. What are the responses?

I can express dissatisfaction

A How to complain

- Make sure you know how you want the situation to be resolved after you complain.
- Collect as much evidence as possible, e.g. photos, guarantees, etc.
- · Expressing dissatisfaction in person can be the most effective.
- Always keep calm when you complain. There is no point in losing your temper.
- · Back up your claim in writing.
- Consider getting an expert's opinion to back up your claim.

spotlight point

Point can mean 'reason' or 'purpose', and is used in several expressions:

What's the point of doing that? (What's the reason for doing that?)

There's no point in doing that. (There's no reason to do that.)

Match 1-6 with a-q.

•	make <u>C</u>	a	in person
1	a written	b	calm
2	lose	C	a claim 🗸
3	make	ď	guarantee
4	keep	е	the situation
5	speak to someone	f	your temper
6	resolve	g	sure
6	resolve	g	sure

Glossary

make sure

be certain

resolve 5th FML

 find an answer to a problem. SYN settle sth.

complain (about sth) say you are not satisfied with sth. make a complaint

(about sth) N.

quarantee

a written promise by a company that it will repair or replace sth that stops working within a specific period of time.

dissatisfaction

· the annoyed feeling you get when sth is not as good as you expected it to be, opp satisfaction, dissatisfied ADJ.

in person keep calm speaking to sb face to face. stay quiet and not get

excited, worried, or angry. be unable to control your

anger. opp keep your

back sth up

lose your temper

support sth; say or show that

sth is true.

claim

 a demand for sth, often money, that you think you have a right to, often from a company or the government.

make a claim v

in writing

consider doing sth

· in a letter, email, etc. think about doing sth.

consideration N.

· a person who has a lot of expert knowledge of a subject.

2 Complete the sentences.

	Make <u>sure</u> you keep your receipt.
1	We were very with the slow service, and in the end we about it.
2	You often get a two-year with a new washing machine.
3	There's no in complaining without a good reason.
4	It helps to have someone to you up when you make a complaint.
5	If you want to make a claim, you will need to back it up in
6	I tried to calm but I'm afraid I lost my
7	You sometimes need to find an who really knows the subject.



Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

seeing a lawyer to get some legal advice?

8 Have you

B Having a moan

A I'm **fed up with** the painting course this term.

- B I'm not happy with it either. The room they've given us is dreadful - it's too small.
 - A Actually, I'm not so bothered about the room. It's the man who **joined** the course last month - he really gets on my nerves. He's always moaning.
- B Yes, he's **spoilt** it for the rest of us, really. And next week someone else is starting.
 - A Oh what a nuisance! I don't think they should let people join the course late. I might mention it to the teacher.

Glossary

dreadful

fed up with sth happy with sth

- · bored or unhappy with sth.
- · feeling that sth is good or right.
- very bad. syns terrible, atrocious, appalling.

join sth

* become a member of a group such as a class or club.

get on sb's nerves • INF irritate sb or make sb angry. moan

· INF keep saying what is wrong

or bad about sth. moan N. spoil sth change sth good into sth bad

PT, PP spoilt/spoiled or unpleasant. SYN ruin sth. a person, thing, or situation

nuisance

that annoys you.

mention sth

 talk about sth, usually quickly and without saying much.

spotlight bother

The verb **bother** is used in several expressions:

I'm not bothered about what I wear. INF = I don't care about what I wear. (I'm) sorry to bother you. = I'm sorry to disturb you. (Used when sb is busy.) **Don't bother** to buy the milk. = Don't trouble yourself; it's not necessary.

Cross out one more word in this list that does not have a negative meaning.

▶ join atrocious fed up ruin moan dreadful nuisance mention appalling spoil

- Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.
 - ► What dreadful weather. ~ Yes, absolutely <u>atrocious</u>
 - 1 What's the matter? ~ Oh, I'm _____ up with this essay.
 - 2 Oh Brian, I'm sorry to you. ~ That's OK. Come on in.
 - 3 We can't watch TV. It's not working. ~ Oh no! What a ____
 - 4 There was too much salt on the meat. ~ Yes I know. It really
 - 5 Shall I close the gate? ~ No, don't ______. Leave it open.
 - 6 I've decided to ______a chess club. ~ I didn't know you played chess.
 - 7 Do you want to go out? ~ No, I'm not ______. Let's stay here.
 - Did you say anything about the course? ~ Yes, I _______ it to the director.
- 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
 - 1 Is there anything you're fed up with at the moment?
 - 2 Is there anything or anyone that gets on your nerves? __
 - 3 Do you moan about anything in particular? 4 Can you think of anything in your town that's dreadful?
 - 5 Are you bothered about the level of your English at the moment?
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

67 I can understand warnings 📦



Glossary

mind (your head, leg, etc.) used to tell sb to be careful of sth.

danger the possibility of sth happening that will injure, harm, or kill sb.

beware of sth (usually on written signs) be careful of sth.

warning a notice or statement that tells you to be careful, warn sb (of/about sth) v.

cross (sth) go from one side of sth to the other.

in case of sth if sth happens.

caution (used in notices) be careful.

swallow sth make food or drink go down your throat and into your stomach.

seek sth fml try to find sth or ask sb for sth. assistance fml help or support.

premises (PL) the building and land around it belonging to a business.

-		
61	Write the words in	correct sentences.

- mind / is / dish / your / that / hot / fingers Mind your fingers. That dish is hot.
- 1 assistance / any / need / do / you / ? ___
- 2 help / seek / symptoms / Caution / if / continue / medical
- 3 beware / bites / the / of / it / dog
- 4 is / when / don't / the / down / Warning / cross / barrier
- 5 building / the / fire / case / in / of / leave / immediately.
- 6 police / ring / of / case / in / the / emergency.

2 Complete the sentences.

\triangleright	LOOK out! There's a car coming!
1	If someone the liquid, take them to hospital and take the bottle with you.
2	of falling rocks. In of emergency, call the police.
3	the step when you leave the building.
4	Watch! There's a big spider.
5	The river was flooded, and a policeman us about the ahead.
6	Be when you're driving there. There are often low flying!
7	If you need any, please ring the office.
8	There are usually quard dogs on the business at night.

Review: Social English

Unit 59

- 1 Complete the sentences on the right, keeping the same meaning as in the sentences on the left.
 - ► It's possible he'll go.
 - 1 He's sure to go.
 - 2 I don't think he'll fancy her.
 - 3 I'm almost sure it'll be a disaster.
 - 4 He might go.
 - 5 | I expect it'll rain later.
 - 6 He always thinks the worst will happen.

He <u>might go</u> .
He'll
I he'll fancy her.
It's bound
There's a chance
It's to rain later.
Ho's very

Unit 60

1 Complete the text.

The twins and me



My sisters, Lucy and Ellie, are twins. To look at they are absolutely \blacktriangleright <u>identical</u>, (1) ______ for their hair: Lucy's is long, and Ellie's is shoulder-length. They adore being twins and they love people to know they are twins. When they go out, they make sure that their clothes are (2) _____ the same.

In character, though, they're not (3) ________. Ellie is confident and optimistic (4) _______ with Lucy, who is much more reserved and quiet. When they are at university, their behaviour is also (5) _______ different. Ellie is friends with everyone, but Lucy doesn't spend time with anyone (6) _______ from her sister. The (7) _______ difference between the twins and me is the way we look, of course. I'm very dark in (8) ______ with them: they both have beautiful blonde hair.

Unit 61

- 1 Complete the conversation.
 - A Jun, we must get together next week. Can you (1) it on Tuesday?
 - B I'm (2) I'm busy on Tuesday. (3) about Wednesday?
 - A No, I don't think I'm (4) _____ then. I'm supposed (5) ____ see Chris about the computer.
 - B Oh dear. Wednesday's the only day next week that I'm not (6) _____ up. Could you possibly (7) _____ your computer meeting until the following week?
 - A I'm not sure; I'll have to talk to Chris. Can I (8) that with you tomorrow?
 - B OK, Jun, that's fine. I'll wait to hear from you.

Unit 62



1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

	Things or people that I like:	ABOUT YOU
	1 I'm very on physical exercise.	
	2 I'm of the people in my class.	
	3 I'mabout dancing.	
	4 Labsolutely chocolate.	
	Things or people that I don't like:	
	5 I don't like shellfish at	
	6 I can't waiting in queues.	
	7 I'm not very on cheese.	
	8 I absolutely cold weather.	
	ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the senten- or ask another student.	ces in Exercise 1? Write your own sentences
	of ask affoliter student.	
n	nit 63	
	Which two phrases have a similar meaning	7 Tick (/) thom
	,	
	 I support it □ personally, I think ☑ if you as not in favour of □ the issue □ against □ 	sk me 🗾
	1 not in favour of ☐ the issue ☐ against ☐ 2 is to blame ☐ it seems to me ☐ is his fault ☐	
	3 in my opinion ☐ as far as I'm concerned ☐ 1	
	4 in favour in principle in theory	The considering [
	5 is opposed to is against is mature	
	6 believe reckon blame	
	Circle the correct word or phrase.	
	▶ It seems/reckons to me that we need this.	4 What do you think about/of my new car?
	1 Is he in favour/against of the proposal?	5 I need to consider/reckon this issue.
	2 It's not your blame/fault.	6 Do you agree in favour/in principle?
	3 Give him a key; he's quite sensible/silly.	7 Do you support/opposed to the idea?
_	it CA	
	nit 64	
	Rewrite the sentence using the correct form	m of the word in capitals. The meaning
	should stay the same.	
		banned.
	*	
	•	
		,
		OUR
	•	(1)

Un	uit 65
1	Complete the dialogue. A You must be busy ▶ making plans for your wedding. B Yes, I am, in (1) f , I seem to do nothing else. A Are you (2) e a lot of guests? B Oh, yes, (3) d — it's going to be enormous. We've both got big families. A And is Barry (4) i to come? B Goodness, I really (5) h not — he's the last person I want at my wedding. Anyway, I have no (6) i of inviting him. A And how about Auntie June — is she coming? B No, I'm (7) a not — she's not very well, (8) a Her operation didn't go a (9) s as expected, so she won't be able to make it. She's ok, though. A That's a relief. And what about Grandpa — is he (10) g to be there? B Well, I (11) g so — it wouldn't be a wedding without him, would it?
Un	it 66
	Is the speaker happy or unhappy in the sentences? Write H or U. The rain didn't spoil my holiday. ☐ 5 Judi didn't lose her temper. ☐ 1 I was really fed up with her. ☐ 6 I've got a complaint about the room. ☐ 2 The weather's atrocious, isn't it? ☐ 7 The noise doesn't bother me. ☐ 8 That dog's a nuisance. ☐ 9 My day's been ruined. ☐ 8 Illy's moaning again. ☐ 9 My day's been ruined. ☐ 1 The re's no reason to go out. POINT There's ☐ 1 There's no reason to go out. POINT There's ☐ 2 You should speak to her face-to-face. PERSON You ☐ 1 would ask someone who knows a lot about it for advice. EXPERT I ☐ 1 Have you ever thought about going to live abroad? CONSIDER Have ☐ 5 She became a member of the tennis club. JOIN She ☐ 6 Waiting in queues really irritates me. NERVES Waiting ☐
Un	7 I don't think the cost of the meal is important. BOTHER I 8 Did she say anything to you about the divorce? MENTION Did?
1	Complete the warnings. LOW DOOR. 2 3

If swallowed,

seek medical

immediately.

OF THEFT,

PHONE THIS NUMBER.

Broken glass on the path

- please be

68 I can use link words

A Reason, result, and addition

A **link between A and B** is a connection between two or more people or things. The words in bold in this unit all **link** one idea (A) **with** another idea (B).

Glossary

as a result because of sth that happened before.

due to sth because of sth.

what's more INF used when you are adding information in spoken English or informal written English. SYN plus INF (and see spotlight).

as used to say why sth happens, or why sb does sth. syns **since**, **because**.

consequently because of sth that happened before. SYN **therefore**. (Both words are more formal than **as a result** or **so**.)

... and everything went wrong. I forgot to set the alarm, and as a result, I overslept and had to get a taxi to the station. Of course, all the trains were delayed due to the snow. What's more, when the train arrived, it was absolutely freezing as the heating wasn't working. A bit later the ticket inspector came round, and I discovered I'd bought the wrong kind of ticket, so I had to pay again, plus I had to pay a fine, which was very annoying. And when I finally got off the train, I slipped on the ice and broke my ankle. Consequently I spent the rest of the day, not at the meeting, but in hospital having x-rays. Not my best day.

spotlight in addition, moreover, furthermore

These are more formal ways of adding more information or arguments.

The business was in trouble. In addition, his activities had attracted the attention of the police.

Teacher numbers have risen by 12%. Moreover/
Furthermore, extra money is being spent on books.

- Circle the correct word.
 - ► (As/In addition I had no money, I couldn't pay.
 - 1 It snowed heavily, and as a result/plus, we had to stay in for two days.
 - 2 It was an old armchair, and because/what's more, it smelled horrible.
 - 3 He had to give up his job consequently/due to stress.
 - 4 People are richer these days and therefore/since they spend a lot more.
 - 5 It was a long way to the station, so/plus I had a suitcase.
 - 6 Since/Furthermore he had no money, I ended up paying the bill.
 - 7 Zoltan saw a man standing in the shadows. Therefore/Moreover, he was holding a knife.
 - 8 The town has a good transport system. Furthermore/As a result, it is very cheap.
- 2 Write the circled link words in Exercise 1 in the table below.

reason	result	addition
As		

- 3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.
 - ▶ I had a very bad night's sleep: the bed was uncomfortable, plus the room was hot.
 - 1 In winter, schools sometimes have to ______ due to bad weather.
 - 2 Ulla lost her passport on the way to the airport; consequently, ______ fly that day.
 - 3 The hotel was dirty and the service was poor. Furthermore, the food _____
 - 4 As I _____ much money to spend, I decided to stay at home that evening.
 - 5 He forgot his key and therefore he couldn't _____ the flat.
 - 6 Jeans are extremely practical; what's more ______ expensive.

B Contrasting ideas

A **contrast** is a difference between two or more people or things that are being compared. The words in bold below are used to introduce an idea which **contrasts** with something you have just said.

Contrasting two ideas in one sentence:	Notes
We got a ticket, { although even though } it wasn't casy.	The clause with although , even though , and though can come at the beginning or the end, e.g. Although it wasn't easy, we got a ticket.
I went to work despite feeling very unwell. in spite of the bad weather. despite the fact that I had flu.	Despite and syn in spite of are followed by an -ing form or a noun.
Contrasting two ideas in two separate sentences:	
The car was old. { Despite that, I still bought it.	In despite that and in spite of that , the word <i>that</i> refers back to the fact that the car was old.
She didn't work hard. { However, Nevertheless, All the same, } she still passed	However and nevertheless are more formal; all the same is more informal.
He says he's rich. I don't believe him, { though. however.	At the end of a sentence, however is more formal than though .

spotlight still

Still can be used to emphasize that the second part of a sentence is surprising, especially after what was said in the first part of the sentence.

She felt ill, but she still went to work.

He left an hour early, but he still missed the train.

Match 1-8 with a-i.

\blacktriangleright	He says nice things about you9	а	he got to work on time in the morning.
1	He got the job in spite of	b	he wasn't feeling very well.
2	I saw the film last night.	C	although the main course was nice.
3	He went out despite the fact that	d	though the weather wasn't very good.
4	The soup was disgusting,	е	his lack of experience.
5	We had a nice day even	f	the fact that the heating was on.
6	He felt really cold despite	g	However, you can't trust him. ✓
7	He went to bed very late. All the same,	h	I'd rather have a car.
8	The bike's useful Nevertheless	j	I didn't think much of it, though,

5 Complete the sentences with one word. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

>	We had quite a nice day there. All the same, I wouldn't go back again.
1	I could just see the house the fog.
2	Jun has very little money. In spite of, he's really generous.
3	You'll find it hard to get work there, it's worth trying.
4	I wanted to see the exhibition. When I got there, it was closed,
5	There was more snow today, I think it's warmer this evening.
6	In of leaving two hours early, we missed the plane.
7	I didn't feel sleepy though it was very late.
8	the fact that we thought we knew the way, we got lost twice.

C Other link words

Word or phase	Example	Meaning/usage
whereas	I enjoy tennis, whereas my father prefers rugby.	used for comparing two people, things, etc. and saying there is a difference between them.
on the one hand on the other (hand)	On the one hand, it's lovely here in summer, but on the other, the winter is terrible.	used for showing opposite points of view.
otherwise syn or (else)	Put your cake on the table, otherwise the dog will cat it.	used to say that if sth doesn't happen or isn't true, sth else will happen, sometimes sth bad.
provided (that) SYN as long as	I'll go provided you come with me.	only if.
unless	I'll accept the job at the BBC unless they offer me a job at Sky.	used to say that sth will happen or be true if sth else does <i>not</i> happen or is <i>not</i> true.
in case	Take a map in case you need it.	because sth might happen.
so (that)	He got there early so that he could speak to her before the lesson.	used to talk about the purpose of an action.

spotlight purpose

A purpose is a reason for doing something, or a thing that someone wants to achieve. What's the purpose of your trip? The purpose of the meeting is to discuss the figures.

- 6 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.
 - He speaks German, whereas I don't. | I don't speak German, but he does. S
 - 1 If you leave it here, someone will steal it. | Don't leave it here, or someone will steal it. ___
 - 2 I won't go to the party if Chica's going. | I won't go to the party unless Chica's going. ___
 - 3 I took some money so that I could pay. | I took some money in case I had to pay.
 - 4 She'll get there provided she leaves now. | She'll get there as long as she leaves now.
 - 5 I always put sugar in, otherwise it's not sweet. | I always put sugar in unless it's sweet.
 - 6 What was the purpose of his letter? | What was his reason for writing the letter?
- Complete the sentences with words from the box.

whereas on the one hand so that otherwise in case unless . as long as

- She won't use a towel unless it's just been washed.
- 1 The children can go out ____ they don't cross the main road.
- 2 You should get there early _ you get a good seat.
- flying can save time, but on the other, it's not good for the environment.
- 4 Teachers' salaries have gone up ___
- nurses' salaries have fallen.
 you're hungry on the journey. 5 Take some chocolate with you
- 6 Plug it in, it won't work.
- Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?

69 I can use a range of adjectives

A Describing places



Glossary	
remote	a far away from where many people live.
rural	\ast connected with the country, not the town. opp $\mbox{\it urban}.$
curious	unusual or strange.
old-fashioned	* typical of the past but not of the present. or modern .
vital	» necessary and important. syn essential.
grand	impressive and large or important.
simple	including the things you need but no extra things.syn basic.
reasonable	 If prices are reasonable, they are not too high. SYN fair. OPP unreasonable.
impressed with sth/sb	* feeling that sth/sb is good or of a high standard.
overall	 general; considering everything.
suspicious of sth/sb	• feeling that sth/sb is dishonest and cannot be trusted.
polite	behaving in a good or correct way. OPP rude.
deserted	• empty because everyone has left. opps busy , crowded .

0	Find seven more pairs of synonyms or opposites in the box.		
	simple ✓ ∫ modern curious fair polite rural basic ✓ urban rude deserted		
	simple / SYN basic / SYN / SYN	/ SYN / OPP / OPP / OPP / OPP	
2	Is the meaning the same or different? Wri It's a rural area. It's an urban area. No one was there. It was deserted. It's expensive. The price is reasonable. She's good. I'm impressed with her.	4 It's essential. It isn't vital 5 It wasn't grand. It was quite basic 6 I'm suspicious of him. I don't trust him	
8	Complete the words in the sentences. It gets very busy, so it's vital to arrival. The others found him normal, but I thought I gets a long way from town, so it's quite a result of the man when he refule. I like the restaurant, and what's more, the prince of the man when he refule. I was very in the with the hotel: it's classification.	ne was a c man. place. Ised to give his name. ices are r ean, comfortable, and very friendly.	

B Describing feelings

Adjectives	Example(s)	Meaning
terrifyi <mark>ng</mark> / terrified	It was a terrifying film. I was terrified watching that film.	very frightening. very frightened.
		feeling unhappy because sth is not as good as you hoped.
amazing/ amazed	Some of the dancers were amazing .	surprising and difficult to believe, often in a positive way.
shocking/ shocked	It was shocking to see so many people with nowhere to live.	upsetting and very surprising in a negative way.
alarming/ alarmed	When the police arrived, it was a bit alarming.	frightening or causing worry.
disgusting/ disgusted	Last night's meal was disgusting .	very unpleasant.
amusing/ amused	We all thought the film was quite amusing .	funny in a gentle way.
embarrassed/ embarrassing	I was embarrassed when I got his name wrong.	feeling uncomfortable because of sth silly you have done.
astonishing/ astonished	It's astonishing how much she has changed in the last five years.	very surprising.
satisfying/ satisfied OPP dissatisfied	Cooking for others is very satisfying .	making you feel pleased or happy.

6 Circle the correct answer.

- ► The beaches were really amazing/amazed.
- 1 I was shocking/shocked when I saw it.
- 2 He was satisfying/satisfied with the course.
- 3 The hotel didn't have a restaurant, which was rather disappointing/disappointed.
- 4 It was a terrifying/terrified experience.
- 5 The smell was disgusting/disgusted.
- 6 José felt a bit embarrassing/embarrassed.

spotlight -ed/-ing endings

We use adjectives that end with **-ed** to describe our feelings. We use adjectives that end with **-ing** to describe the person or thing that makes us have these feelings. We were **shocked** by his behaviour. His behaviour was **shocking**.

6 Complete the dialogues with adjectives from the table.

- ► Were you frightened? ~ Yes, absolutely <u>terrified</u>
- 1 Was the film funny? ~ Yes, it was quite _____
- 2 You wore jeans to a smart party! ~ Yes, it was a bit _____
- 3 He steals money from old people. ~ I know. It's absolutely _____
- 4 Was he pleased with his marks? ~ No, he was _____ with them.
- 5 Was the wine unpleasant? ~ Yes, it was absolutely _____.
- 6 Were you surprised? ~ Yes, absolutely
- 7 Were you very frightened? ~ Yes, it was a bit ______.
- 8 Were you happy with the work? ~ No, I wasn't _____ with it.



Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

C Describing qualities 🕟

People have **mixed feelings** about the new city hotel. Here are some comments.

The rooms were adequate but I didn't like the artificial flowers.

I like the contemporary design — simple but effective.



Most of the staff were temporary but they seemed very efficient.

I was able to take my dog. It's rare for a hotel to allow them.

I was **glad** we had one of their best rooms. Some looked a bit **cramped**.

They put champagne in our room, which was very **unexpected**.

Glossary

mixed feelings * both positive (+) and negative (-)

feelings about sth.

adequate y just good enough but nothing more.

OPP inadequate.

artificial • made by people and used instead of

sth natural. opps real, natural.

contemporary * of the present time. syn modern.

OPP old-fashioned.

effective successful and giving the result you

want, opp ineffective.

firm • quite hard. opp soft.

temporary employed or continuing for only a

limited period of time. opp permanent.

efficient working well, quickly, and without

mistakes. OPP inefficient.

rare not done, seen, or happening very

often. opp common.

glad • pleased; quite happy, syn pleased.

cramped small, and not having enough space.

OPP spacious.

 $\textbf{unexpected} \qquad \textbf{If sth is unexpected, it surprises you} \\$

because you didn't know it was going

to happen. opp expected.

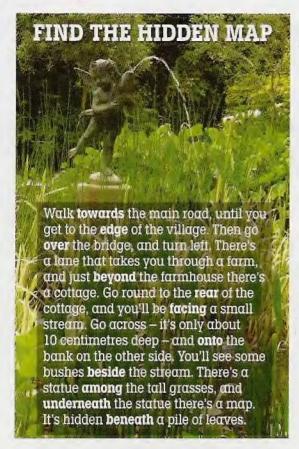
- 8 Replace the underlined adjective with a word that means the opposite.
 - ► I had <u>positive</u> feelings. <u>negative</u>
 - 1 The food was <u>adequate</u>.
 - 2 We had a firm mattress.
 - 3 The service was efficient.
 - 4 My room was cramped.

- 5 Is that <u>real</u> snow?
- 6 It's a rare disease.
- 7 It was an effective method.
- 8 The visit was expected. ...
- 9 It's a temporary arrangement.
- 9 Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives.
 - ► You couldn't move round in the bathroom; it was very <u>cramped</u>
 - 1 I have ______feelings about working abroad: I'd like to, but I'd miss my family.
 - 2 It's a fantastic climate here. It's very ______ to have bad weather in the summer.
 - 3 I'm _____ your mother is feeling better now. She was quite ill last week.
 - 4 She wears very old-____clothes.
 - 5 My sister's having a baby. It was completely ______, but we're all very happy.
 - 6 This machine does the work of ten men; it's very
 - 7 I think his work is ______, but it could be better.
 - 8 A lot of people don't like _____ art because they don't understand it.
 - 9 Sometimes Ava is very positive, but she can also be quite _____.
 - 10 She's only a _____ member of staff. I think she's leaving next week.
- 10

Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings? Can you remember the synonyms and opposites?

70 I can express place and time

A Place



Glossary

towards in the direction of (also toward).

edge the place where sth, e.g. a table, a cliff, or a town, ends.

beyond past a place and further away.

rear the back of sth, especially a car or a building.

opp front.

face sth look towards sth. orr have your back to sth.

onto moving to or on a particular place or position. **beside** next to. syn **by**.

among surrounded by things (also amongst). underneath under (when sth is hidden or covered). beneath FML under.

spotlight over

Over has different meanings:

1 up and across to the other side of something. Go **over** the bridge.

2 used to express location at a distance from the speaker,

Sit over there.

3 **all over**: in all or most parts of sth. His clothes were **all over** the floor.

Match the pictures with the words below.



- ▶ towards 3 over the rear beside beneath onto the edge among
- 2 Complete the sentences with words from the glossary.

The front seats are great, but there isn't much room for your legs in the __rear_____.

The glass fell _______ the floor and smashed.

I could see a few of my friends ______ the crowd.

Don't sit ______ there. Come and sit ______ me.

4 I'm not surprised I couldn't find my pen; it was _____ all those books.

5 We didn't stay in one town – we went all ______ the place.
6 I couldn't see what was happening because I had my _____ to the window.

7 Don't stand so close to the ______ of the road – it's dangerous.

8 There's a village in the valley, and ______ it, you can see the mountains in the distance.

B Time

We'd already played 85 minutes and we were losing. Bob suddenly shouted, 'Come on, there are still five minutes to go - it's not over yet.'

The children were woken during the night by a loud bang, It was followed by heavy rain which lasted throughout the night.

Gny said he'd be back at three this afternoon. In the meantime, I took Martha shopping. She spent all morning looking for a black dress and eventually found something she liked.

I used to play a bit, but these days I just watch football on TV. I go to a game now and again with my son. Recently we saw Arsenal play Spurs.

3 Is the match ___

5 I used to go to Rome

seen it.

.....the 1990s - I loved it.

Glossary	
already	before now or before a
	particular point in time.
to go	If there are five minutes to
	go, then five minutes remain
	before sth will happen.
over	¹ finished.
not yet	 used for talking about sth that has not happened, but will probably happen in the future.
during	* at some point in the period of time mentioned.
last	« continue for a period of time.
throughout	from the beginning to the end of sth.
in the meantime	 during the time between two events. SYN meanwhile.
eventually	 after a long period of time (often after some difficulty).
these days	in the present time. syn
	nowadays.
now and again	 SYNS occasionally, from time
	to time.
recently	* not long ago. recent ADJ.

3	Re	eplace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.		
	•	I saw Petra not long ago. recently		
	1	Do you see your uncle much these days?		
	2	The play <u>continued</u> for about two hours.		
	3 I go to the theatre from time to time.			
	4	The train wasn't due for two hours. In the meantime we went for lunch.		
	5			
	6	We waited at the hotel and after a long period of time Danny arrived.		
4	Co	omplete the dialogues.		
	•	They want us to meet them later this afternoon. ~ Well, in the meantime , let's go to the market		
	1	He's writing a book, but it's not finished ~ Yes I know, he showed it to me It looked very interesting.		
	2	Is 'Love in Amsterdam' his most film? ~ Yes, it came out the summer. think he's working on another film now.		

Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

yet? ~ No, there are still ten minutes to.

4 How long does the film _____? ~ About two hours, but Candy doesn't want to go. She's

for work, just a couple of times a year. ~ Oh, really? I lived

71 I can use prepositions in phrases

A Preposition + word(s)

Phrase	Example	Meaning
by chance	We met in the shop by chance.	without it/sth being planned.
on board	Are all the passengers on board?	on a plane or ship or bus.
on purpose	She broke my watch, but she didn't do it on purpose.	with a definite intention; not accidentally. syn deliberately .
at least	It takes at least an hour to get home.	not less than, and probably more.
at first	I didn't understand him at first .	at the beginning.
in a hurry	He got up late and left in a hurry .	quickly, and usually because you haven't enough time. syn in a rush .
in advance	Can I buy tickets in advance?	before a particular time or event.
in charge of sth/sb	Who's in charge of the office while Matt's on holiday?	in a position of control over sth/sb. syn responsible for sth/sb .
in general	In general, I don't work on Saturdays,	usually; in most cases. SYN generally .
in public	I don't like it when people argue with each other in public .	when other people are present. opp in private .

Make eight more phrases using in, at, by, or on, and one of the words from the box.

general purpose advance ✓
least private public
first board chance

in advance

spotlight in the end and at the end

In the end can mean 'finally', 'after a period of time', or 'in conclusion'.

All the restaurants closed early, so **in the end** we went home.

At the end can mean 'in the final part', or 'when sth finishes'.

At the end of the film, they go to live in New York.

- Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase that has the same meaning.
 - ► We'll need <u>not less than</u> two hours to get there. at least
 - 1 Generally, he's very helpful.
 - 2 I think he took my dictionary <u>deliberately</u>.
 - 3 All the passengers are <u>on the plane</u>.
 - 4 <u>In the final part</u> of the story, the old woman dies.
 - 5 Who's <u>responsible for</u> these noisy children?
 - 6 I had to have breakfast <u>quickly</u>.

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.
 - ► He made the comment in private, but the journalist still reported it.
 - 1 All the buses were full, so ____ the end we took a taxi.
 - 2 If you want to get seats on the train, you'll have to book ____ advance.
 - 3 ____ first I didn't like the book, but actually it got better.
 - 4 I found the shoes I wanted ____ chance.
 - 5 Like many actors, he doesn't like talking about his private life _____ public.

B Word(s) + preposition **♠**

Phrase	Example	Meaning
access to sth	Do you have access to the internet?	the chance to use or have sth.
make the most of sth	If he lets you use the gym, you must make the most of it.	make the best use of sth that will help you. SYN take advantage of sth .
capable of (doing) sth	She's capable of passing the exam if she works hard.	having the ability or qualities to do sth.
involved in sth	He's become very involved in local politics.	connected with sth or taking an active part in it.
approve of sb/sth	My mother doesn't approve of men who smoke.	think that sb/sth is good or suitable. OPP disapprove of sb/sth .
get rid of sth/sb	We got rid of our old sofa. They got rid of two workers.	throw sth away, or make yourself free of sth/sb you don't want.
care about sth/sb	She cares about people. He doesn't care about money.	be interested in sb/sth and think it or they are important.
take care of sb/sth	After their mother died, they took care of their father.	help and protect sb/sth. svn look after sb/sth .
insist on (doing) sth	He insisted on paying for dinner.	say strongly that you must have or do sth, or that someone else must.
cope with sth/sb	I'll have more work next year, but I think I can cope with it.	take action successfully with a difficult situation. syn manage .

spotlight depend on sb/sth

- 1 be able to trust someone or something. syn rely on sb/sth. You can never depend on the trains in this country.
- 2 be decided or influenced by someone or something. We may go out - it depends on the weather.
- Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

	We can look after the children.	5	Don't get rid that lovely dress.
1	She approves my new boyfrie	nd. 6	Can you dependhim?
2	Is he still involved the compan	ıy? 7	Mark is capabledoing very well.
3	They can't cope all this work.	8	I don't have access email.
Δ	He insisted doing the cooking	9	We must take advantage the weather.

- **5** Complete the word in each sentence.
 - ► Does she really care about Conrad? 1 How do you c_____ with three children and a full-time job? 2 I had to get r of all my old records.
 - 3 We're taking c_____ of the house while they're away.
 - 4 It's your only chance to speak English, so make the m _____ of it.

 - 5 Do you want me to L______ after the dog when you go shopping?
 6 I want to go out, but it d______ on the amount of homework we have to do.
 7 He wants us to get i_____ in making arrangements for the conference.
 8 Lucy's friends strongly d_____ of her decision to marry Jack.

72 I can use prefixes

A Negative prefixes

Adjective/opp	Example	Meaning	Other words	
insecure	She's very insecure about her appearance.	not confident about yourself.	informal inflexible	
immoral opp moral	She stole money from my children. That's immoral .	thought to be wrong or dishonest by most people.	impossible impatient	
illegible My doctor's writing is very difficult opp legible illegible. read.		very difficult or impossible to read.	illegal	
<u>ir</u> relevant орр relevant	I need some new shoes. The colour's irrelevant .	not important to what you are discussing or doing.	irregular irresponsible	
unfair OPP fair	His office is bigger than mine. It's so unfair !	not treating each person in the same way or equally.	unpleasant unsuccessful	
unacceptable OPP acceptable	The player hit the ref. That's unacceptable.	so bad that you think it should not be allowed.	uncertain unkind	
disloyal OPP loyal	They were very disloyal to the family.	not supporting your friends, family, country, etc.	dishonest disorganized	
non-alcoholic OPP alcoholic	Is this drink non-alcoholic ?	Juice is non-alcoholic , beer and wine are alcoholic .	non-smoking non-fiction	

spotlight Prefixes

A prefix is a letter or group of letters that you put at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. The prefixes in the table above have the meaning 'not', e.g. *insecure* = not secure, *illegible* = not legible.

1 Cover the table. Write prefixes that add the meaning 'not' to the adject	table. Write prefixes that add the meaning 'not' to the adject	tives
--	--	-------

•	immoral	3	legal	6	formal	9	regular
1	kind	4	responsible	7	smoking	10	honest
2	alcoholic	5	certain	8	secure	11	relevant

2 Complete the dialogues with one word from the table.

	Did your company find a new manager? ~ No, we were unsuccessful.
1	Is stealing from the rich the right thing to do? ~ No, it's
2	Has it got alcohol in it? ~ No, it's
3	Is your age important for this kind of work? ~ No, it's
4	Is she confident with other people? ~ No, she's quite
5	Men and women don't earn the same in this job, do they? ~ No, and that's
6	He didn't support his country, did he? ~ No, he was

3 Complete the questions, then write your own answers, or ask another student.

		ABOUT TOU
1	Do you think life is generally fair or?	
2	Is teenagers' behaviour nowadays acceptable or?	
3	Are your friends generally loyal or?	
4	Is your handwriting legible or?	
5	Do you think it should be legal or to drive at 17?	

B Reversing an action



do your jacket up syn fasten your jacket opp undo/unfasten



tie your shoelace (up) SYN fasten OPP untie/unfasten



pack your suitcase opp unpack



load the van (up) opr unload



plug the kettle in opp unplug



wrap the parcel (up) opp unwrap



lock the cupboard opp unlock



get dressed

- 4 Circle two correct words in each sentence.
 - ► You can wrap a) (a parcel b) (a present c) water.
 - 1 You can unload a) a ship b) a saucepan c) a lorry.
 - 2 You can pack a) your luggage b) a suitcase c) a handbag.
 - 3 You can unplug a) a room b) a printer c) a washing machine.
 - 4 You can untie a) a dog b) a boat c) a newspaper.
 - 5 You can do up a) a pair of trousers b) a hat c) a seat belt.
 - 6 You can unlock a) a suitcase b) a car c) a bottle.



6 Complete the table using a synonym of the verb on the left, then write the opposite.

Sentence	Synonym	Opposite
► Take the bags out of the car.	Unload the car.	Load the car.
1 Take the paper off the present.		
2 Shut the suitcase with a key.		
3 Put your clothes on.		
4 Put your things in your suitcase.		
5 Fasten the buttons on your shirt.		
6 Fasten your shoelaces.		



Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words and opposites.

73 I can use suffixes

A Noun suffixes

1	$\overline{}$
de	- 1
100	-68
1800	_

Suffix	Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
+ ment	judge	judgement	measure	measurement
+ ion / sion ation / ition	react interpret	reaction interpretation	extend define	extension definition
+ ance / ence	disappear	disappearance	prefer	preference
Suffix	Adjective	Noun	Adjective	Noun
+ ty / ity	cruel	cruelty	real	reality
+ ness	gentle	gentleness	kind	kindness

0	Circle t	he nouns.	

disappear definition gentleness react prefer kindness disappearance extension cruel reality define preference interpret measure judgement extend

2 Look at the verbs and adjectives, which you did not circle, in Exercise 1. Write them below with the correct noun form.

•	disappear	disappearance
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		- many many many many
7		

3 Complete the sentences using a word from the table above.

She cooked for me when I was ill; I really

	appreciated her kindness .
1	Could I have the of the room so
	that I can order the new carpet?
2	I get very upset when I hear about
3	He lives in a dream world and doesn't want
4	The police are investigating the

___towards animals.

in a dream world and doesn't want to face the ______ of the situation.

lice are investigating the _____ of the young man, who was last seen in 2007.

5 I told the boss I was leaving; her _____ was very surprising. She laughed!

6 She chose the wrong person for the job. That's just poor ___

7 I like most types of novel, but my ______ is for crime stories and murder mysteries.

8 We're planning a new ______ for the old building; it'll be twice the size.

Glossary

judgement an opinion you form after thinking carefully about sth (in a court of law, the judgement is the judge's official decision).

measurement(s) the height, weight, etc. of sth. reaction sth that you do or say as a result of sth that has happened.

extension a part that is added to sth to make it bigger or longer.

interpretation an understanding or explanation of the meaning of sth.

definition an exact statement of what a word or phrase means.

disappearance a situation in which sb or sth becomes impossible to see or find.

preference an interest in or liking of one thing more than another.

cruelty behaviour that deliberately causes a person or animal to suffer.

reality the way life really is.

gentleness kind and calm behaviour towards other people.

kindness behaviour that shows you care about others and want to help them.

B Adjective suffixes

Suf	ffix	Examples	Meaning	
-le: -fu	(4)00.00	Feel powerless in your job? Want to be powerful? Buy our POWERGUY video!	powerless not able to influence or control people or things. opp powerful.	
-pr	00	The world's only waterproof and shockproof digital camera, Great for underwater photography!	waterproof not allowing water to enter. shockproof made so that it isn't easily damaged if it is hit or dropped.	
-ica	al	Cool, practical, economical clothing for tropical conditions. Go to practicalgear.com	practical useful and suitable. economical using money, goods, etc. carefully and without wasting any. tropical from or in the hottest parts of the world.	
-ab	le	Fabulous fashionable shoes – and they're machine washable too!	fashionable popular at the moment. washable able to be washed.	
-ou	IS	Get our T-shirts with ridiculous or humorous slogans	ridiculous very silly. humorous funny; amusing.	
- y		Try our spicy curry or fish with a creamy sauce.	spicy with a strong, hot flavour. creamy containing cream, or smooth like cream.	
4		tk (/) the correct form. Both forms may	spotlight Adjectives ending in -ful and -less	
	De ▶	ridiculous 🗸 ridicical 🗴	There are several pairs of opposites ending in -ful and -less:	
	1	waterproof proofwater	He's a careful student. = He doesn't make	
	2	careful careless creamful creamy	mistakes, orp careless.	
	4	humorful humorous	It was a useful/useless suggestion. This gas is harmful/harmless .	
	5	practicy practical	It's a painful/painless treatment.	
	6 7	washable washless powerful powerless		
A			1. 6 . B	
Ð	Ar	re these things generally good or bad? Wr a powerful speaker <u> </u>		
	1		al treatment 7 a powerless government	
	2	a shockproof watch 5 tropical fruit		
6	Co	emplete the sentences using adjectives for	med from the nouns in the box below.	
		spice pain practice fashion ridicule u	ise harm humour √ economy	
	•	The article wasn't supposed to be humorous	, but it made me laugh all the same.	
	1	Don't leave that powder there – it could be	to the children.	
	2	The price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the price of the meal was I just of the price of the		
	3	A bike is much more than a car in		
	5	These shoes may be, but they're	incredibly uncomfortable.	
	6	My car uses less petrol than my sister's, so it's a ls your toothache very?	a lot more	
	7 8	I couldn't eat the meal; it was much too	for me.	
6				
U	I	lest yourself. Look at the examples and	cover the meanings. What are the meanings?	

74 I can use verb patterns 🕟

Verb + infinitive	Example	Meaning
intend to do sth	We intend to leave early tonight.	plan or mean to do sth.
manage to do sth	I managed to get a job, but it wasn't easy.	succeed with sth that is often difficult.
tend to do sth	I tend to get up late on Sundays.	usually do sth. tendency N.
pretend to do or be sth	He pretended to be ill because he just didn't want to go to school.	act in a particular way to make people believe sth that isn't true.
refuse to do sth	Why did she refuse to help you?	say that you won't do sth that sb has asked you to do.

Other common verbs used in this way: expect, promise, offer, decide, hope, want, mean.

Verb + -ing form			
imagine doing sth	I can't imagine working without a computer.	think what sth will be like.	
admit doing sth deny doing sth	He admitted taking the vasc. She denied taking his watch.	agree that you have done sth wrong. opp deny doing sth.	
recall doing sth	I don't recall meeting them.	remember sth you did in the past. feel unhappy that you have to do sth.	
mind doing sth	Do you mind working late?		
regret doing sth	I regret leaving school at 16.	feel sorry that you did sth.	

Other common verbs used in this way: enjoy, avoid, keep, risk, regret, consider, suggest.

Verb + object + infinitive		
persuade sb to do sth	He persuaded me to buy a new car.	make sb do sth by giving them a good reason to do it.
encourage sb to do sth	My sister encouraged me to have dancing lessons.	give sb help and support so that they feel confident to do sth.
warn sb not to do sth	He warned me not to go into that area.	tell sb not to do sth that might be unpleasant or dangerous.
remind sb to do sth	I had to remind her to post the letter.	help sb to remember sth that they have to do.
enable sb to do sth	His map enabled me to find it.	make it possible for sb to do sth.

Other common verbs used in this way: want, ask, tell, beg, advise, expect, force, help, allow.

Verb + object + preposition		
accuse sb of sth	The teacher accused the boy of cheating.	say that sb has done wrong or broken the law.
blame sb for sth	They blamed the teachers for the bad exam results.	think or say that sb is responsible for sth bad.
remind sb of sb/sth	You remind me of my dad.	cause sb to remember sb/sth.
introduce sb to sb	I introduced Miss Anderson to my boss.	tell sb another person's name when they meet for the first time.

Other common verbs used in this way: ask sb for, forgive sb for, prevent sb from (doing sth), spend sth on.

)	Cre	oss out the ve	rb that canno	t be u	ised in each	ı sei	ntence.	
		They	to go.					
			b) enjoyed	c)	refused	d)	intended	
		a) encouraged	b) persuaded		reminded	d)	pretended	
	2	Hea) managed	 losing the moi b) admitted 		regretted	d)	denied	
	3	We	_ to go away in	the si	ummer.	AL.		
	4	a) hope I don't	b) enjoy staying the	c) ere.	tend	a)	intend	
		a) recall	b) mind	c)	tend	d)	regret	
	5	a) deny	b) intend			d)	mean	
	6	They				۱۱.	warned	
		a) reminded	b) accused	C)	persuaded	u)	warried	
	Cir	cle the correc	t verb.					
		He said he was	at the meeting	, but 🤅	lenied/admit	ted	causing the trouble.	
	1	The extra mone	ey I earn will wa	rn/ena	able me to h	ave a	a holiday this year.	
	2	The roads will I	be busy, so we i	ntend.	/pretend to le	eave	early.	
		I can't recall/im						
	4	He said it was	dangerous and	warne	d/encourage	d me	e not to go there.	
	5		the bar accuses					
	6	-	t mind/admit go					
		-4-b 4 C :4b						
,		atch 1–6 with	_		1.			
		She suggested			aking any mi		es.	
	1	She accused			e to her siste			
		She persuaded			be an actres			
		She denied			e for the mis	take	es.	
		She pretended			oing out. 🗸			
	5	She introduced		f m	e of lying.			
	6	She blamed		g m	e to go.			
)	ΑE	BOUT YOU Wr	ite your answ	ers oi	ask anoth	er s	tudent.	
	ls t	there anything:						
	1	you managed t	to do recently th	at wa	s difficult? W	/hat	?	
	2							
3 you regret doing recently? What?								
	4		ed to do recentl					
	5							
	6				_			
	7				_			
	8							
	_	1	, , , , , , ,		j			
							table and look at t	he verbs and
	-	examples.	Can you reme	mber	the meani	ngsî	!	

LANGUAGE 183

75 I can use phrasal verbs

A Grammar 🕟

Verb	Example	Meaning
give up [no object]	They gave up when the other team scored the second goal.	accept you cannot do sth and so stop trying.
go up	Sales went up last month.	increase in price, level, etc. opp go down .
run out 🔻 🔻	My visa runs out next week.	come to an end.
take after sb [object goes after the verb and particle]	I take after <u>my father</u> in looks but my mother in character.	look or behave like an older member of your family.
get over sth	She's been very ill, but she's getting over it now.	recover from an illness or bad experience.
give sth away [object can go between or after the verb and particle]	I had a bike but I gave <u>it</u> away . He's given away <u>his old CDs</u> .	give sth to sb without wanting money for it.
make sth up	I couldn't remember the story, so I made something up .	invent sth, often sth that you pretend is true.
switch sth on	Could you switch the light on ? Could you switch on the light?	press sth to start electric power. opp switch sth off.
put sth out	They put out the fire quickly. They put it out quickly.	make sth stop burning. syn extinguish FML.
get on with sb [verb with 3 parts, object at the end]	Do you get on with your brother?	have a good relationship with sb.
run out of sth 🖐	We've run out of bread.	finish your supply of sth.

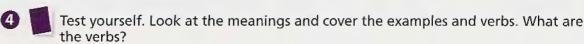
- 1 Is the grammar in these sentences right or wrong? Write R or W.
 - ► She gave away it. W
 - 1 The numbers have gone up.
 - 2 Did he make the story up? ___
 - 3 Does he take his father after?
 - 4 Don't put out it.
 - 5 He'll get over it. ___
 - 6 You can't switch off it.
 - 7 She couldn't do it, so she gave up.
- 2 Circle the correct answer.
 - Prices have gone up/given up.
 - 1 He definitely takes after/gets over his dad.
 - 2 It's not true: he made it up/took after it.
 - 3 Do you get on with/run out of his cousin?
 - 4 My passport runs out/gets over soon.
 - 5 I switched on/got over the cooker.
 - 6 Did he give away/take after any food?

spotlight Separable phrasal verbs

With separable phrasal verbs, the object can go after the verb and particle (see 1 below) or between the verb and the particle (2), but a pronoun must go in the middle (3).

- 1 He gave away the bike. 🗸
- 2 He gave **the bike** away. 🗸
- 3 He gave **it** away. ✓ (NOT He gave away **it.)**
- Complete the sentences.
 - He didn't want his bike, so he gave it __away .
 - 1 The price went _____ from €5 to €6.

 - 3 Let's watch TV. Will you switch it _____
 - 4 She was disappointed not to get the job, but she'll get _______it.
 - 5 She gets ____ well ___ my parents.
 - 6 Oh no! We've run _____ rice.



B In the classroom



STUDENT I can't work out number seven.

TEACHER OK. Leave it out and go on with the next one.

S I can't see the board. Miss.

T Well, put your glasses on.

T How are you getting on, Suki?

S Fine, thank you.

T Could you pick up those bits of paper and put them in the bin?

> T I'll give out the dictionaries, but could you put them back when you've finished?

T If you get through the exercises today, we can go over them tomorrow in class.

Glossary

work sth out find an answer to sth. leave sth out not include sth. syn omit sth. go on (with sth) continue (with sth), syn carry on (with sth).

put sth on begin wearing sth. opp take sth off. get on make progress with sth you are doing. pick sth up take hold of sth and lift it to a higher place. OPP **put sth down**. (See spotlight.)

give sth out give one of sth to each person in a group. SYN hand sth out.

put sth back return sth to its place (see spotlight). get through sth complete a task or activity. go over sth examine and check sth carefully.

spotlight Different meanings

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning.

Pick sth or sb up also means 'go and collect sth or sb':

I have to pick the car up this morning. Can you pick me up at 5.00?

Put sth back also means 'move sth to a later time:

We put the wedding back until the spring.

-					
Ø	Replace the underlined	words with a	phrasal verb	with the same	meaning.

- ► When are you going to collect the tickets? pick up
- 1 Do you want us to omit the next exercise?
- 2 Do you think we'll complete the book by the end of term?
- 3 I couldn't find an answer to the last guestion.
- 4 Do the exercise for homework and we'll check it on Thursday.
- 5 I asked her about her course yesterday. She's not doing very well.
- 6 Let's finish this first, then we can continue with Exercise 9.

6 Complete the sentences.

- If you don't want to do it, you can leave it <u>out</u> 1 Could you give _____ the books to the students, Claude?
- 2 I'd like to get _____ Unit 5 by Friday, then go _____ with Unit 6 on Monday.
- 3 I don't know why the dictionaries aren't there. I put them ______ yesterday.
- 4 You had a job interview yesterday, didn't you? How did you get _____
- 5 She took her boots ... and left them on the steps.
- 6 | couldn't read it until | put my glasses ...
- 7 We're very busy this week, so I had to put the meeting ______ to next Monday.
- 8 The suitcase was very heavy; I had to keep picking it _____ and putting it ____

76 I can use a range of adverbs

A Other ways of saying very .

Some adverbs are used with particular adjectives or verbs to mean very, a lot, or to a large degree.

Phrase	Meaning	Other examples
I was bitterly disappointed with my results.	very disappointed.	bitterly cold
He was desperately unlucky to lose his job.	very unlucky,	desperately need
Jack was seriously injured in the crash.	badly injured.	seriously ill
He was terribly sorry he couldn't come.	very sorry.	terribly sad
It's vitally important we remember.	very important.	
It's highly unlikely that she'll be late.	very unlikely.	highly intelligent
He feels strongly that the war is wrong.	has a strong belief.	strongly oppose
Prices have risen sharply.	risen a lot.	fall sharply
This expression is widely used.	used a lot.	travel widely
I love Lucy, but she's completely mad . I completely forgot about the party. Her first book was totally different . I'm not totally convinced he's innocent.	completely is used to emphasize an adjective or verb. syn totally. convinced 100 per cent sure.	completely bald completely ruined totally sure
 Add a suitable adverb to each sentence ► It's / important to govitally 1 They're intelligent boys. 2 It's cold outside. 3 That man is mad 	e. Show where it should go. 4 Paula's been ill. 5 Their profits have fallen. 6 We need to earn more n 7 It was unnecessary to do	noney
Complete the sentences with a suitable They were all bitterly disappointed to the cost of coffee has sharp 2. The accident happened this morning, and 3. I'm terribly 1. I completely 1. I completely 1. I widely when he was in S. We both 1. Strongly that the g. I'm not totally 1. I that he know	to lose the match. In since last year. It's almost double several people were seriously to bring my homework fouth America. Overnment should change its political serious and the serious are serious as a serious and the serious are serious as a serious and the serious are serious as a serious are	С.
Replace very with a different adverb in She's very sorry about the mistake. ter A good dictionary is very important. It's very unlikely that he'll come. We were very unlucky to lose the match. It used to be quiet but it's very different r He was very disappointed he didn't win. That story of the missing girl is very sad.	now.	

B Frequency and degree

III A H A	XEI. IARRY XEL IARRY XEI. IARRY XEI. IARRY ARRY	Oh. Why's that? Well, he lives in Watford now, v But you still go to concerts, don No, actually I don't. I think I'm just listen to music at home. Don't you miss the excitement of	nese days. The last time was roughly a year ago. which is miles away. That's mainly the reason. I't you? In getting a bit old for rock concerts. Generally I
mile.	AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON	rather, fairly, quite, pretty rds are all used to say that	Glossary regularly happening quite often.
nd nd le's he /it os: w	nethin I pretty I fairly Is fairl Is film w Is posi Itive o	g is true to some extent. Rather y INF are usually stronger, quite are usually weaker. y/quite lazy. vas pretty good. tive words, rather suggests a pinion is unexpected. ery cheap restaurant, but only the food was rather good.	rarely not happening often. SYN seldom. roughly about; not exactly. SYN approximately. mainly mostly. SYN largely. actually really (often used when you are saying the opposite of what sb expects). SYN in (actual) fact. generally usually; most of the time. SYN on the whole. partly to some degree but not completely. SYN to some / a certain extent (To some extent I agree. or I agree to a certain extent.).
		1155	
	Th 1 It's 2 Ge 3 Th 4 It's 5 We 6 I p	e or different? Write S or D. e town is largely industrial. The s quite good. It's fairly good. enerally it's very quiet here. On the e house is actually very nice. The s approximately ten kilometres. e go there regularly. We rarely good. artly agreed with him. I agreed e book was rather good. The be ey seldom work late. They rarely	the whole it's very quiet here the house is very nice at the moment It's roughly ten kilometres go there with him to some extent ook was pretty good
1	► I g 1 <u>Ge</u> 2 Th 3 Th	o to the gym regularly. quite of the gym regularly. quite of the play. enerally I enjoyed the play. estudents were largely Italian. ere were roughly 30 at the party go there mainly for the skiing.	



5 It's a nice flat but it's pretty small.

7 We <u>seldom</u> go out during the week.8 Your sister is <u>quite</u> tall, isn't she?

6 I wasn't sure about Leo at first, but in fact he's very nice.

Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings and synonyms?

Review: Language

Jr	iit	68			₹ ×
1	>	rcle the word or phrase that is different. as / since / due to			Langu زش زبان ایرانیان
	2	despite / because / in spite of as a result / all the same / consequently what's more / still / plus	6	though / so / therefore in addition / moreover / however so / nevertheless / however	
		although / despite the fact that / furthermore			as
2	Co	omplete the texts with appropriate link w	/or	ds.	
	1	I stayed with a delightful family last summer v Despite the fact that my German was c conversation, and as a (1) , I mac (2) , by the end of my stay I felt I with them next summer (3) that	uit le a ha	e basic to start with, they helped r a lot of progress. And what's d made new friends. I'll go back a	me with
	2	The first day of the holiday was a disaster. The hotel (4) to the bad weather. In (9) evening (6) the storm had brough following morning the sun came out, and thir	5)_ nt c	, there was no electrici	ity in the
Ur	\i+	60			

1 Complete the table.

Definition	Word	Opposite
▶ working well and quickly, and without mistakes	efficient	inefficient
1 not done or seen or happening very often	r	
2 just good enough, but nothing more	a	
3 typical of the past, but not now	0	
4 connected with the town, not the country	u	
5 full of people	C	
6 made by people and used instead of something natural	a	natural or
7 behaving in a bad and offensive way	r	
8 feeling pleasure from what you have achieved	S	
9 quite hard	f	
10 successful and giving the result you want	e	

1	Tick (✓)	the correct	words. E	Be careful:	one or	both may	be correct.
---	----------	-------------	----------	-------------	--------	----------	-------------

▶	We live on	the edge $oldsymbol{arVert}$	the rear 🗌	of the village.
---	------------	------------------------------	------------	-----------------

¹ The cat was sitting $underneath \square over \square$ the chair.

1	3 4 5 6 7 8	The man behind us coughed during throughout the film. It was so annoying. We knocked on nearly every door, and now and again eventually found Lisa's house. She jumped down from the window beneath onto the grass. I go there occasionally recently to get some peace and quiet. I could see her in the distance as she was running beside towards me.								
		71								
	Co	a hurry ✓ get rid involved ✓ capable insist general rely favour of take care purpose public approve depend a rush board								
		in on of in a hurry involved in								
ni	it	72								
	1 2 3 4 5	His opinion is unrelevant; I'm going to leave anyway. I think she's feeling a bit dissecure – let's look after her. Could I have an unalcoholic drink, please?								
ni	it	73								
		Do you know what this word means? ~ No, I can't give you a How would you react if you saw a tiger? ~ I don't know what my would be. That's a woman with a lot of power. ~ Yes, she's extremely This mobile comes in grey, silver, and black. ~ Any colour's OK for me; I don't have a That's cruel to animals. ~ Yes, I hate that kind of Why are you building an? ~ We need a bigger kitchen.								

1	Rewrite the sentences using	verbs from the box and the co	rrect construction
---	-----------------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------

She said she didn't take the ring. She denied taking the ring. I don't remember meeting your parents. I don't He wouldn't leave. He Carrie said she stole the necklace. Carrie Mario said I took all the food. Mario She's sorry she moved to London. She When I see Boris I think of your brother. Boris He said the mistake was my fault. He I usually work in the evening. I Cal said he was a doctor, but he wasn't. Cal She gave me good reasons to leave. She		deny 🗸	accuse	remind	tend	recall	persuade	pretend	regret	admit	refuse	blame
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	I don' He wo Carrie Mario She's: When He sai I usua Cal sa	t rememb ouldn't lea said she said I too sorry she I see Bor d the mis lly work in	per meeting ave. He stole the stole the stole the moved to moved to stake was in the ever stake a doctor,	necklace food. Londo of your my faul hing.	e. Car Mario _ n. She brother. t. He	rie Boris Cal					

Unit 75

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

	I'd like to try and / through this chapter today. get
1	My brother is very like my dad, but I take my mother.
2	If you don't need the money, why don't you give it?
3	I don't get very well with my boss.
4	If you can't answer one of the questions, just it out.
5	He put his coat and ran out of the house.
6	I can't work how to use this camera.
7	Could you the TV on? I'd like to see the news.
8	I've done my essay, but I need to go it again.

Unit 76

1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

	seriously	widely	sharply	totally	roughly	highly 🗸	rather	rarely	strongly
Þ	► He's go	t a PhD fi	rom Harva	rd; he's	highly	intelligen	t – and h	ne's char	ming too.
	Salaries								-
2	2 I feel ve	ery	abc	ut the n	eed to imp	rove public	transpo	rt.	
3	3 The gar	den is		thirty m	etres long.				
4	4 I didn't	enjoy the	e food ver	y much,	and the pl	ace was	.411	expens	ive.
I	5 I'm alw	ays sayin	g I'm goin	g to do i	more exerc	ise, but I		_ go to	the gym.
ŧ	5 This kin	This kind of tool was used by farmers in the nineteenth century.							
-	7 I fell of	f a wall a	nd hurt m	yself, bu	t I wasn't		injured.		
5	R I'm		convinced	that hot	ter commi	unication ca	n chana	n tha w	orld

77 I can recognize informal English

A Formal and informal English

Most words and expressions are **neutral**, and can be used in most situations. Occasionally we use formal language in spoken English, e.g. announcements (*The play will commence in three minutes.*), but more commonly in written English, e.g. business letters or official documents (*Keep your receipt as proof of purchase.*). Informal language is very common in spoken English, especially in conversation. Certain types of language are often informal:

- · many phrasal verbs, e.g. turn sb/sth down
- · uses of get, e.g. Could you get me a pen?
- many idioms, e.g. keep an eye on sth, out of the blue
- many examples of vague language, e.g. thing(s), stuff, sort of.

0	Formal,	informal,	or	neutral?	Write	F,	١,
	or N.						

>	get I	4	commence
1	sort of	5	vague
2	purchase	6	out of the blue

7 neutral

Glossarv

neutral not having any strong qualities (so in this context, neither formal nor informal).

commence FML begin.

purchase FML the act of buying sth. purchase v. turn sb/sth down INF refuse an offer.

get sth INF go to a place and bring sth back. syn fetch sth.

idiom an expression in which the meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words in it. idiomatic ADI.

keep an eye on sth INF look after sth and make sure it is safe.

out of the blue INF suddenly and unexpectedly. vague not clear or definite.

sort of INF not exactly, but partly (e.g. *Are you busy?* Yes, sort of.)

spotlight stuff

Stuff INF is used to refer to something without using its name. We usually use **stuff** to replace uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns. *Do you need much of this stuff*? (e.g. washing powder, soy sauce)

Put that stuff over there. (e.g. books, papers, files)

2	Replace the underlined word with a suitable word or phrase that has the same
	meaning in the context.

▶	I made him a good offer but he <u>refused</u> it. <u>turned it down</u>
1	Do you want me to get your coat for you?
2	[announcement] The film will <u>start</u> in five minutes.
3	Where can I leave my clothes?
4	[business letter] There is a discount if you buy a certain quantity.
5	Then my parents arrived <u>unexpectedly</u> .
6	Could you look after my suitcase for a minute while I get a coffee?

Complete the sentences.

3 stuff

	My brother arrived out of the Oile .
1	Do you understand? ~ Yes, sort
2	I don't know exactly where she lives, but I have a idea.
3	Could you get some of that organic the children like to drink?
4	'Keep an eye on something' is quite a common in English.
5	I offered him a lot of money but he still it down.
6	The walls are of green, but it's not a strong colour; it's quite

B Common exchanges

A Hi. How's it going?

B Not bad. And you?

A Could you give me a hand?

B Yeah sure, no problem.

A What's up with Mark?

B I haven't a clue.

- A Same or different? Write S or D.
 - ► Yeah | Yes S
 - 1 no problem | nothing much ____
 - 2 cheers | goodbye ____
 - 3 recently | lately __
 - 4 late | lately ____
 - 5 I don't know | I haven't a clue ___
 - 6 How's it going? | How are things? _
 - 7 What've you been up to? | What's up?.
- Put these words and expressions in more informal English.
 - ► Hello, Hi
 - 1 Yes.
 - 2 Wait a moment.
 - 3 What's the matter?
 - 4 I don't know.
 - 5 How are you? _____
 - 6 What've you been doing? .
 - 7 Thank you. ____
- 6 Complete the dialogues.
 - ▶ What's <u>up</u> ? ~ Nothing. Why?
 - 1 See you soon. ~ Yeah. Take ___
 - 2 Hi. How's it _____? ~ Fine, thanks. And you?
 - 3 Could you _____ me a hand? ~ Sure. No
 - 4 We have to go. Hurry ______ . ~ OK. Just _____ on a minute.
 - 5 What've you been up _____ ? ~ Nothing much.
 - Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

A What've you been up to lately?

B Nothing much.

A Take care. See you soon.

B Yeah, Cheers.

A Hang on, I'll be with you in a minute.

B OK, but hurry up.

Glossary

INF hello.

How's it going? "INF = How are you? SYN How are

give sb a hand

help sb. syn lend sb a hand.

yeah

" INF ves.

no problem

INF used to say that you are

happy to do sth.

What's up

* INF = What's the matter (with

(with sb)?

sb)? I haven't a clue * INF = I don't know.

What've you

* INF = What've you been doing?

been up to?

lately

· recently.

nothing much in INF nothing of importance.

take care

* INF used when saying goodbye.

hang on

4 INF wait a moment. SYN hold on.

hurry up

" INF move or do sth quickly.

spotlight cheers

We use cheers to express good wishes when we have an alcoholic drink. It is also used in informal situations to mean either 'thank you' or 'goodbye'.

C An everyday conversation

- A Do you fancy a drink?
- B No, I'd better be off in a minute.
- A Really? I thought you had loads of time.
- B No, I've got to get to Mark's to pick up a tent!.

A What for?

- B It's for a mate of mine. He wants to take his kids camping this weekend.
- A At this time of the year? You're joking!
- B I'm not. He **reckons** the weather's going to be fine.
- A That's nonsense. The forecast is awful.
- B Oh well. If it's a disaster, they'll just have to come back home.
- 8 Match 1-6 with a-g.

6 reckon ___

	disaster <u>e</u>	а	child
1	mate	b	want
2	loads	C	a lot
3	rubbish	d	think
4	fancy	е	failure 🗸
5	kid	f	nonsense



Glossary

fancy sth	" INF want sth. syn feel like
	(doing) sth.

I'd better be off * INF I have to leave now.

loads (of sth) * INF a lot of sth. SYN masses

(of sth) INF.

pick sth/sb up • go and collect sth/sb.

What for?

INF Why are you doing sth? or
What do you need sth for?

nonsense • ideas or statements that you think are stupid or not true.

SYN rubbish INF.

disaster INF a complete failure.

spotlight joke

A **joke** is something said or done to make you laugh, especially a funny short story. We use the expression **you're joking** or **you must be joking** to express surprise, when we don't believe what someone is saying.

- Omplete the dialogues with a single word.
 - ▶ Do you <u>fancy</u> going out tonight? ~ Yes. Where shall we go?

friend

- 1 Sam's going to get a snake. ~ What! You must be _____
- 2 What was the party like? ~ Terrible. An absolute
- 3 Are you going camping? ~ Yes, but I've got to buy a new _____
- 4 He said he had _____ of money. ~ Don't believe him. He talks _____
- 5 I'd _____ be off now. ~ Why? What time's your train?
- 6 I'm going to Sweden tomorrow. ~ Really? What _____?
- 7 Where's Leyla? ~ She's _____ up the kids from school.
- 8 Do you feel _____ going out? ~ Yes, good idea.
- Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

78 I can write a formal letter •

Notes	Beginnings	Endings
If you are writing to a stranger or you don't know the person's name, use the phrases on the right.	Dear Sir Dear Madam Dear Sir or Madam	Yours faithfully your name
If you know the person, use <i>Mr, Mrs, Miss,</i> <i>Ms, Dr, e</i> tc. and their surname.	Dear Mr Wu Dear Miss Gilberto	Yours sincerely
If you know them quite well, you can use their first name.	Dear Rosa Dear Conrad	(With) best wishes Kind regards
For an <u>informal</u> letter to a good friend or family member, use the first name. Note: <i>Love (from)</i> is not normally used by a man writing to another man.	Dear Min Ho Hi, Pavel	Love (from) All the best / Take care

45 Muswell Rd London NW4 15 April 2008

Sunshine Holiday Cottages Fore St Truro

Dear Mr Ellison

Further to our telephone conversation of last Friday, I enclose a cheque for £50 as a deposit for the rental of Rainbow Cottage for one week, commencing 21 August. I would be grateful if you could send me further information about the property, in particular, whether there is parking nearby.

We are planning to bring our dog. If this is a problem, please don't hesitate to contact me.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely Louise Robertson

Louise Robertson

Glossary

stranger enclose sth a person that you do not know.

put sth in an envelope or packet

with sth else.

deposit

a sum of money which is your first payment for sth (you will pay the rest later). (You pay a

deposit on or for sth.)

commence

• FML begin.

I would be grateful if you

• used when you request sth. SYN I would appreciate it

if you could ...

could ... in particular

* SYNS especially, particularly.

whether

nearby

not far away, syn close by.

don't hesitate

· don't feel worried about doing sth.

to do sth

look forward to . think with pleasure about sth that is going to happen.

hearing from

* receiving your letter.

vou

spotlight further, further to

Further ADJ has several meanings:

1) comparative of far: The station is further than the bank.

2) (only before a noun) more: Have you any further questions?

Further to ... FML is used in letters to mention a previous letter or conversation about the same subject:

Further to my letter of 5 July, I am happy to . . .

Cover the letter and answer these que	stions.				
▶ Is Louise Robertson going to rent a cottage?					
1 Is this the first time she has contacted Mr Ellison?					
	Why is she sending him £50?Will she be leaving or arriving on 21 August?				
4 Are there any other things she needs to know? If so, what?					
5 Whose address did she write on the right-hand					
	side?				
7 Did she write the date? If so, where? 8 Which beginning did she use?					
9 Which ending did she use?					
10 Could she end it 'Take care, Louise'? Why/Why					
Tick (✓) the sentences that are correct and ac	dd a cross (X) to the sentences that are wrong.				
▶ If you're writing to a family member, you can e					
1 If you begin 'Dear Maria', you can end it with '	_				
2 If you begin your letter 'Dear Sir', you can end3 If you don't know the name of the person you	are writing to, you begin 'Dear Sir or Madam'.				
4 If you write 'All the best' at the end, you could	3 . 3				
5 If you begin 'Dear Miss Periskic', you should en	d 'Yours faithfully'.				
6 'Yours faithfully' is a common ending when yo	u are writing to a stranger				
2 If there's a problem, please / hesitate / ring me3 I / a photocopy / my identity card with the app	ation? further				
 4 I would be / if you / phone me about the meet 5 Further / your letter / 7 April, I wish to confirm 6 I would / it if / could help me. 7 Please let me know / particular / there is a bead 8 I enclose a cheque for €30 as a / for the rental 	my booking				
Oomplete the letter.					
40 Lincoln Rise, Churchfield, Yorkshire 14 January 2008 Hot Property Rentals Barton St Weatherfield	send me a receipt for the amount enclosed. I would also (6) it if you could let me know (7) I will be able to park in the basement of the building. If not, will I be				
► Dear Mrs Stephens	able to find parking (8)?				
(1) to your letter of 12 January, I (2) a cheque for £500 as a (3)	If you need any (9) information from me, please don't (10) to call				
on Flat 7, Walsingham Buildings.	me.				
As we agreed, my rental contract will (4)	Yours (11),				
on 1 February and run for one year. I would be (5) if you could	Jurek Gorzy				

5 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

79 I can understand abbreviations and short forms

A Numbers and measurements

1 cm (centimetre) = 10 mm (millimetres) 100 cm = 1 m (metre) 1000 m = 1 km (kilometre)
Money UK £1 (pound) = 100 p (pence) (a sum of money); penny PL pennies (coins) USA \$1 (dollar) = 100 c/ct (cents)

1	Write the correct	abbreviation o	r symbol f	or each word.
---	-------------------	----------------	------------	---------------

•	litrel						
1	metre	5	tonne	9	centimetre	13	gram
2	pence	6	miles per hour	10	milligram	14	millimetre
3	kilometre	7	centilitre	11	cents	15	pound
4	millilitre	8	kilogram	12	kilometres per hour	16	dollar

2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate measurement or amount of money.

>	For sale: 20 petrol cans at reduced prices.
1	In Italy you can do a maximum speed of 130 on the motorway, or 81
2	You need a piece of card 20 thick.
3	To make pasta for one, cook about 70–80 of spaghetti.
4	The cheapest thing you can buy in the café is a coffee for 85

B Shortened forms

The shortened forms in the table are used commonly in spoken English.

Short form	Full form / Meaning	Short form	Full form / Meaning
ad, advert	advertisement	paper	newspaper
pub	public house FMI. a place where you can buy and drink alcohol and meet friends.	deli	delicatessen a shop or part of a supermarket that sells special or unusual foreign food.
flu	influenza FML	TV, telly INF	television
gym	gymnasium	board	blackboard; notice board.
lab inf	laboratory a place used for scientific research, testing, etc.	vet	veterinary surgeon, a doctor for animals.
pop (music)	popular music	bike motorbike	bicycle or motorbicycle motorbicycle
fridge	refrigerator	plane	aeroplane

6	Write the	short for	m of these	words
654	AALITE THE	31101 € 101	iii Oi tilese	VVOIGS

	television TV, telly	4	bicycle	8	newspaper
1	veterinary surgeon	5	gymnasium	9	public house
2	popular music	6	aeroplane	10	delicatessen
3	refrigerator	7	blackboard	11	laboratory

Complete the dialogues with shortened words from the table.

	Have you taken the cat to the vet yet? ~ Yes, I'm waiting for test results from the
1	Could you buy some cheese from the? ~ I got some earlier – it's in the
2	Are you still looking for a job? ~ Yes, I'm just looking at some in the
3	Do you fancy a drink at the tonight? ~ Well, I was planning to watch the
4	How are you? ~ I feel awful: I think I've got

C Abbreviations



The abbreviations marked * are pronounced like words, e.g. AIDS is pronounced 'aids'. Other abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters, e.g. BBC is pronounced 'b-b-c'. It stands for British Broadcasting Corporation.





NATO*	North Atlantic Treaty Organization	UFO1	unidentified flying object
AIDS*	acquired immune deficiency syndrome (often called 'SIDA' in other languages)	PIN*	personal identification number (you use this with a credit card, for instance)
UEFA*	Union of European Football Association	VAT	value added tax (a tax added to goods and services)
ATM	automatic teller machine (a cash machine)	ISP	internet service provider, e.g. AOL
EU	the European Union	DVD ²	digital versatile disc
UN	the United Nations	IT	information technology
CV	curriculum vitae (a formal list of your education or work experience that you need when you apply for a job)	ID card	identity card (a card with your name and photo which is proof of who you are)

Complete the abbreviations.

- ▶ NATO is a European and North American organization.
- 2 If you apply for a job, send in a C____.
- 3 I showed my Land to the police.
- 4 You have to pay VA.... on those goods.
- 5 Who won the U ____ A Cup last year?
- 6 He's good with computers: he's in I ____.
- 1 If you use an AT___, you'll need your __IN. 7 Millions are suffering from __IDS in Africa.
 - 8 We watched a DV_ about UF_s last night.
 - 9 There are over 25 countries in the ___U.
 - 10 The N is an international organization.
 - 11 An ___ SP provides access to the internet and email.



Test yourself. Cover the full forms and meanings in the tables in sections B and C, and look at the short forms and abbreviations. What are the full forms?

80 I can understand American English 🕟

US English

elevator

British English

Their of

lift

J		Sierand Ant
cellphone	mobile (phone)	faucet tap
closet	cupboard	French fries chips
cookies	biscuits	truck lorry
		billfold wallet
US English	British English	Meaning
apartment	Паt	a set of rooms that is used as a home (apartment is sometimes used in British English for a smart holiday flat).
attorney	lawyer or barrister	a lawyer, especially one who represents people in court (barrister in British English).
datebook	diary	a book in which you write what you have to do in the future.
drugstore	chemist	a shop that sells medicines and other goods.
garbage/trash garbage/trash		waste food, paper, etc. that you throw away. a container outside your home, in which you put the waste.
gasoline/gas	petrol	fuel used in a car (e.g. We stopped for more gas on the way.).
high school	secondary school	a school for children aged 14 to 18 (a British secondary school is for children aged 11 to 16 or 18).
mall	shopping mall / shopping centre	shops, cinemas, etc. in a large covered area.
movie theater	cinema	a place where you see a movie (film in British English).
purse	handbag	a bag for money, keys, etc., used especially by women (in British English, a purse is mainly used for carrying coins).
railroad	railway	a system of trains and the tracks on which they run.
round trip	return (ticket)	a journey to a place and back.
sidewalk	pavement	the part of the road where people walk.
store	shop	a shop (large or small).
subway	underground	an underground railway system.
vacation	holiday	a period of time away from work or school, often spent travelling for pleasure.

US English

candy

British English

sweets

0	Combine words from the box to form five
	more American English words.

		side co way ✓		book
1	free	way	3	
	1		4	
	2		5	

spotlight highway, freeway, expressway

The American English words **highway**. **freeway**. and **expressway** all refer to **main roads** (British English) used for travelling long distances. A **motorway** (British English) is sometimes called an **interstate** (**highway**) in American English.

.... n

2 Complete the missing letters.

>	m o v i e	3	c s t	6	g s l e
1	g b g	4	c d y	7	tr p t t t
2	s b y	5	a t y	8	p d

3 Complete the American English words.

▶	What age do you start high School in America?
1	Put that stuff in the trash
2	We went to the movie last night.
3	You can buy these things at the drug
4	Do you want French with your steak?
5	I go on Tuesday and come back on Thursday, so I'll need a round
6	We drove over 200 miles on the interstate

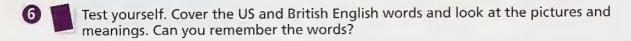
4 Replace the British English words with American English words.

	When does the shop open? store
1	Where are you going for your holiday?
2	It's upstairs, so we'll need to take the lift.
3	Where shall I put this rubbish?
4	She keeps the note in her handbag.
5	I put the appointment in my diary.
6	Do we have any more sweets?
7	He drives a big lorry.
8	Would you like another biscuit?
9	Could you turn on the tap?
10	We can't use the pavement here.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 How often do you use the subway?

	2	How often do you use the failroad?
	3	How often do you go to a movie theater?
4	4	What was the last movie you saw?
	5	How often do you eat French fries?
(6	Where did you go for your last vacation?
	7	When was the last time you went to a mall?
1	2	When did you leave high school?



Review: Styles of English

Unit 77

1	Change the	underlined	words to	make th	em informal
---	------------	------------	----------	---------	-------------

Т	Hello, Suki. Hi
S	Hey, Tomas! How (1) are you?
T	Oh, not bad. What've you been (2) <u>doing</u> lately?
S	Oh, nothing (3) important.
Ţ	Listen, Suki, what's (4) the matter with Jodie?
S	Well, she went for that job at NDC, but they (5) rejected her.
Τ	(6) I don't believe you!
S	No, it's true. She (7) thinks someone doesn't like her there.
Ţ	That's (8) <u>nonsense</u> . Everyone likes Jodie.
S	I know. Anyway, there are (9) lots of other jobs around.
Т	(10) Yes, you're right.
S	Sorry, Tomas, (11) I have to leave now.
Τ	OK, see you later. (12) Bye!

2 Cross out the answer which is not correct.

•	These are idiomatic:	a) out of the blue	b) I haven't a clue	c) neutral
1	These verbs are formal:	a) commence	b) fancy	c) purchase
2	These mean 'go and bring something back':	a) get	b) fetch	c) reckon
3	These can mean 'goodbye':	a) hang on	b) cheers	c) take care
4	These mean 'wait':	a) hang on	b) hold on	c) hurry up
5	These are used to express surprise:	a) Tell me a joke	b) You're joking	c) You must
				be joking
6	These are examples of vague language:	a) stuff	b) keep an eye	c) sort of
			on someone	

Unit 78

1 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ (Dear)Hi Mr Bruzzone
- 1 Dear Mr/Sir or Mrs/Madam
- 2 Kind regard/regards
- 3 Your/Yours faithfully
- 4 I'd like further/further to details.
- 5 I close/enclose a self-addressed envelope.
- 6 I'm not sure whether/weather it will be sunny.
- 7 I need some information, particular/in particular the size of the garage.
- 8 I look forward to hear/hearing from you.
- 9 Please hesitate/don't hesitate to contact me.
- 10 All the best/All best, Jamila



1 Complete the letter.

(1) (2) You roon I wo all fo of £	on asked for (4) on, and a small grad be (6) our bedrooms so 345 at least four use don't (9)	r Buerk your letter of 23 M Sunnybank Villa, detail arden. You have p if you cou	Southstoke, for two weeks (3) — s about the cottage; it has four be parking (5) ————, about 3 uld let me know a few days before	25 March 2008 t I have received your cheque for £90 as a1 July. edrooms, two bathrooms, a kitchen, a sitting 30 m from the front door.
(1) (2) You roon I wo all fo of £	asked for (4) asked for (4) n, and a small grad be (6) bur bedrooms so 345 at least four	your letter of 23 N Sunnybank Villa, detail: arden. You have p if you cou that I can let the	Southstoke, for two weeks (3) — s about the cottage; it has four be parking (5) ————, about 3 uld let me know a few days before	t I have received your cheque for £90 as a1 July. edrooms, two bathrooms, a kitchen, a sitting 30 m from the front door.
(1) (2) You roon I wo all fo of £	asked for (4) asked for (4) n, and a small grad be (6) bur bedrooms so 345 at least four	your letter of 23 N Sunnybank Villa, detail: arden. You have p if you cou that I can let the	Southstoke, for two weeks (3) — s about the cottage; it has four be parking (5) ————, about 3 uld let me know a few days before	edrooms, two bathrooms, a kitchen, a sitting 30 m from the front door.
to s You Jud Jud	rs (12) fy Kelveton y Kelveton 79	to cont nnybank Villa in Ju	ur arrival. act me if you have any (10) 	e your visit (7) you will be using it if you could send me the balance questions. I look (11)
1 2 3	ID = United		5 CV = c 6 ISP = ir	value curriculum nternet
Ca ▶ 1 2	delicatessen supermarket	Yes (deli) No	4 washing machine	7 laboratory 8 receptionist 9 gymnasium
iit	80			
	mplete the te	table with ni	ne more pairs of British a	nd American English words from
-	sweets 🗸	sidewalk	British English	American English
	garbage biscuit lift truck pavement chemist elevator	drugstore candy diary rubbish cookie gasoline datebook	sweets	candy
	lorry petrol	closet faucet		

wardrobe

tap

Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun
avoid	avoidance
approve	approval
breathe	breathing
celebrate	celebration
communicate	communication
consider	consideration
contain	container
criticize	criticism
decorate	decoration
disapprove	disapproval
divide	division
evaluate	evaluation
exhibit	exhibition
govern	government/governor
interrupt	interruption
investigate	investigation
involve	involvement
kill	killing
propose	proposal
recognize	recognition
refer	reference
remove	removal
require	requirement
shoot	shot
trade	trade, trading



Test yourself

2 Adjectives and verbs

Adjective	Verb
amusing/amused	amuse
amazing/amazed	amaze
complicated	complicate
concerned	concern
cracked	crack
delighted	delight
depressed/depressing	depress
devoted	devote
frightening/frightened	frighten
irritating/irritated	irritate
repeated	repeat

3 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun
accidental	accident
allied	ally
anxious	anxiety
artistic	artist
basic	basis
determined	determination
disgusting	disgust
electrical	electrician/electricity
mysterious	mystery
national	nation
proud	pride
regional	region
sexual	sex
suspicious	suspicion
sympathetic	sympathy
thick	thickness
traditional	tradition
valuable	value
wealthy	wealth
willing	willingness

4 Nouns, verbs, and adjectives

Verb	Adjective
contrast	contrasting
embarrass	embarrassing
entertain	entertaining
disappoint	disappointed
imagine	imaginary
infect	infectious/infected
impress	impressive
prepare	prepared
relate	related
sail	sailing
separate	separate
swell	swollen
vary	varied
	contrast embarrass entertain disappoint imagine infect impress prepare relate sail separate swell

Answer key

Unit 1

- 1 1 gist 4 foreign 2 identify 5 context 3 construct 6 translate
- 2 1 guess 4 foreigners
 - 2 gist 5 go
 - 3 recognize/know 6 note, record
- 3 1 repetition 4 revision 2 pronunciation 5 chat
 - 3 explanation
- 4 1 study it again
 - 2 successful
 - 3 try something
 - 4 make
 - 5 a way of doing something
 - 6 an informal
- 5 1 discussion 4 works 2 opportunity 5 chance
 - 3 chat

Unit 2

- 1 1 encouragement 4 frustrating 2 improving 5 motivation 3 accurately 6 enthusiastic
- 2 1 getting better 5 accurately 2 while 6 is aware of 3 progress 7 express 4 obvious 8 frustrating
- 4 1 fluently 4 expanded
 - 2 everyday 5 appropriate/right
 - 3 relevant 6 aim
- 5 1 detail 5 expanding 2 inappropriate 6 specialized 3 complicated/complex 7 includes 4 contain 8 range
- 6 Answers from a Polish person
 I'm learning English at the moment. My
 goal is to speak it fluently. I want to expand
 my vocabulary and be able to speak on
 a wide range of topics. I would like to
 learn complex structures and specialized
 vocabulary relevant to my job.

Unit 3

1 15 2D 3S 4D 5D 6S 7S 8S

2 1 instance 5 symbols, syllable 2 selection 6 idiom, entry 3 build, provide, related 7 collocation 4 offending 8 stress

- 3 1 error, do sth wrong, fault
 - 2 two
 - 3 informal
 - 4 no, it's informal
 - 5 / gar /
 - 6 a) correct
 - b) not correct (it should be 'My dad earns a lot of money in his job.')

Unit 4

- 1 1 full stop 5 question mark 2 colon 6 exclamation mark 3 hyphen 7 semicolon
 - 3 hyphen 7 semicolon 4 brackets 8 apostrophe
- 2 1 comma
 - 2 guestion mark
 - 3 exclamation mark
 - 4 apostrophe
 - 5 semicolon
 - 6 brackets
 - 7 hyphen, dash
 - 8 quotation marks, apostrophe, comma
- 4 1 list 7 such 2 instead 8 leave
 - 3 connect/join 9 separate/divide
 4 details 10 interrupt
 5 pause 11 connect/join
 6 abbreviation 12 alternative
- 5 'Comma' and 'full stop' are both punctuation marks.

'p.m.' is an abbreviation.

'Omit' and 'leave out' mean the same thing. 'Join' and 'connect' mean the same thing. 'Information' and 'details' mean the same thing.

'Separate' and 'divide' mean the same thing.

- 6 1 'She' needs a capital letter (not a small letter).
 - 2 A comma is missing after 'tall'.
 - 3 A slash is missing between 'in' and 'on'.
 - 4 A colon is missing after 'choices'.
 - 5 A comma is missing after 'arrived'.
 - 6 An apostrophe is missing after 'boyfriend' and before 's'.
 - 7 Commas are missing before and after 'fortunately'.

- 1 1 eyebrows 5 stubble 2 fattish 6 clean-shaven 3 scar 7 in good shape
 - 4 broad shoulders

2 1D 2S 3D 4S 5D 6D 7S 8S 9D

- 3 1 shape 5 built 2 bald 6 skinny 3 clean 7 skinned 4 shoulders 8 scar
- 4 Answers from an Italian person
 - 1 My mother.
 - 2 My father.
 - 3 My cousin.
 - 4 My brother.
 - 5 My sister.
 - 6 My aunt.
 - 7 My whole family is dark-skinned.
 - 8 My boyfriend has a scar on his neck.

6 1F 2T 3F 4F 5T 6F 7F 8T

- 7 1 hair, appearance 4 smooth, rough 2 tell, expecting 5 slim/slender
 - 3 wrinkles 6 tell, tan

Unit 6

1 1N 2N 3P 4P 5P 6B 7N 8B

- 2 1 energy 5 energetic 2 responsible 6 aggressive 3 generous 7 patient 4 cheerful 8 tolerant
- 3 1f 2a 3q 4h 5e 6b 7i 8d
- 4 honest dishonest responsible irresponsible irresponsible lazy hard-working generous mean ambitious unambitious self-confident insecure honest honesty tolerant tolerance aggressive aggression arrogant arrogance generous generosity patient patience
- 5 1 crazy
 2 easy-going
 3 sense of humour
 4 modest
 5 self-confident
 hard-working
 7 responsible
 8 energy
- 6 Answers from a German person
 - 1 Yes, I am a very ambitious person. I like to do well in most things that I try.
 - 2 I am a hard-working person but I also enjoy letting my hair down.
 - 3 I'm not an intolerant person but I don't like people imposing things on me.

- 4 I get impatient when passport control only has one lane open at the airport.
- 5 I'm a self-confident, easy-going person with a good sense of humour.
- 6 I think honesty and tolerance are the most important qualities.

Unit 7

- 1 1 anxious 5 heartbroken 2 furious 6 fed up 3 astonished 7 scared stiff 4 thrilled 8 kiss/kissed
- 2 1 delighted 4 amazed 2 miserable 5 jealous
 - 3 terrified
- 3 Answers from a Colombian person
 - 1 I'd be amazed as I don't usually study for exams!
 - 2 I'd be delighted for him; after all, he is my best friend.
 - 3 I'd be miserable, but everything has to end some time, so I would be fine after a while.
 - 4 I'd be furious and would probably react violently.
 - 5 I'd be envious of my friends who could go out.
 - 6 I'd be heartbroken and would get another girlfriend.
 - 7 I'd be anxious as it is always hard to speak in front of people.
 - 8 I'd be proud that I actually got into the plane in the first place.
- 5 1 hide 4 moody
 2 sympathetic 5 insensitive
 3 sensitive 6 emotions
 6 1 mood 4 sympathetic
 - 2 upset 5 in 3 supportive 6 hurt

- 1 a close friend, get on well with someone, make friends, keep in touch, depend on someone
- 2 1 reliable 4 disloyal 2 depend on 5 friendship 3 antisocial 6 close
- 3 1 He's friendly with Ruben.
 - 2 She never keeps in touch. / She doesn't keep in touch.
 - 3 I don't get on with my father.
 - 4 I made friends with her at university. / We made friends at university.
 - 5 I can rely on my boss.
 - 6 Donna's an old friend.

5 1 in 4 in 2 out 5 went 3 get 6 get

6 1 argue, row 3 split, regrets 2 know, common 4 realize, go out

7 1 another 6 split
2 common 7 go
3 relationship 8 regretted

4 wrong 9 realized

5 argument/row

Unit 9

1 1 an only child 5 get divorced
2 half-sister 6 adopt a child
3 foster parents 7 single parent
4 stepfather 8 bring somebody

4 stepfather 8 bring somebody up

2 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D 3 1 brought 4 single

2 only 5 divorced

3 half

4 Answers from a Spanish person

1 I was brought up in Salamanca, in Spain.

2 I've got a younger sister.

3 No, I don't have any half-brothers or - sisters.

4 One of my friends is a single parent.

5 One of my colleagues has recently got divorced.

5 1 ancestors 4 relations 2 looks like 5 originally 3 emigrated 6 member

6 1 related 4 member, like

2 royal, queen 5 after

3 previous

7 Answers from a Japanese person

1 No, I'm not related to anyone famous.

2 Yes, we have a royal family. The current monarch is Emperor Akihito.

3 Previous generations of my family have lived in Kyoto and Osaka in Japan.

4 I'm often told that I look like my grandmother.

5 I take after my dad. We're both good with our hands.

Unit 10

1 1 anniversary 8 honeymoon correct

2 I've chosen it 9 speech
3 traditional 10 guest
4 civil 11 ceremony
5 bridesmaid 12 reception
6 celebrate correct 13 religion

7 wedding

2 1 groom 5 after 2 bridesmaid 6 best man 3 chosen 7 reception

4 guests 8 husband and wife

3 1 go on your honeymoon

2 drink a toast

3 wish someone a happy marriage

4 make a speech 5 bride and groom

6 celebrate your anniversary

7 a religious ceremony

8 the best man

9 a wedding reception

4 1 choose, civil 6 guests

2 best 7 traditional, make

3 bridesmaids 8 toast

4 rings 9 couple, honeymoon

5 reception 10 celebrate

5 Answers from a Norwegian person

1 Yes, you can choose either.

2 Yes, he does, and the bride has a best woman.

3 Sometimes younger family members act as bridesmaids.

4 Yes, they do.

5 Yes. The wedding traditionally takes place in the late afternoon, and there's often a sit-down meal after that.

6 It could be any number.

7 Yes, very much so. The best man, best woman, bridegroom, bride's father, and sometimes the bride all make speeches. After that, anyone else who wants to speak can do so, and some guests write a song which is performed by all the guests for the couple.

8 Yes, they do.

9 Yes, normally the day after.

10 Yes, they do.

7 1 widower 5 inherit
2 gravestone 6 death
3 funeral 7 cemetery
4 bury 8 coffin

8 1 died 4 buried, cremated 2 will, gravestone 5 widow, mourner

3 funeral, burial 6 grave, coffin

9 1 of 5 funeral 2 in 6 buried 3 widow 7 will 4 death 8 inherited

1	1	space system	5	star planet
	2	moon sun	6	planes rockets

7 earth universe / solar 3 planet star

4 sun moon system

2 1 space

2 words

3 roughly/approximately, reach

4 fetched

5 gained

6 revolves/circles

7 knowledge

8 satellite

4 1 exist 4 carried out 2 explore 5 discovered 3 invention 6 analyse

5 1 scientists

4 analysis 2 discovery 5 exploration 6 existence 3 confirmation

6 1 exists 2 explore

4 carry 5 invented

3 satellites

6 confirmed

Unit 12

1	1	flood	6	narrow
	2	high tide	7	puddle
	3	shallow	8	drown
	4	float	9	waterfall
	5	surface	10	ocean

21c 2d 3h 4g 5b 6e 7f 8a

3 1N 2Y 3Y 4Y 5N 6Y 7N 8Y 9 N 10 N

4 1 on the surface 5 stream 2 lake 6 drowned 3 capsized 7 shallow 4 width 8 floods

5 1 burst 5 lake 2 caused 6 capsized 7 sink 3 deep

4 floating 8 drowned 6 1 horizon 6 shore

7 harbour 2 rock 3 beach 8 cave 4 cliff 9 coast

5 ship 10 bay 7 1 rough 4 sandy 2 wave 5 steep

3 protects 6 on

Unit 13

1 1 a gale 4 It poured for an hour

2 a frosty morning 5 fog

3 a muggy evening 6 I got soaked

2 1 soaking 6 drops 2 rainbow 7 drizzled 8 heatwave 3 mild

4 bitterly 5 frost

4 1 predictable 6 environment 7 pollution 8 liquid 2 disappear 3 famine 4 harmful 9 disease 5 atmosphere 10 climate

5 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B 8 B

9 muggy

6 1 affect 5 meltina 2 unpredictable 6 liquid

3 the environment 7 disappearing 4 human 8 atmosphere

7 1 extreme, climate

2 liquid, solid

3 polluted, affects/affected

4 predict, rise

5 global, disappearing

6 spread

7 Pollution, harmful

8 famine

8 Answers from a Polish person

1 I'm quite worried about global warming, but what worries me most is the fact that scientists and politicians talk about this problem a lot, but nothing is being done about it.

2 We don't have rainforests in Poland.

3 Summers have become warmer and winters are milder now. Also, summer starts earlier, almost right after winter, so sometimes it seems as if we haven't had spring.

4 The changing of natural habitats, the construction of roads and buildings, and the growth of industry are all harming

the environment.

5 I think industrial pollution is probably most common in Poland.

Unit 14

1 volcanic eruption tidal wave surrounding land starve to death violent storm

2 1 destruction 4 surroundings 2 violence 5 damage

3 eruption

3 1 hurricane, destroyed, damaged, disaster

2 drought, crops, starve 3 erupted, ground, lava

4 sudden, violent, typhoon

5 1 strikes/hits 5 rescue 2 collapse 6 supplies 7 maintain 3 trapped 4 evacuate 8 fear 6 1 collapsed 5 hit/strike 6 death toll 2 crucial 7 considerable 3 evacuated 8 rescue/save 4 trapped

Unit 15

1 1 leopard 4 gorilla 7 snake 2 elephant 5 whale 8 shark 3 eagle 6 spider 9 monkey

2 ▶ eagle, bee, mosquito

1 leopard, elephant, lion, tiger, camel, monkey

2 fly, bee, mosquito 5 tiger 6 leopard 3 gorilla, bear 7 eagle 4 elephant

4 1F 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F

5 1 survival 4 poisonous 5 harmful, harmless 2 expectancy 3 weight

5 up 6 1 survive 3 hunt 2 average 4 sting 6 vary 7 1 calf 5 rat 8 herd 9 turkey 6 frog 2 mice 7 male 10 cattle

3 goats 4 donkey

4 calf 7 donkey 8 1 horse 5 froa 8 turkey 2 goat 3 bull 6 mouse

9 Answers from an Italian person

1 In Italy, people eat horse, calf, turkey, donkey, cow, and frog.

2 People keep horses for sport and hobbies. People keep goats for their milk. Not many people keep bulls. Donkeys are often kept in zoos. People use mice for animal testing.

Unit 16

1 1 papaya 3 thyme 5 stone 2 spinach 4 sweetcorn

2 In Britain artichoke C, beetroot C, fennel R, chickpeas C, celery R, broccoli C

3 apricot 3 1 plum 5 avocado 2 coconut 4 grapefruit

4 Answers from a British person papaya Yes, but not much coconut Yes, but not much raspberries Yes passion fruit Yes, but not much plums Yes basil Yes parsley Yes chick peas Yes, but not much asparagus Yes artichoke Yes, but not much sweetcorn Yes fennel Yes, but not much

7 oyster 6 1 calf 2 lobster 8 liver 3 rabbit 9 veal 10 sea bass 4 squid 5 kidney 11 mussels 6 trout 12 salmon

7 Answers from a German person

1 I think most Germans would like to eat a nice piece of yeal.

2 I think salmon is the most popular fish in Germany.

3 I don't eat seafood, but I think it would be crab.

4 I don't eat any seafood because I don't like the taste of it very much.

5 I would never eat liver or kidney because I don't like to eat the insides of animals.

6 Out of the five fish, the one I'm least likely to eat is carp.

Unit 17

4 mash

1 1 B 2 B 3 G 4 B 5 B 6 G 7 G

2 1 on 4 of 5 on 2 on 3 up 6 of 4 diet 3 1 plenty 5 waste 2 exercise 3 cut 6 keep 5 1 peel 5 boil 2 chop 6 fry 3 add 7 bake

6 1 recipe, ingredients 4 bake, oven 2 add 5 flour 6 stock, stir 3 pan, dish

8 roast



- 1 1 afford 5 bargain 2 discount/reduction 6 change 3 reduced 7 receipt 4 sales 8 refund
- 2 1 bargain 3 change 5 refund 2 scratch, off 4 sales
- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 I don't always look for a bargain but I'm very happy when I find one.
 - 2 I would ask the shop assistant whether they have another one in stock.
 - 3 I check the number of notes, but I don't check the number of coins.
 - 4 I often wait for the sales. I usually buy my clothes then.
 - 5 I don't usually take things back or ask for a refund, but once the heel came off a pair of boots a few weeks after I had bought them, so I did take those back.
- 4 1 €1,000,000.
 - 2 €250,000.
 - 3 Six months.
 - 4 She didn't live there, and she sold it for less money.
 - 5 Over €5,000.
 - 6 Yes (to the credit card company).
- 5 1 It's a huge house.
 - 2 The house is valued at £2,000,000. / The value of the house is £2,000,000.
 - 3 Rani is broke.
 - 4 I don't own the flat.
 - 5 Her shoes cost a fortune.
 - 6 Gisela owes €5,000.
- 6 1 amount, well 3 worth 5 income
 - 2 broke 4 huge/massive

Unit 19

- 1 1 fell asleep 4 go / get to sleep 2 fast asleep 5 went off
- 3 nightmare 6 overslept
 2 1 wake 5 awake
 2 sleepy/tired 6 yawning
 - 3 set, overslept 7 pyjamas, snores
 - 4 lie-in
- 4 have a nap, sleep like a log, suffer from insomnia, have a restless night, a heavy sleeper, on my mind
- 5 1 nap, habit 5 mind
 - 2 like a log 6 disturbs, heavy 3 suffer from 7 exhausted
 - 4 restless 8 lack

Unit 20

- 5 blood 1 1 infection 2 bandage 6 symptom 3 thoroughly 7 temporarily 4 wound 8 develop 2 1 burn 7 temporarily 8 dressing 2 running 3 covered 9 bandage 4 prevent 10 thoroughly 5 symptoms 11 healed 6 wound 12 infection
- 4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T 9 F 10 T
- 5 1 I slipped on the ice and fell over.
 - 2 I know he slipped, but did he fall backwards or forwards?
 - 3 He passed out, and when he came **round** he didn't know where he was.
 - 4 Nobody was killed, but three people were injured in the accident.
 - 5 She banged her head on the door and fell to the floor.
 - 6 My finger was bleeding so I put a dressing on it.

- 1 steering wheel door handle windscreen wiper gear lever number plate wing mirror
- 2 10 21 31 40 51 61 70 81 90
- 3 1 brake 6 headlights 2 clutch 7 mirror
 - 3 accelerator 8 windscreen wipers
 - 4 boot 9 horn
 - 5 bonnet
- 5 1 past 4 advice 2 faster 5 direction 3 backwards 6 instead
- 6 1 prepared 4 watch 2 limit, close 5 keep 3 skidded 6 rather
- 7 Answers from a British person
 - 1 I know these things, but it's useful to be reminded of them.
 - 2 Usually I do, but I accelerate quickly to overtake.
 - 3 No, not always. In supermarket car parks I go in forwards, then it's easier to put things in the boot.
 - 4 Yes. I'm afraid so usually on motorways.
 - 5 I know what I'm supposed to do, but in an emergency I might panic and forget.

6 We don't have much snow or ice in the south of England, so I don't make preparations for bad weather.

Unit 22

1 1B 2G 3B 4G 5B 6G 7B

- 2 1 due 5 meant, held
 - 2 connecting 6 get 3 trouble, delayed 7 pick
 - 4 cancelled 8 warning

3 Answers from a British person

- 1 Trains are often delayed, because of work to repair the track.
- 2 I have never missed a train or a plane (but I've often missed the ferry to France).
- 4 get stuck, end up, rush hour, traffic jam, stop off, on the way, the wrong way, hire a car
- 5 1 trip 4 rent/hire 2 traffic jam 5 nightmare
 - 3 overnight 6 via
- 6 1 hired/rented 3 stuck, heavy
 - 2 stop, way 4 trips

7 Answers from a British person

- 1 I hired a car in Germany when my boyfriend came to visit me so we could go to the coast.
- 2 On really long journeys, I like to stop off somewhere to have a break, but mostly I prefer to get from A to B as quickly as possible, so long as it's not dangerous.
- 3 I get stuck in traffic in Headington, on the outskirts of Oxford, every evening on my way home.
- 4 I sometimes go on day trips to London or Bath.
- 8 1 ambulance 5 occur 2 vehicle 6 block
 - 3 serious 7 avoid
 - 4 emergency 8 collide
- 9 1 injured 4 skidded 2 vehicles 5 emergency services
 - 3 collided with 6 occurred
- 10 1 blocking 3 serious 5 broke down 2 skidded 4 lane 6 injured

Unit 23

1	1	underwear	6	necklace
	2	material	7	blouse
	3	sleeve	8	earrings
	4	tights	9	vest
	5	suede	10	button

- 2 1T 2T 3T 4F 5T 6F 7F 8F 9T 10T
- 3 Underwear: vest, slip, bra Jewellery: bracelet, ring, necklace, earrings Material(s): cotton, leather, suede, silk Clothes: skirt, waistcoat, cap, blouse
- 4 1 ring 5 leather, silk
 2 bracelet 6 neck
 3 belts 7 sleeves
 4 denim 8 material

5 Answers from a Polish person

- ▶ No, I don't think I've ever worn a cap.
- 1 Yes, I wear a ring on my middle finger.
- 2 I wear a bracelet on my right wrist.
- 3 I've got four leather belts.
- 4 I've got seven pairs of jeans but I rarely wear them.
- 5 All of my shoes, boots, handbags, and belts are made of leather. I've got a few silk scarves, pyjamas, and pillowcases.
- 6 Yes, I've got lots of V-neck sweaters, in various colours.
- 7 Yes, I often wear short sleeves.
- 8 My favourite material is linen.
- 7 1 matches 5 suits
 - 2 unfashionable 6 very good
 - 3 outfit 7 accessories
 - 4 latest, style 8 neutral

8 1 matching

- 2 elegant/stylish/fashionable
- 3 latest
- 4 suit
- 5 versatile
- 6 transforms
- 7 accessories
- 8 outfit

Unit 24

1	1	The dentist	6	The dentist
	2	The tooth	7	1
	3	1	8	1
	4	The dentist	9	The tooth
	5	1	10	1

2 1 look 4 filling/check-up 2 surgery 5 painful, chew 3 have 6 take

3 Answers from an Italian person

- ► I don't have a check-up very often about once a year.
- 1 I don't look forward to going to the dentist because I find it very scary.
- 2 My dental surgery is in a very nice, modern building with lots of rooms.
- 3 I had toothache last month.
- 4 About two years ago.

- 5 It's not normally painful when I bite or chew my food.
- 6 I can't remember the last time a dentist took one of my teeth out.

1	1	consultant	6	urgent
	2	immediately	7	well enough
	3	recover	8	successful
		patient	9	benefit
	5	straightaway	10	surgeon
2	1	patient	5	surgeon
	2	specialist	6	nurse

3 patient 7 patient
4 patient 8 nurse
3 1 consultant 7 risks
2 tests 8 successful
3 operation 9 enough
4 urgent 10 get over

5 straightaway 11 take care 6 into

4 Answers from a German person

1 Yes, I had my tonsils removed in 1997.

Yes, I visited my mum in hospital when she had an operation on her ankle a few years ago.

3 Nurses are there to take care of you and families are there to support you.

4 Yes, you can see a specialist straightaway in Germany if you want to. Waiting times are minimal.

5 No, you can go directly to a specialist.

6 It depends on the operation. If it's a minor operation, people go home.

Unit 26

1	1	needle	5	a hammer
	2	scissors	6	a drill
	3	screwdriver	7	Sellotape
	4	rope	8	screw

2 1 tools

2 scissors, sew, cotton/thread

3 stick, glue 4 string

5 screwdriver, tighten

6 hole 7 nail 8 tied

4 These are possible

1 fix, repair

2 faulty, not working

3 remove, replace 4 lamp, light bulb

5 is out of order, isn't working properly

6 leaking, faulty

5 1 stains 6 working

2	fixed	7	repaired
3	decorate		properly
4	repair	9	leaking
5	cracked	10	remove

Unit 27

5 Do

1	1	dust	3	grease
	2	muddy	4	vacuum
2	1	Sweep	6	mop, bucket
	2	vacuum cleaner	7	Dust, polish
		up	8	wipe
	4	cloth	9	sweep

3 Answers from a Colombian person

1 I do the washing up and I clean my room. Every other week I have to clean the kitchen or the toilet.

10 Throw

2 If I clean the toilets my housemates will clean the rest of the house.

Unit 28

1	1	fringe	5	parting
	2	scissors	6	trim
	3	hairstyle	7	colour
	4	hairdryer	8	blow-dry

2 1 Could you colour it for me, please?

2 Sasha is letting her hair grow.

3 I'd like a fringe and a parting on the right.

4 I'd like a cut and blow-dry, please.

5 I want to keep the same hairstyle, please.

6 She's going to have/get her hair trimmed.

3 Answers from a Spanish person

1 Yes, I'm letting my hair grow longer.

2 I had my hair cut about two months ago.

3 I don't have a fringe. I have a parting in the middle.

4 I go to a different hairdresser's every time.

5 My mum and my sister have their hair coloured.

Unit 29

1	1	filthy	4	whistle
	2	litter	5	graffiti
	3	pavement	6	depressing
2	1	dirty	5	floors
	2	quickly	6	money, food
	3	walk	7	lips
	4	around	8	nictures/writi

4 ground 8 pictures/writing
3 1 litter 4 hurry/rush
2 subway 5 graffiti

2 subway 5 graffiti 3 wonder 6 depressing

5 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 D

6 1 suburb

2 surrounded, shame/pity

- 3 local/handy
- 4 handy/convenient
- 5 disadvantage/drawback
- 6 ideal

7 Answers from a Japanese person

- 1 The area where I live is built-up. I'd like to live in the country where I could have a nice garden.
- 2 My home is surrounded by other houses.
- 3 There are a few convenience stores and a small supermarket in the area.
- 4 It's not handy at all! The nearest bus stop is 15 minutes' walk away and the nearest train station is a 15-minute bike ride away. Wherever you go, it takes quite a while.
- 5 One of the disadvantages of where I live is that there is no park nearby where children can play or where you can go for a walk.

Unit 30

1	2	impressive cellar separate	-	attic basement spacious		currently feature
2	-	basement corridor	3 4	hall drive	5 6	passage lawn
3	2	enormous store tiny	5	staircase leads convert		
4	2	detached currently drive	5	leads cellar store	7 8 9	huge wall convert
5	2	features chimney original	5	storage bricks roof		

6 Answers from a British person

- 1 We don't have shutters on our windows.
- 2 We do have a lawn. We sit out on it when the weather is warm.
- 3 Yes, there's a small room we use for storage and a children's bedroom.
- 4 We haven't got a basement or a cellar, but we have got a garage where we store our bikes and the dustbins.
- 5 There's a drive in front of the house.
- 6 Most of the rooms are quite spacious but the spare room is tiny.

Unit 31

1	1	boot	5	wooden	9	gold
	2	concrete	6	silver	10	pipe
	3	tyre	7	wooden	11	metal
	А	woollon	0	plactic		

- 4 woollen 8 plastic
- 2 1 silver, gold 4 wood, metal
 - 2 wood, plastic 5 plastic, wood, cardboard 3 plastic, metal 6 iron, steel, concrete
- 4 1 pointed 6 circular 11 square
 2 L-shaped 7 round 12 parallel
 3 curved 8 circle 13 diamond
 4 rectangle 9 triangle 14 star-shaped
- 5 1 oval 4 square 7 curved 2 rectangular 5 triangular 8 straight 3 round 6 pointed

10 horizontal

- 6 1 a rectangular table
 - 2 a curved needle
 - 3 pointed shoes

5 vertical

- 4 a triangular handbag
- 5 an oval mirror
- 6 a star-shaped box

Unit 32

1	1	notice	5	glanced at
	2	see	6	can see
	3	look	7	overheard
	4	watch	8	hear

- 2 1 catch 5 looked
 - 2 can, sounds3 staring6 glanced/looked7 observant
 - 4 seem/appear 8 disappeared
- 4 1 stinks 3 bland 5 touched 2 damp 4 like 6 rubbed
- 5 1 like, like 4 touch 7 smell 2 tapping 5 tapped 8 flavour, taste
 - 3 Press 6 grabbed

- 1 1 five
 - 2 the background
 - 3 no
 - 4 yes
 - 5 yes
 - 6 a painting
 - 7 in the distance/background
 - 8 on the right-hand side
 - 9 bright
 - 10 on the left-hand side

2	1	no	4	dark
	2	work	5	see
	3	feelina	6	light

- 3 1 You can see it in the distance.
 - 2 He's lying in the bottom left-hand corner.
 - 3 Is it on the right-hand side of the painting?
 - 4 They're sitting in the centre of the drawing.
 - 5 There are some trees in the top left-hand corner.
- 4 1 industrial 4 painting 2 illustrate 5 even 3 warmth 6 shade
- 5 Answers from a Polish person
 - 1 Gabriela Trykler.
 - 2 Yes, in 1995.
 - 3 It's an abstract painting.
 - 4 I like the many different ways I can interpret it, depending on my mood. I also like the colours.
 - 5 No. I don't.

- 1 1 Yes 5 Yes 2 No 6 No 3 Yes 7 No 4 Yes 8 Yes 5 smashed 2 1 drag
- 2 tore up 6 squeeze 7 scratched 3 folded
- 4 shake 8 sprayed 4 1 sneeze 7 burst into tears/cry 2 breath 8 shout
 - 3 burst out laughing 9 out loud / aloud 4 breathe in 10 silent 5 whisper 11 tears 6 sigh 12 silence
- 5 Answers from an Italian person
 - 1 Yesterday I heard my neighbours' baby screaming in the night because she was hungry.
 - 2 I last burst out laughing when I went to a comedy show.
 - 3 I last whispered to someone when I was visiting a museum.
 - 4 I last read something out loud to my boyfriend. It was part of a review of a film.

Unit 35

- 1 steal, commit, attack, offend, obey
- 2 15 25 3D 4D 55 65 75 8D

8 minor, against

- 5 violent/serious 3 1 violence
 - 2 attacked 6 serious/violent, jail 7 broken 3 stole

- 5 These words are wrong
 - 1 attacker
 - 2 mug
 - 3 breaking into
 - 4 shoplifting
 - 5 burglary
- 6 1 broke, stole, stabbed
 - 2 deliberately
 - 3 mugged/attacked, shoot/kill
 - 4 murdering/killing, shot
 - 5 thief/burglar
 - 6 robbed

Unit 36

- 1 1 report 7 suspect 2 Victims 8 arrest 3 investigate 9 evidence 4 fingerprints 10 charge 5 took place 11 court
 - 6 may
- 2 1 The police 5 The suspect
 - 2 The suspect 6 The victim or a witness
 - 3 The police 7 The suspect
- 4 The victim 8 A witness / witnesses

4 1F 2T 3F 4F 5T 6T 7F 8T

- 5 1 tried 5 sentenced 2 prove 6 trial 3 prosecution 7 fined
 - 4 defendant

Unit 37

- 1 1 allergic 3 depressed 4 diabetic 2 obese
- 4 increased 2 1 Diabetes 5 dramatic 2 allergy 3 Diseases 6 heart
- 6 diabetic 3 1 allergic
 - 7 breathe, lungs 2 obesity 8 lead, diseases 3 attack 9 decrease
 - 4 depressed
 - 5 suffer
- 5 stroke 4 1 memory loss
 - 2 arthritic 6 heart disease 3 brain 7 disability
 - 4 blind
- 5 1T 2F 3T 4T 5F 6F 7F 8T
- 6 1 arthritis 4 memory 2 deaf 5 cancer 3 sight 6 heart

4 Property

1 1F 2T 3F 4F 5T 6F

- 4 vote 2 1 elections
- 2 consists, parties 5 represent
 - 3 power 6 majority
- 3 Answers from a Colombian person
 - 1 My country holds elections every four
 - 2 The Uribista party is in power at the moment.
 - 3 They have been in power for five years.
 - 4 The President of the Republic.
 - 5 There are more than 500 people in parliament.
- 4 1 public
- 4 start it
- 2 important 3 deal with it
- 5 comina 6 disagree
- 5 1 policy
- 5 aim/objective/goal
- 2 campaign
- 6 Opposition
- 3 persuade
- 4 immigrants
- 7 focus 8 need

Unit 39

- 1 1 q 2 e 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c
- 2 1 enemy
- 4 captured
- 2 critical 3 surrendered
- 5 twelve 6 explode
- 3 1 out
- 4 soldiers
- 2 bomb
- 3 battle
- 5 control
- 4 1f 2h 3b 4d 5g 6e 7a
- 6 war
- 5 1 sides
- 6 unwilling
- 2 ceasefire
- 7 involved
- 3 leaders
- 8 compromise
- 4 settlement
- 9 reach/negotiate
- 5 determined 10 peace

Unit 40

- 1 1 f. release
 - 2 a, assassination
 - 3 e. establishment
 - 4 b, invasion
 - 5 d, attempt
- 2 1 assassinated
- 4 defeated
- 2 established
- 5 attempt
- 3 Revolution
- 6 independence, independent

Unit 41

- 1 whole, daily, entire, national, cultural
- 2 1D 2S 3D 4D 5S 6D
- 4 whole, international 3 1 culture
 - 2 press, journalist 5 declining
 - 3 published 6 daily
- 5 1 scare 5 claimed
- 6 pension 2 axed 7 threat 3 clashed
 - 4 demonstration
- 5 demonstrate/protest 6 1 pledged
 - 2 claims 6 clashed

 - 3 aid 7 threatened 4 scare 8 promise

Unit 42

- 1 1 equivalent 5 award 6 achieve 2 produce
 - 3 supporting role 7 winner
 - 4 individual 8 prize
- 2 1F 2F 3T 4F 5T 6F 7T 8F 9T 10 T
- 3 1 winner 5 role
 - 2 achieve 6 award
 - 7 equivalent 3 leading
 - 4 produced 8 individual
- 5 1 P 2 N 3 P 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N
- 6 1 indeed 4 extraordinary
 - 2 plot 5 suitable
 - 6 performance 3 movie
- 7 1 entertaining
 - 2 extraordinary performance
 - 3 disappointing indeed
 - 4 fan
 - 5 moving
- 8 Answers from a Spanish person
 - 1 The Bourne Ultimatum is a really entertaining film.
 - 2 Nicole Kidman gave an extraordinary performance in The Others.
 - 3 I thought Music and Lyrics was very disappointing indeed.
 - 4 I'm a fan of Brad Pitt.
 - 5 Life is Beautiful was very moving.

- 1 1D 2S 3D 4S 5S 6D 7D 8S 9D
- 2 1 styles 6 watercolours
 - 7 portrait/painting 2 abstract
 - 3 techniques 8 masterpiece 9 display 4 oils
 - 5 vary 10 exhibitions

- 4 1 camera 5 a film 2 lens 6 of film 3 photographer 7 flash 4 focus 8 album
- 5 1 She can develop films in her studio.
 - 2 I put the photo in the frame.
 - 3 Can I have two prints of this negative please?
 - 4 He focused on the girl in the foreground.
 - 5 Amateur photographers often buy automatic cameras.
 - 6 You can transfer the pictures to the computer.
- 6 Answers from a British person
 - 1 I'm interested in taking photographs of beautiful scenery and wildlife.
 - 2 I have a new Japanese digital camera.
 - 3 It has a digital screen and a very good 'zoom' feature.
 - 4 I find it hard to stop my hands shaking when I try to take photos at night without the flash.

- 1 1 violin/violinist
 - 2 organ/organist
 - 3 trumpet/trumpeter
 - 4 guitar/guitarist
 - 5 saxophone/saxophonist
 - 6 cello/cellist

4 composers

- 7 flute/flautist
- 2 1 orchestra 5 songwriter 2 guitar, band, lead 6 player 3 instrument 7 musicians

8 conductor

7 appeals

- 4 1 lyrics 5 living 2 solo 6 melody
 - 3 live 4 voice
- 5 1 influenced 5 solo 2 release 6 albums 3 recorded 7 appeals 4 recording 8 admire
- 6 Answers from a Japanese person
 - I like Marcus Miller very much.
 - 2 His music has been influenced by Jaco Pastorius.
 - 3 He records his own music but sometimes writes for other people.
 - 4 He often does live concerts. I have seen him play live in Osaka several times.
 - 5 The last album he released was called
 - 6 I like his music because he is a genius and the rhythms he plays are brilliant.

Unit 45

1	1	golfer	5	rugby player
		athlete		skier
	3	boxer	7	gymnast
	4	racing driver		•

- 2 1 captain
 - 2 referee
 - 3 support
 - 4 umpire 5 supporters
- 3 1 referee 5 fans 2 linesman 6 crowd 3 flag 7 pitch 4 commentator 8 manager
- 4 1 length 5 depth
 - 2 track 6 construction
 - 3 width 7 lap
 - 4 maximum
- 5 1 construct, stadium, capacity
 - 2 laps, Circuit, track, constructed
 - 3 Championship, worldwide, courts
 - 4 standard, pool, long, wide, minimum, depth, maximum

Unit 46

- 1 1 gymnastics 4 cycling 2 weightlifting 5 athletics 3 fencing 6 wrestling
- 2 1 took part 4 takes place 2 take part, participate 5 race, medal 3 record 6 hold
- 3 1 take 4 competitors, professionals
 - 2 compete 5 race
 - 3 record 6 medal, competition
- 5 1 achievement 5 brilliant 2 criticize 6 favourite 3 resistance 7 defeat sb
 - 4 praise
- 6 1 contest 4 favourite, sided
 - 2 overall 5 critical
 - 3 achievement 6 opponent, semi

- 1 1 Fiction: murder mystery, novel, sci-fi Non-fiction: autobiography, manual, reference book, encyclopedia, biography
- 2 1 encyclopedia 5 mystery 2 poetry/poems 6 alphabet
 - 3 reference 7 autobiography 4 pleasure 8 manual
- 4 1 attention 4 readable 2 well known 5 paperback

- 5 1 author 5 chapter 2 attention 6 fascinating 3 title 7 cover
 - 3 title 7 cover 4 paperback 8 written
- 6 Answers from a Polish person
 - 1 I like detective stories and biographies.
 - 2 I use lots of different dictionaries.
 - 3 I used to when I was younger and had more free time.
 - 4 No, not really.
 - 5 I have more paperbacks than hardbacks because they are cheaper, but also because many books only come out in paperback.

- 1 1 illuminated 5 festival 2 Carnival 6 fireworks 3 approached 7 tons 4 spectacular 8 blossom
- 2 1c 2b 3h 4d 5i 6f 7a 8g
- 3 1 participated 4 striking 2 dress up 5 occasion 3 illuminated 6 neighbourhood
- 4 1 festival, carnival 5 dressed up
 - 2 parade 6 occasions, fireworks
 - 3 entertainment 7 mean 4 taken part 8 participate
- 5 Answers from a German person
 - 1 The 'Oktoberfest' in Munich is a very important and popular festival. It was originally a harvest festival.
 - 2 No, they don't.
 - 3 Yes. There are lots of local bands playing and there's a fairground.
 - 4 No, I haven't taken part in a parade.
 - 5 Yes, at 'Fasching' in February, when I was small, my mum dressed me up as a mouse!
 - 6 Yes, on New Year's Eve.
 - 7 Not really, but I can understand why a lot of people like tradition.
 - 8 Yes, I'd like to participate in 'La Tomatina' because I think it would be a lot of fun throwing tomatoes at other people!

12 examiner

13 relief

Unit 49

1	1	invigilator	4	attitude
	2	success	5	follow
	3	succeed	6	disqualified
2	1	attitude	8	essential
	2	instructions	9	carefully
	3	invigilator	10	devotes
	4	cheating	11	planning

5 disqualified

6 item 7 paper

Unit 50

- 1 The people are 4, 5, 6, and 9.
- 2 1 attend 6 widely
 2 seminars 7 academic
 3 lectures 8 assessment
 4 notes 9 graduate
 - 5 tutor
- 4 1 opportunity 5 manage 2 on time 6 in time 3 freedom 7 homesick
 - 4 revision
- 5 1 away 4 loans 2 residence 5 scholarship 3 tuition 6 chance
- 6 Answers from an Italian person
 - 1 Students usually live at home, unless they go to university in another city.
 - 2 Some students live in halls of residence, but most of them live in shared flats or houses.
 - 3 Yes, they do have to pay tuition fees unless they receive a scholarship.
 - 4 Normally they don't have to take out loans because their parents help them.
 - 5 Yes, scholarships are available.
 - 6 It would be great to have the chance to study abroad.

- 1 1 application, assessment, confirmation, acknowledgement, interview
- 2 1 They said they'd contact to me.
 - 2 Is she applying for a job?
 - 3 Have you got a work permit?
 - 4 The company is based in Tokyo.
 - 5 He gave me some good advice.
 - 6 She gave me **feedback** after the interview.
 - 7 I have to confirm it in writing.
 - 8 If you apply for a job, it's quite a long process.
- 3 1 requested 4 require 2 position 5 subject to
 - 3 attended
- 4 1 based 6 candidates 2 acknowledge 7 vacancies
 - 3 confirmation 8 give
 - 4 contact 9 apply, application 5 automatically 10 process
- 5 Answers from a German person
 - 1 I've applied for the following jobs in the past: a paper-boy, a lighting technician in a nightclub, an optician, and an IT specialist.
 - 2 I think I've had more than twenty interviews in my life.

- 3 Yes, interviewers usually give feedback after an interview.
- 4 I've been the successful candidate five times.
- 5 My referees were my previous supervisors.
- 6 No, I've never had to get a work permit because I've always worked in the European Union.

1	1	training	5	manufacturing
	2	military	6	management
	-		_	

3 retail 7 finance 4 engineering 8 recruitment

2 1 sector 5 qualifications 2 management 6 profession 3 experience 7 military

4 training

3 Answer from a Colombian person I have some management experience. And I worked in retail when I was younger. I don't have experience in any of the other fields.

4 1F 2T 3F 4T 5T 6T 7T

5 1 estate travel

2 landing land

3 produces products

4 servant service

5 exports imports

6 takes care for takes care of / cares for

7 representants representatives/reps

Unit 53

1 15 2D 3D 45 55 65 7D 85 9D

2 1 challenging 5 elsewhere 2 department 6 unemployed 3 prospects 7 sack/fire 4 promoted 8 resign/guit

3 Answers from a British person

1 My job is very challenging.

2 In fact I've already transferred from another department.

3 I have reasonable prospects in my job.

4 I'm not thinking about promotion at the moment as my job is already challenging enough!

5 No, I'm not bored, so I won't be looking elsewhere.

6 No, I've never been unemployed.

7 I would hate to have to sack someone.

8 Yes, I would definitely resign if I started to hate my job.

4 1 I'd like to make an enquiry about the club.

2 I talked to her face-to-face.

3 It's very hard to deal with this situation.

4 Who's in charge of this department?

5 You have to make sure the door is locked.

6 We're not responsible for the cleaning.

7 Do you know how to solve the problem?

8 I want to make a complaint about the service.

5 Text A

1 duties 4 responsible 2 enquiries 5 sure

3 solutions

Text B

6 involves 10 responsibility

7 public 11 deal

8 handling 12 complaints

9 clerical

Unit 54

1 1 trade 5 overtime 2 strike 6 takes, off 3 bonus 7 stress

4 working conditions

2 1 Is she a member of a trade union?

2 Are we entitled to sick pay?

3 I'd like to take a week off.

4 Why don't you like shift work?

5 I left on time today; I didn't do overtime.

6 Why did the workers go on strike?

3 Answers from a British person

1 Yes, it is very stressful.

2 We get 25 days' holiday each year.

3 No, we don't do shift work.

4 Yes, I regularly work overtime.

5 We sometimes get a small bonus if the year has been good financially.

6 Yes, we are entitled to sick pay.

7 Yes, we have a trade union, which we have a right to join.

8 It is very rare for people at my place of work to go on strike.

Unit 55

1 1 e 2 i 3 g 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 d 8 h

2 1 turnover 5 inflation 2 flow 6 took out, loan 3 rate 7 costs, loss

4 tax profit 8 finance/start/operate

4 1 grew/rose significantly

2 rose gradually3 fell slightly

4 stable/unchanged

5 risen steadily

5 1 sharply 5 by 2 rise 6 fall/drop 3 peak 7 fluctuated

4 gone 8 stable/unchanged

6 1 rose slightly

2 sharp rise/increase

3 remained stable/unchanged

4 fell slightly

5 fell sharply

- 1 asset, goods, stock
- 2 1 up the business 4 quality
- 2 of business 5 employer 3 supplier 6 her on
- 3 1 research
 - 2 assets
 - 3 rivals
 - 4 employs
 - 5 optimistic/ambitious, estimates
- 4 1 takeover
- 4 leader
- 2 reputation 3 break even
- 5 survival 6 struggle
- 5 1 share
- 4 growth, market
- 2 shares
- 5 taken
- 3 brand
- 6 gained

Unit 57

- 1 1 1993.
 - 2 Because surfing was a seasonal business.
 - 3 b) it had to give protection
 - c) it had to retain heat
 - 4 He did some research.
 - 5 He took out a bank loan.
 - 6 It's crucial to have a good relationship.
 - 7 Feedback from his customers.
 - 8 A good partnership with suppliers.
- 2 1 contract
- 5 innovate
- 2 retain
- 6 diversify
- 3 crucial
- 7 partnership 8 potential
- 3 1 exploit
 - 2 Both answers are correct.
 - 3 potential

4 feedback

- 4 adapt
- 5 Both answers are correct.
- 6 founded
- 7 investment
- 8 Both answers are correct.
- 4 1 gap

6 ahead

2 case

- 7 contract
- 3 producers/manufacturers
 - 8 retain/keep

4 research

9 factor

5 invest

10 diversify

Unit 58

- 1 1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G
- 2 1 sector
 - 2 demand
 - 3 strengths
 - 4 threat
 - 5 resources

- 3 1 skills 4 reduce
 - 2 advertise 5 weaknesses
 - 3 demand/market
- 4 1f 2e 3a 4c 5b
- 4 data/facts 5 1 strategy 5 realistic 2 objective
 - 3 response 6 tip
- 6 1 ignored 4 target 2 forecast 5 gathered
 - 3 assume

Unit 59

- 5 think/believe 1 1 almost 6 probably 2 probably 7 don't 3 may 8 bad 4 possible
- 2 1 She's bound to pass.
 - 2 She'll probably pass. / She's likely to pass. / I expect she'll pass.
 - 3 She may/might pass.
 - 4 I doubt (if/that) she'll pass. / She's unlikely to pass.
 - 5 She'll definitely fail.
- 3 Answer from a Japanese person

Next week, I'm definitely going to go to a salsa party on Sunday evening. It's a good chance for me to let off steam. However, the good dancers are unlikely to dance with someone like me who isn't very good, although I expect some of them will ask me to dance anyway. Otherwise I will be standing alone in the corner for hours and it will be a disaster! But maybe I'm too pessimistic.

My friend and I might go out for a drink afterwards. There I'm likely to ask her advice about the boy I fancy, even though I doubt she has a good opinion of him.

Unit 60

- 1 1 in comparison 4 main 5 compared 2 apart from 3 alike 6 identical
- 2 1 similar 5 greedy
 - 2 Compared 6 alike, completely 3 similarity 7 apart 4 except 8 difference
- 3 Answers from a British person

Oxford and Cambridge are alike in many ways. They both have famous universities, and many beautiful old buildings. Another similarity is that it takes about an hour to get to London on the train. However, apart from the universities, there is one main difference. Compared with Cambridge, Oxford is very cosmopolitan.

- 1 1 meant
 - 2 busy
 - 3 What
 - 4 free (to see you)
 - 5 put it off
 - 6 for example/for instance
 - 7 Are you able to come
 - 8 meet
 - 9 I'm afraid
- 2 1 Shall we get together for a meeting?
 - 2 I'll tell you definitely tomorrow.
 - 3 I could put the meeting off until Friday. .
 - 4 I'm afraid but I'm tied up then. or I'm sorry but I'm tied up then.
 - 5 A Let's meet at a restaurant, say? B No, what about the station instead?
 - 6 As an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday.

Unit 62

- 1 Like very much: mad about, crazy about, adore
 - Like: fond of, keen on
 - Dislike very much: detest, loathe, can't bear, not like at all
- 2 1 I'm fond of . . .
 - 2 I can't stand . . .
 - 3 I loathe cooking . . .
 - 4 I'm mad about . . .
 - 5 I can't bear . . .
 - 6 I detest . . .
 - 7 Ladore eating . . .
 - 8 I'm crazy about . . .
 - 9 Recently, I've got to like . . .
 - 10 I'd rather eat . . . than . . .
- 3 Answers from a Polish person
 - 1 chocolate cake
 - 2 cigarette smoke
 - 3 liver
 - 4 reading
 - 5 people who smoke in my presence
 - 6 waiting in departure lounges at airports
 - 7 white chocolate
 - 8 travelling to new places
 - 9 mussels
 - 10 fish, meat

Unit 63

- 1 1 What do you think of this idea?
 - 2 Personally, I think it's a good idea.
 - 3 Lagree with it in principle.
 - 4 It seems to me we have no choice.
 - 5 If you ask me, it was a disaster.

- 2 1 It seems to me we should do something.
 - 2 How do you feel about that?
 - 3 In my opinion, we should help them.
 - 4 I'm to blame.
 - 5 I reckon it'll be a problem.
- 3 1 Apparently, fault 4 point
 - 2 concerned
- 5 principle/theory
- 3 issues
- 4 1 sensible
 - 2 consider
- 4 support 5 believe
- 3 reduce
- 6 proposal
- 5 1 against
- 5 silly 6 favour
- 2 reduce 3 opposed
- 7 dependent
- 4 believe/think
- 8 mature

Unit 64

- 1 1 force to you
- 4 with
- 2 to
- 5 to
- 3 be
- 6 on
- 2 1 behaved
- 4 banned
- 2 allowed 3 disobedient
- 5 punishment 6 behaviour
- 3 1 obedient
 - 2 disobeyed
 - 3 strict
 - 4 force
 - 5 behave
- 4 Answers from an Italian person
 - ▶ Yes, they were allowed to wear make-up.
 - 1 Yes. I was a quiet and obedient child.
 - 2 If you disobeyed the rules, you would have to stand outside the classroom.
 - 3 The rules were not that strict.
 - 4 The teachers didn't force me to do anything I didn't want to do.
 - 5 I think children probably behaved much better then compared to nowadays.

5 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S

- 6 1 let
- 6 compulsory/
- 2 choice
- obligatory, choice 3 allowed, forbidden 7 allowed/permitted
- - 8 option
- 5 optional

- 1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S
- 2 1 making 2 intend
- 6 wrong
- 7 fact
- 3 hoping 4 expecting
- 8 smoothly 9 forward
- 5 intention
- 4 1 I doubt it. 2 I'm afraid not. 6 I hope not
- 5 I'm afraid so
 - 3 I don't think so. 7 Definitely not

4 I guess so.

5 1 imagine so 5 assume so

2 think so 6 doubt it / don't think so

3 hope not 7 Definitely 4 afraid not 8 suppose so

Unit 66

11d 2f 3g 4b 5a 6e

2 1 dissatisfied, complained

2 guarantee

3 point

4 back

5 writing

6 keep/stay, temper

7 expert

8 considered

4 mention

5 1 fed 5 bother 2 bother 6 join 3 nuisance 7 bothered

4 spoilt/ruined 8 mentioned

6 Answers from a German person
 1 Yes, I'm fed up with the traffic in the morning when I drive to work; it's so

2 Sometimes the small child living above us can be a bit loud and that gets on my nerves.

3 I don't tend to moan a lot; however, postal strikes are a real inconvenience to me and others.

4 Shopping in town on a Saturday can be a real nightmare, as it's so crowded.

5 I'm not particularly bothered about my level of English at the moment; however, I do try to improve constantly.

Unit 67

1 1 Do you need any assistance?

2 Caution. If symptoms continue, seek medical help. OR Seek medical help if symptoms continue.

3 Beware of the dog; it bites.

4 Warning. Don't cross when the barrier is down.

5 In case of fire, leave the building immediately.

6 Ring the police in case of emergency. OR In case of emergency, ring the police.

2 1 swallows 5 warned, danger 2 Beware, case 6 careful, aircraft

3 Mind 7 assistance 4 out 8 premises

Unit 68

1 1 as a result 5 plus
2 what's more 6 Since
3 due to 7 Moreover
4 therefore 8 Furthermore

2 REASON: due to, since RESULT: therefore, as a result ADDITION: what's more, plus, moreover, furthermore

3 1 close/shut

2 she couldn't

3 was terrible/bad/dreadful

4 didn't have

5 get in / get into / enter

6 they aren't / they're not

4 1e 2i 3b 4c 5d 6f 7a 8h

5 1 despite

2 that

3 However/Nevertheless

4 though/however

5 although/though

6 spite, still

7 even

8 Despite

6 1S 2D 3D 4S 5D 6S

7 1 as long as 4 whereas 2 so that 5 in case 3 On the one hand 6 otherwise

Unit 69

1 Synonyms: curious/strange, fair/reasonable, essential/vital Opposites: modern/old-fashioned, polite/rude, busy/deserted, rural/urban

2 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D

3 1 curious 4 reasonable
2 rural/remote 5 impressed
3 suspicious 6 overall
5 1 shocked 4 terrifying
2 satisfied 5 disgusting
3 disappointing 6 embarrassed

6 1 amusing 5 disgusting

2 embarrassing 6 amazed/astonished

3 shocking 7 alarming 4 disappointed 8 satisfied

8 1 inadequate 6 common 2 soft 7 ineffective 3 inefficient 8 unexpected

4 spacious 9 permanent 5 artificial



9 1 mixed 6 efficient
2 rare 7 adequate
3 glad 8 modern/contemporary
4 fashioned 9 negative

4 fashioned 9 negative 5 unexpected 10 temporary

Unit 70

1 over 8, the rear 6, beside 4, beneath 1, onto 7, the edge 5, among 2

2 1 onto 5 over 2 among 6 back 3 over, beside 7 edge 4 underneath/beneath 8 beyond

3 1 nowadays

2 lasted

3 occasionally / now and again

4 Meanwhile 5 throughout

6 eventually

4 1 yet, recently / not long ago

2 recent, during

3 over, go

4 last, already

5 occasionally / now and again / from time to time, during/throughout

Unit 71

1 in general, in private, in public at least, at first by chance on purpose, on board

2 1 In general 4 At the end 2 on purpose 5 in charge of 3 on board 6 in a hurry/rush

3 1 in 4 by 2 in 5 in

3 At

4 1 of 6 on 2 in/with 7 of 3 with 8 to 4 on 9 of

5 of

5 1 cope 5 look
2 rid 6 depends
3 care 7 involved
4 most 8 disapprove

Unit 72

1 1 unkind 7 non-smoking 2 non-alcoholic 8 insecure 3 illegal 9 irregular 4 irresponsible 10 dishonest 5 uncertain 11 irrelevant 6 informal

2 1 immoral 4 insecure

2 non-alcoholic | 5 unfair/unacceptable

3 irrelevant 6 disloyal
3 1 unfair 4 illegible
2 unacceptable 5 illegal

3 disloval

Answers from a Colombian person

1 Life is always unfair, but knowing that means that I do not expect anything marvellous to happen and have therefore become cynical.

2 It has always been acceptable to them and unacceptable to others and it will

remain so.

3 My friends tend to be loyal but a disloyal friend can always appear loyal at first.

4 My handwriting is probably the clearest sign of a confused mind! Even I can't read it – it is completely illegible.

5 I think it should be legal. I learnt to drive when I was 17 and didn't have an accident for the first four years.

4 1 a, c 3 b, c 5 a, c 2 a, b 4 a, b 6 a, b

5 1 Unwrap the present. Wrap (up) the present.

2 Lock the suitcase. Unlock the suitcase.

3 Get dressed. Get undressed.

4 Pack your suitcase. Unpack your suitcase.

5 Do up your shirt. Undo your shirt.

6 Tie up / Do up your shoelaces. Untie / Undo your shoelaces.

Unit 73

1 gentleness, kindness, disappearance, extension, reality, preference, judgement

2 1 react reaction

2 prefer preference

3 cruel cruelty

4 define definition

5 interpret interpretation

6 measure measurement

7 extend extension

- 3 1 measurements 5 reaction 2 cruelty 6 judgement 3 reality 7 preference 4 disappearance 8 extension
- 4 1 waterproof 5 practical 2 careful, careless 6 washable
 - 3 creamy 7 powerful, powerless
 - 4 humorous
- 5 1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 G 6 G 7 B
- 6 1 harmful
 - 2 ridiculous
 - 3 useless/ridiculous
 - 4 practical/useful/economical
 - 5 fashionable
 - 6 economical
 - 7 painful
 - 8 spicy

- 1 1 d 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 b
- 2 1 enable 3 imagine 5 reminds 2 intend 4 warned 6 mind
- 3 1f 2g 3a 4c 5b 6d
- 4 Answers from a Spanish person
 - 1 I managed to cycle up a steep hill last week.
 - 2 I intended to call my sister yesterday but I forgot.
 - 3 I regret missing a chance to buy a house a couple of years ago.
 - 4 I refused to go on a business trip recently.
 - 5 My dad persuaded me to buy a car last year.
 - 6 My mum warned me not to spend too much on my credit card.
 - 7 I'm pleased to say no one has blamed me for anything recently.
 - 8 My mum reminded me to call my sister today!

Unit 75

- 11R 2R 3W 4W 5R 6W 7R
- 2 1 takes after 4 runs out 2 made it up 5 switched on 3 get on with 6 give away
- 3 1 up 3 on 5 on, with 2 out 4 over 6 out of
- 5 1 leave out 4 go over 2 get through 5 getting on 3 work out 6 go on / carry on
- 6 1 out 4 on 7 back 2 through, on 5 off 8 up, down 3 back 6 on

Unit 76

- 1 1 They're highly intelligent boys.
 - 2 It's bitterly cold outside.
 - 3 That man is completely/totally mad.
 - 4 Paula's been seriously ill.
 - 5 Their profits have fallen sharply.
 - 6 We desperately need to earn more money.
 - 7 It was totally/completely unnecessary to do that.
- 2 1 risen 4 travelled
 - 2 injured 5 feel
 - 3 sorry, forgot 6 convinced/sure
- 3 1 vitally 4 completely/totally
 - 2 highly 5 bitterly 3 desperately 6 terribly
- 4 15 25 3D 4S 5D 65 75 8S
- 5 1 On the whole 5 rather
 2 mainly/mostly 6 actually
 3 approximately/about 7 rarely
 4 largely/mostly 8 fairly

- 1 11 2F 3I 4F 5N 6I 7N
- 2 1 fetch 4 purchase 2 commence 5 out of the blue 3 stuff 6 keep an eye on
- 3 1 of 3 stuff 5 turned 2 vague 4 idiom 6 sort, neutral
- 4 1D 2S 3S 4D 5S 6S 7D
- 5 1 Yeah
 - 2 Hang on. / Hold on.
 - 3 What's up?
 - 4 I haven't a clue.
 - 5 How are things? / How's it going?
 - 6 What've you been up to?
 - 7 Cheers.
- 6 1 care 4 up, hang/hold
 - 2 going 5 to
 - 3 give/lend, problem
- **8** 1 g 2 c 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 d
- 9 1 joking
 - 2 disaster
 - 3 tent
 - 4 loads/lots/masses, nonsense/rubbish
 - 5 better 7 picking 6 for 8 like

- 1 1 No.
 - 2 As a deposit for the cottage.
 - 3 Arriving.
 - 4 Yes, she wants to know whether there is parking nearby.
 - 5 Her own address.
 - 6 Mr Ellison's address.
 - 7 Yes, she wrote the date underneath her address.
 - 8 Dear Mr Ellison
 - 9 Yours sincerely
- 10 No, because it's a formal letter.

2 1 / 2 x 3 / 4 / 5 x 6 /

- 3 1 Hook forward to hearing from you.
 - 2 If there's a problem, please don't hesitate to ring me.
 - 3 I enclose a photocopy of my identity card with the application form.
 - 4 I would be **grateful** if you **could** phone me about the meeting.
 - 5 Further to your letter of 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking.
 - 6 I would appreciate it if you could help me.
 - 7 Please let me know in particular whether/ if there is a beach nearby.
 - 8 I enclose a cheque for €30 as a deposit for the rental of the room.
- 4 1 Further
- 7 whether
- 2 enclose
- 8 nearby / close by

11 lab

- 3 deposit
- 9 further
- 4 commence
- 10 hesitate11 sincerely
- 5 grateful 6 appreciate

Unit 79

1

ı	1	m	7	cl	13	g/gm
	2	р	8	kg	14	mm
	3	km	9	cm	15	_
	4	ml	10	mg	16	\$
	5	+	11	clct		

- 6 mph 12 kph
- 2 1 kph, mph 3 gm 2 mm 4 p or c/ct
- 3 1 vet 5 gym 9 pub 2 pop/pop music 6 plane 10 deli
 - 3 fridge 7 board 4 bike 8 paper
- 4 ▶ lab
 - 1 deli, fridge 3 pub, TV/telly
 - 2 ads, paper 4 flu
- 5 1 ATM, PIN 5 UEFA 9 EU 2 CV 6 IT 10 UN 3 ID 7 AIDS 11 ISP
 - 4 VAT 8 DVD, UFOs

- 1 1 sidewalk 3 datebook 5 railroad 2 cellphone 4 drugstore
- 2 1 garbage 5 attorney 2 subway 6 gasoline
 - 3 closet 7 transportation 4 candy 8 billfold
- 3 1 can 4 fries 2 theater 5 trip
 - 3 store 6 highway
- 4 1 holiday vacation
 - 2 lift elevator
 - 3 rubbish garbage/trash
 - 4 handbag purse
 - 5 diary datebook
 - 6 sweets candy
 - 7 lorry truck
 - 8 biscuit cookie
 - 9 tap faucet
 - 10 pavement sidewalk
- 5 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 I don't often use the subway. I use it a few times a month.
 - 2 I use the railroad twice a day, every day, to commute to work.
 - 3 I go to a movie theater about twice a month.
 - 4 The last movie I saw was No Reservations.
 - 5 I sometimes eat French fries when I go for a beer with friends.
 - 6 I went to Seoul on my last vacation.
 - 7 The last time I went to a mall was about two months ago.
 - 8 I left high school eighteen years ago.

Answer key to review units

Learning

Unit 1

- 1 1 a translation (of this), please? 2 (some) revision for an exam
 - 3 I repeat
 - 4 his explanation (of it)
 - 5 a guess
 - 6 a record of new words in a book
 - 7 a chat (about it)
 - 8 the pronunciation of that word
- 2 1 recognize 2 gist
- 7 translation 8 pronounce
- 3 go through
- 9 make
- 5 auess
- 4 make a note of 10 pronunciation 11 experiment
- 12 foreign 6 context

Unit 2

- 1 1 complex/complicated
- 5 range 6 contain
- 2 expand, aim 3 fluently
- 7 specialized

4 detail

- 8 appropriate
- 2 1 frustrating 2 motivated
- 6 getting 7 aware
- 3 while
- 8 express 9 accurate
- 4 progress 5 encouraging

Unit 3

- 1 1 definitions
- 7 stress
- 2 entry
- 8 syllable 9 idiom
- 3 select 4 instance
- 10 expression
- 5 symbols
- 6 stressed
- 11 style 12 offend

Unit 4

- 1 1 a colon
- 5 an exclamation mark
- 2 a full stop 3 a semicolon
- 6 an apostrophe 7 a question mark
- 4 quotation marks
- 2 1 separates
- 3 interrupts
- 2 details, list
- 4 instead, connected

People

Unit 5

- 5 figure 1 1 expecting 2 contact 6 tanned 7 wrinkles 3 neat 4 tell 8 shape
- 2 1 shoulders 4 appearance, shape
 - 2 bald, losing 3 scar
- 5 shaven 6 plump

Unit 6

- 1 generous, generosity, mean honest, honesty, dishonest tolerant, tolerance, intolerant patient, patience, impatient arrogant, arrogance, modest hard-working, lazy
- 2 1 crazy 2 boring/dull
- 4 aggressive 5 sense of humour
 - 6 cheerful 3 lazy

Unit 7

- 1 1 OPP insensitive 4 OPP hides
 - 2 SYN fed up 5 SYN scared stiff
 - 3 SYN astonished 6 SYN thrilled
- 2 1 He was furious with me, and I was thrilled, terrified I scared stiff OR He was furious delighted with me, and I was thrilled.
 - 2 She was so proud when her son did well, and really jealous. thrilled/delighted
 - 3 I was anxious before the flight, and scared stiff by the time we took off. (logical)
 - 4 I don't know what upset her, but she was thrilled. miserable I fed up
 - 5 She can be very insensitive and often hurts people's feelings. (logical)
 - 6 I can't talk to her because she's insensitive and very supportive, moody

- 1 Petros and I have nothing ^ common. in
- 2 How did you get ^ know her? to 3 I like Imran; we get ^ very well. on
- 4 Don't forget to keep ^ touch. in
- 5 You can't rely her brother. on
- 6 I don't think they're ^ a relationship at the moment. in

2 1 sociable 5 common 2 realize 6 rows/arguments 3 loyal 7 regrets 4 together 8 reliable

Unit 9

1 1 immigrant 2 stepmother 3 ancestor 4 adopt 5 look like sb

> 6 take after sb 7 get divorced / get a divorce

8 generation

2 1 immigrants 6 up 2 only 7 previous 3 parent 8 half 4 brought 9 step 5 divorced 10 step

Unit 10

DRINKATOA ST W C M E 0 R Α K INGD Ε C G D E MARRI G E 0 ON S E P 0 G G U E Y M Е E HONEYMOO C N

2 1 funeral 8 civil
2 widower 9 chose
3 buried 10 bride
4 mourners 11 best
5 inherited 12 reception
6 choose 13 anniversary
7 ceremony/wedding 14 celebrate

The world around us

Unit 11

	1	reach	8	discovered
	2	approximately	9	invented
	3	earth	10	space
	4	planet	11	satellites
		system	12	circle
	6	exists	13	universe
	7	scientists	14	roughly
2	1	go/travel	5	studies
	2	not	6	true
	3	circle	7	different
	4	test	8	exist

Unit 12

1	wave	4	ocean
2	puddle	5	flood
3	float	6	steep
1	narrow	5	horizon
2	surface	6	rough
3	protection	7	deep
4	sank/capsized	8	steep
1	socks rocks	6	cave wave
2	chip ship	7	floor flood
3	sleep steep	8	pink sink
4	pony pond	9	blows flows
5	boots boats	10	peach beach
	3 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4	2 puddle 3 float	2 puddle 5 3 float 6 1 narrow 5 2 surface 6 3 protection 7 4 sank/capsized 8 1 socks rocks 6 2 chip ship 7 3 sleep steep 8 4 pony pond 9

Unit 13

		pouring		ŀ	predict
	2	effects	9	5	breeze
	3	mild	6	5	extreme, affect
2	1	harm			spread
	2	melts	Ē	5	gradually
	3	rise	E	5	disappear

Unit 14

1	1	volcanic eruption	6	tidal wave
	2	hurricane	7	volcanic eruption
	3	tidal wave	8	drought
	4	drought	9	hurricane
	5	earthquake		
2	1	d 2g 3b 4h 5	5 C	6a 7e

Unit 15

1 Wild animals: lion, gorilla, leopard Farm animals: calf, donkey, goat Insects: fly, bee, mosquito Sea creatures: whale, shark



2 Some snakes are poisonous.

Leopards have spots.

Elephants have a trunk.

Eagles have a beak.

Bears have fur.

Bees can sting.

Goats have horns.

3 Across

Down

2 wings

1 mice

5 bone

3 snake

6 vary

4 poison

8 camel

7 harmless

9 stina

9 shark

10 monkey

11 calf

12 weight

13 spider

Daily life

Unit 16

1 Herbs: parsley, thyme, mint

Fruit: fig, pomegranate, raspberry, apricot Vegetables: beetroot, sweetcorn, broccoli,

Fish: cod, salmon, carp, sea bass

Seafood: oysters, clams, mussels, crab

Meat: veal, rabbit, liver, kidney

Unit 17

1	1	not

6 oil or fat

2 less 3 good 7 without 8 cut

4 bad

9 weight

5 fatter

10 cooking

Unit 18

1 1 receipt

7 broke

2 well off 3 the sales 8 bargain

4 waste

9 debt 10 reduction

5 change

11 amount

6 can't afford

12 huge

The phrase in the grey squares is 'cost a fortune'.

Unit 19

1 1 fall

6 sleepy/exhausted/tired

2 go/get

7 habits

3 lack 4 irritable

8 nap 9 night

5 concentrate

10 mind

Unit 20

1 bleed

dizzy

prevent

symptom

infection

injury.

develop

thoroughly

Unit 21

1 1f 2a 3h 4d 5c 6e 7b

Unit 22

- 1 Correct answers
 - 1 cancelled, held up
 - 2 the outskirts, the way
 - 3 a vehicle, an ambulance
 - 4 a coach, a van
 - 5 broke down, crashed
 - 6 injured, delayed
 - a valid ticket, a day return
 - 8 gets in, is due

2 1 hire

5 skid

2 pick

6 stop

3 turn

7 end

4 get

Unit 23

1 1 style 2 bracelet 5 button 6 suede

3 dress

7 underwear

4 vest

2 1 versatile 2 matches

4 outfit

3 suits

5 jewellery 6 materials/fabrics

Getting things done

Unit 24

1 Is it painful when you bite?

2 I will probably have to take the tooth out.

3 This is the tooth which is causing the pain.

4 When did you last have a check-up? 5 Can you come back to the surgery

tomorrow? 6 Just ask the receptionist to make an

appointment for you. 7 There's a hole in this tooth - you need a

8 I'm going to examine your teeth and then decide what you need.

- 1 treat
- 2 concerned
- 3: surgeon
- 4 straightaway
- 5 benefit
- 6 take care of / care for someone
- 7 get over something / recover from something
- 8 patient
- 9 ward
- 10 risk

Unit 26

- 1 1 stain, remove
 - 2 out of, fix/repair/mend
 - 3 leaking
 - 4 mend/repair
 - 5 working, bulbs
 - 6 wrong with, fix/repair/mend
- 2 1 hammer
- 5 rope
- 2 drill
- 6 string/wire
- 3 screwdriver
- 7 glue
- 4 scissors 8 Sellotape/glue/string

Unit 27

- 1 broom
- 4 throw
- 2 bucket
- 5 dust/polish
- 3 vacuum cleaner 6 wipe

Unit 28

- 1 I had my hair cut last week.
- 2 I just want a trim, please.
- 3 I'd like a cut and blow-dry, please.
- 4 Are you letting your hair grow?
- 5 Can you pass me the scissors?
- 6 She's got a parting on the left.
- 7 I'm having my hair coloured tomorrow.
- 8 Can I borrow your hairdryer?

Describing things

Unit 29

- 1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F
- 2 1 filthy 2 lively
- 5 handy6 graffiti
- 3 pity
- 7 begging
- 4 space
- 8 disadvantage

Unit 30

- 1 Possible answers
 - It's a semi-detached house.
 - There's a chimney on the roof.
 - The cellar is used for storage.
 - There's a lawn in the garden.
 - The drive leads to the front door.

Unit 31

- 1 1 a wooden fence 5 a woollen blanket
 - 2 a rubber tyre 6 a cardboard box
 - 3 a wax candle 7 iron railings
 - 4 a gold medal 8 a concrete bridge
- 2 1 round 4 square
 - 2 four 5 parallel 3 horizontal 6 straight

Unit 32

11h 2f 3a 4d 5g 6b 7i 8e

Unit 33

- 1 1 artist 5 distance 2 scene 6 shade
 - 3 foreground 7 hand
 - 4 just 8 ignoring

Unit 34

- 1 1 smash 6 burst 2 tear 7 sighed 3 fold 8 shake
 - 4 sprayed 9 dragging
 - 5 crying

Social and political issues

Unit 35

- 1 1 criminal 5 thief 2 murderer 6 shoplifter 3 mugger 7 robber
 - 4 burglar/thief
- 2 1 stabbed 5 killed 2 obev 6 violence
- 3 commit 7 serious
 - 4 the museum, stole 8 attacked

Unit 36

- 1 c1 h2 g3 e4 b5 d6 f7 a8 i9
- 2 1 place 5 fine, sentence 2 prove 6 may/might
 - 3 accused 7 evidence
 - 4 witness 8 arrest

Unit 37

1 1 obesity 5 heart attack 2 allergy 6 cancer 3 stroke 7 arthritis 4 asthma 8 diabetes

- 2 1 She has suffered from asthma for years.
 - 2 He had a heart attack and died last week.
 - 3 My grandfather is going deaf so I have to shout to him.
 - 4 It's an infectious disease so he can't mix with other people.
 - 5 The doctor told me to breathe in deeply through my nose.
 - 6 She is allergic to some medicines.
 - 7 Obesity can lead to heart disease.
 - 8 He suffers from memory loss and can't remember where he puts things.

- 1 1 g 2 e 3 i 4 b 5 k 6 a 7 c 8 h 9 f 10 d
- 2 1 objective
- 5 politician
- 2 oppose
- 6 power 7 consist
- 3 priority 4 parliament

parriamen

- 1 1 Yes 5 Yes 2 No 6 No 3 Yes 7 Yes 4 Yes 8 No
- 2 1D 2S 3D 4S 5D 6D'7D 8S

Unit 40

Unit 39

- 1 assassination, released
- 2 president, attempted, assassinate
- 3 Revolution
- 4 established
- 5 discovered
- 6 Princess
- 7 republic
- 8 gained

Media and entertainment

Unit 41

- 1 1 threats 4 current 2 declined 5 protesting 3 scares 6 daily
- 2 1 I enjoy all sorts of cultural events, such as exhibitions and concerts.
 - 2 I think he must receive a **pension** because he's nearly 70.
 - 3 I saw a strange newspaper headline the other day: 'Man bites dog'.
 - 4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the **editor** for three years.
 - 5 The government claims that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it.

6 My cousin's a newspaper journalist; he writes articles about current affairs.

Unit 42

- 1 1 editing 5 incredible 2 movie 6 plot
 - 3 role 7 disappointing 4 winner 8 swearing

The word in the grey squares is 'director'.

Unit 43

1 1 automatic 5 realistic 2 abstract 6 landscape 3 studio 7 sort 4 out of 8 skilled

Unit 44

1 1 conductor P 7 trumpet
2 lead singer P 8 melody
3 keyboard player P 9 flautist P
4 composer P 10 guitarist P
5 flute 11 saxophone
6 band P 12 solo artist P

Unit 45

- 1 1 ground, stadium 4 track, circuit 2 court, umpire 5 club, referee 3 coach, manager 6 deep, standard
- 2 1 constructing 5 interrupted 2 capacity 6 crowd 3 supported 7 championship 8 length, width

Unit 46

1 1e 2h 3b 4c 5f 6i 7d

Unit 47

1 1 Yes 5 No 2 Yes 6 No 3 No 7 No 4 Yes 8 No

- 1 1 Everyone parades through the main streets in the town.
 - 2 The people in the neighbourhood where I live are very friendly.
 - 3 It's a two-day festival, which we have every year.
 - 4 It was quite a wild party; we had great fun.
 - 5 Do you ever take part / participate in parades?
 - 6 I enjoy the carnival: it means a lot to me.
 - 7 She wore a really striking dress with gold flowers on it.
 - 8 We all had to throw a ball and try to hit the moving object.

Work and study

Unit 49

- 1 1 You have to follow his instructions.
 - 2 Don't communicate with anyone.
 - 3 Your attitude is important.
 - 4 I was relieved to finish the exam.
 - 5 Devote ten minutes to making notes.
 - 6 He would never cheat in an exam.
 - 7 If you don't succeed, try again.
 - 8 Are dictionaries essential?

Unit 50

- 1 Correct answers
 - 1 seminar, lecture
 - 2 at home, away from home
 - 3 Professors, Tutors
 - 4 take out a loan, try to get a scholarship
 - 5 have a debate, take notes
 - 2 1 Our seminar started on time at 10.00.
 - 2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall of residence.
 - 3 How much were the tuition fees for your summer course?
 - 4 We had to hurry but we arrived just in time for the beginning of the lecture.
 - 5 At the moment, she's **doing** some medical research as part of her studies.
 - 6 I would like to have the chance/ opportunity to study abroad, perhaps in Canada.
 - 7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous assessment.
 - 8 Do you study away from home?

Unit 51

1.1	vacancy	5	assess
2	advice	6	require
3	acknowledge	7	automatically
4	valid	8	process

2 1 apply 5 references 2 interview 6 candidates 3 feedback 7 in 4 contact 8 permit

Unit 52

- 1 carpenter/plumber
- 2 nanny
- 3 civil servant / estate agent
- 4 electrician/mechanic
- 5 sales rep / travel agent
- 6 plumber/carpenter
- 2 1 experience, profession
 - 2 arrangements, agent
 - 3 servant, career, service
 - 4 training, qualifications
 - 5 products, rep

Unit 53

1	1	involved	7	resign
	2	challenging	8	elsewhere
	3	promoted	9	work
	4	dealing	10	charge
	5	transferred	11	responsibility
	6	complaints		

2	1	appoint	6	duties
	2	reward	7	clerical
	3	notice	8	solve
	4	unemployed	Q	handle

5 prospects

The word in the grey squares is 'promotion'.

Unit 54

1	1	stressful	5	shift
	2	right	6	overtime
		trade union	7	bonus
	4	entitled	8	strike

Business

Unit 55

- 1 finance, loss, tax, revenue, interest, cash flow, profit, loan, turnover, bank, capital
- 2 1 rose slightly
 - 2 fell/dropped sharply
 - 3 remained unchanged/stable
 - 4 dropped/fell by
 - 5 fluctated
 - 6 slight increase/growth

Unit 56

11G 2B 3B 4G 5B 6G 7G

2	1	even	5	quality
	2	growth	6	market
	3	risks	7	reputation
	4	rivals	8	shares

1e 2h 3g 4b 5a 6d 7c 8f

2 1 Innovation 5 contract 2 crucial 6 potential 3 research 7 feedback 4 invest 8 diversify

Unit 58

1 danger/threat advice/tip ability/skill plan/strategy aim/objective reply/response data/information need/demand

2 1 strengths, weaknesses 5 objectives 2 opportunities 6 ignore 7 forecasts 4 assume 8 evaluate

Social English

Unit 59

1 1 definitely go 4 he'll go 2 doubt (if/that) 5 likely 3 to be a disaster 6 pessimistic

Unit 60

1 except 5 completely 2 exactly 6 apart 3 alike 7 main 4 compared 8 comparison

Unit 61

1 1 make 5 to 2 afraid 6 tied

3 How/What 7 postpone / put off 4 available/free 8 confirm

Unit 62

1 1 keen 5 all 2 fond 6 bear/stand

3 mad 7 keen 4 adore/love 8 loathe/detest

2 Answers from a British person

I enjoy physical exercise, especially long walks.

2 I'm fond of the people I work with.

3 I'm no good at dancing, so I don't enjoy it very much.

4 Yes, I absolutely adore chocolate!

5 In fact I do like shellfish, though I'm allergic to mussels.

6 Lagree. I can't stand waiting in queues.

7 In fact I like cheese very much.

8 I hate cold weather, especially if it's wet as well.

Unit 63

1 1 not in favour of, against

2 is to blame, is his fault

3 in my opinion, as far as I'm concerned

4 in principle, in theory

5 is opposed to, is against

6 I believe, I reckon

2 1 in favour 5 consider 2 fault 6 in principle 3 sensible 7 support

4 of

Unit 64

1 1 He disobeys me.

2 They force us to work hard.

3 You aren't allowed to eat here. or Eating here isn't allowed.

4 It's compulsory to wear a uniform. or Wearing a uniform is compulsory.

5 She let us sit down.

6 The boss insists that we go.

7 His behaviour in class is terrible.

8 He punishes us if we're late.

Unit 65

1 1 fact 7 afraid

2 expecting 8 actually/apparently

3 definitely 9 smoothly 4 intending 10 going 5 hope 11 guess

6 intention

Unit 66

1 1U 2U 3H 4U 5H 6U 7H 8U 9U

2 1 There's no point in going out.

2 You should speak to her in person.

3 I would ask an expert for advice.

4 Have you ever considered going to live abroad?

5 She joined the tennis club.

6 Waiting in queues gets on my nerves.

7 I'm not bothered about the cost of the meal.

8 Did she mention anything to you about the divorce? or Did she mention the divorce to you?

Unit 67

1 1 mind 4 case

2 out 5 assistance/help

3 beware 6 careful

Language

Unit 68

1 1 because 5 though 2 all the same 6 however 7 50 3 still

4 furthermore 8 whereas

2 Text 1

1 result 3 provided

2 more Text 2

4 due 6 as/since 5 addition 7 However/ Nevertheless

Unit 69

1 1 rare, common

2 adequate, inadequate

3 old-fashioned, modern/contemporary

4 urban, rural

5 crowded, deserted

6 artificial, real

7 rude, polite

8 satisfied, dissatisfied

9 firm, soft

10 effective, ineffective

Unit 70

1 1 underneath

2 nowadays / these days

3 throughout

4 eventually

5 onto

6 occasionally

7 towards

8 Meanwhile / In the meantime

Unit 71

1 IN: in general, in favour of, in public, in a

ON: insist on, rely on, on purpose, depend on, on board

OF: get rid of, capable of, take care of,

approve of

Unit 72

1 1 non-acceptable unacceptable

2 unrelevant irrelevant

3 dissecure insecure

4 an unalcoholie a non-alcoholic

5 disfasten unfasten

6 unhonest dishonest

7 inpatient impatient

Unit 73

2 1 judgement 5 preference 2 definition 6 cruelty 3 reaction 7 extension 4 powerful 8 harmless

Unit 74

1 1 I don't recall meeting your parents.

2 He refused to leave.

3 Carrie admitted stealing the necklace.

4 Mario accused me of taking all the food.

5 She regrets moving to London.

6 Boris reminds me of your brother.

7 He blamed me for the mistake.

8 I tend to work in the evening.

9 Cal pretended to be a doctor.

10 She persuaded me to leave.

Unit 75

1 1 I take after my mother.

2 why don't you give it away?

3 I don't get on very well with my boss.

4 just leave it out

5 put his coat on / put on his coat

6 I can't work out

7 switch the TV on

8 go over it

Unit 76

1 1 sharply 5 rarely 2 strongly 6 widely 3 roughly 7 seriously 4 rather 8 totally

Styles of English

Unit 77

- 1 1 are things / 's it going?
 - 2 up to
 - 3 much
 - 4 up
 - 5 turned her down
 - 6 You're joking! / You must be joking!
 - 7 reckons
 - 8 rubbish
 - 9 loads/masses
 - 10 Yeah
 - 11 I'd better be off
 - 12 Cheers!
- 2 1 fancy 4 hurry up

- 2 reckon 5 Tell me a joke 3 hang on 6 keep an eye on someone

Unit 78

- 1 1 Sir or Madam 6 whether
 - 2 regards 7 in particular
- 8 hearing
- 3 Yours 4 further 5 enclose
 - 9 don't hesitate 10 All the best
- 2 1 Further
- 7 whether/if 8 appreciate
- 2 deposit 3 commencing 9 hesitate
 - 10 further
 - 4 further/more 5 nearby / close by 11 forward
 - 6 grateful
- 12 sincerely

Unit 79

- 1 1 identity card
 - 2 United Nations
 - 3 personal identification number
 - 4 value added tax
 - 5 curriculum vitae
- 6 internet service provider
 - 7 information technology
- 2 1 Yes, fridge
- 6 Yes, flu
- 2 No
- 7 Yes, lab
- 3 Yes, vet
- 8 No
- 4 No
- 9 Yes, gym
- 5 Yes, ad/advert 10 No

Unit 80

1 tap faucet chemist drugstore biscuit cookie lift elevator petrol gasoline wardrobe closet diary datebook rubbish garbage pavement sidewalk lorry truck



Spotlight boxes

Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page	Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page
1A	formal	10	44A	The suffix -ist	116
1B	conversation, chat, discussion,		44B	living, alive, live	117
	argument	11	45A	Suffix -er and player	118
2B	contain and include	13	45B	long, wide, deep	119
ЗА	stress and emphasize	14	46A	record	120
5B	-ish	21	46B	defeat	121
6	crazy, mad, stupid	22	47B	Compound adjectives with well	123
7A	absolutely and very	24	48A	festival, carnival, parade	124
7B	sensitive	25	50B	in time, on time	131
8A	friend	26	51	Formal language	132
8B	have a row / an argument	27	52A	career, job, profession	134
10A	wedding and marriage;		53A	dismiss, sack, fire	136
	bride and groom	30	54	time off	138
11B	discover or invent	37	55A	finance	142
12A	cause v, N	38	56A	Prefixes over- and under-	144
13B	effect n, affect v	42	56B	market	145
15C	cows and cattle	48	57	Verbs of change	146
17A	diet	54	58A	skill	148
21B	keep	63	60	compare v, comparison N	153
22B	way	65	61	be supposed to, be meant to	
23A	jewellery and material	67		+ verb	154
24	dread, look forward to	73	62	Verb + -ing	155
25	enough	74	63A	Giving opinions	156
26A	Nouns	76	65A	actually	160
26B	repair, fix, or mend sth	77	66A	point	162
28	have/get sth done	79	66B	bother	163
29B	area, region, district, part	83	68A	in addition, moreover, furthermore	168
30	passage, corridor, hall	84	68B	still	169
31A	Noun + noun	86	68C	purpose	170
31B	shape, -shaped	87	69B	-ed/-ing endings	172
32A	can + sense verbs	88	70A	over	174
32B	like	89	71A	in the end and at the end	176
33	painting and drawing	90	71B	depend on sb/sth	177
34B	loud, out loud / aloud, silent,		72A	Prefixes	178
	silence	93	73B	Adjectives ending in -ful and -less	181
35A	crime	96	75A	Separable phrasal verbs	184
35B	steal and rob	97	75B	Different meanings	185
37B	go + adjective	101	76B	rather, fairly, quite, pretty	187
38B	oppose, opposition	103	77A	stuff	191
41B	Verbs and nouns with the	444	77B	cheers	192
420	same form	111		joke	193
42B	indeed	113	78	further, further to	194
43B	photography, photograph, etc.	115	80	highway, freeway, expressway	199

Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers

ATM / er ,ti: 'em/ 79 abbreviation /ə.bri:vi'eɪʃn/ 4 absolutely / absəlu:tli/ 7 abstract /'æbstrækt/ 43 academic / ækə demik/ 50 accelerate /ək'seləreit/ 21 accelerator /ək'seləreitə(r)/ 21 acceptable /ək'septəbl/ 72 access /'ækses/ 71 accessory /ək'scsəri/ 23 accident /'æksidənt/ 22 accurate /'ækjeret/ 2 accurately /'ækjərətli/ 2 accuse /ə'kju:z/ 74 accused as in the accused /o'kju:zd/ 36 achieve /ə'tfi:v/ 42, 46 achievement /əˈtfiːvmənt/ 42, acknowledge /ək'nplidz/ 51 acknowledgement /ək'nolidzmənt/ 51 actually /'æktfuəli/ 65, 76 ad (= advertisement) /æd/ 79 adapt /ə'dæpt/ 57 add /æd/ 17 addition as in in addition /ə'dıſn/ 68 adequate /'ædikwət/ 56, 69 admiration / ædmə rei[n/ 44 admire /əd'maıə(r)/ 44 admit /əd'mıt/ 74 adopt /ə'dopt/ 9 adore /ə'dɔ:(r)/ 62 advance as in in advance /od'va:ns/ 71 advantage /əd'va:ntidʒ/ 29 advantage as in take advantage of /əd'va:ntids/ 71 advert /'ædv3:t/ 79 advertise /'ædvətaiz/ 58 advertising /'ædvətaizin/ 58 advice /əd'yais/ 51 advise /od'vaiz/ 51 afraid as in I'm afraid ... /o'freid/ 61 afraid as in I'm afraid not/so /əˈfreɪd/ 65 affect /ə'fekt/ 13

afford /ə'fɔ:d/ 18 after a while / a:ftər ə 'waıl/ 2 against /ə'genst/ 63 against the law /ə,genst ðə 'lo:/ 35 aggression /ə'gresn/ 6 aggressive /ə'qresiv/ 6 ahead /ə'hed/ 57 aid N, v /eid/ 41 AIDS /eidz/ 79 aim /eim/ 2, 38, 58 aircraft /'eəkra:ft/ 67 alarm N /əˈlɑːm/ 19 alarmed /ə'la:md/ 69 alarming /əˈlɑ:mɪŋ/ 69 album (= music collection) /'ælbəm/ 44 album as in photo album /'ælbəm/ 43 alcoholic / ælkə holik/ 72 alike /əˈlaɪk/ 60 alive /ə'larv/ 44 all over /,o:1 'əʊvə(r)/ 70 all over the world /ˌɔːl ˌɔʊvə ðə 'wɜːld/ 45 all the best /.o:l ðə 'best/ 78 all the same / o:l ðə 'seim/ 68 allergic /ə'la:dʒɪk/ 37 allergy /'ælədzi/ 37 allowed /ə'laod/ 64 allow /ə'lao/ 64 ally /'ælai/ 39 aloud /ə'laod/ 34 alphabet /'ælfəbet/ 47 alphabetical / ælfə'betikl/ 47 already /5:1'redi/ 70 alter /'o:ltə(r)/ 57 alternative /ɔ:l'tɜ:nɔtɪv/ 4 although /ɔ:l'ðəu/ 68 amateur /'æmətə(r)/ 46 amateur photographer /,æmətə fə'togrəfə(r)/ 43 amazed /o'meizd/ 7, 69 amazing /ə'meizin/ 69 ambition /æm'bɪʃn/ 6 ambitious /æm'bifos/ 6 ambulance /'æmbjələns/ 22 among /ə'mʌŋ/ 70 amongst /ə'mʌŋst/ 70

amount /əˈmaont/ 18 amused /ɔ'miu:zd/ 69 amusing /ɔ'mju:zɪŋ/ 69 analyse /'ænəlaiz/ 11 analysis /əˈnæləsis/ 11 ancestor /'ænsestə(r)/ 9 anniversary / æni'v3:səri/ 10 announce /o'nauns/ 38 announcement /ə'naonsmənt/ 38 annual /'ænjuəl/ 55 antisocial / enti'səu/1/8 anxious /'ænkʃəs/ 7 apart /p'pa:t/ 60 apartment /ə'pa:tmənt/ 80 apostrophe /ə'postrəfi/ 4 appalling /ə'pɔ:lɪŋ/ 66 apparently /əˈpærəntli/ 63 appeal N, v /o'pi:l/ 44 appear /ɔ'pɪə(r)/ 32 appearance /ə'piərəns/ 5 application / æpli kei [n/ 5] apply /ə'plaɪ/ 51 appoint /o'point/ 53 appointment /ə'pɔintmənt/ 24 appreciate as in I would appreciate it if ... /ə'pri:fieit/ 78 approach /ə'prəutʃ/ 48 appropriate /ə'prəopriat/ 2 approve /ə'pru:v/ 71 approximately /əˈprpksɪmətli/ 11, 76 apricot /'eiprikpt/ 16 area /'eəriə/ 29 argue /'a:qju:/ 8 argument /'a:gjumənt/ 1,8 army /'a:mi/ 39 arrangements /o'reindyments/ 52 arrest /ə'rest/ 36 arrogance /'ærəgəns/ 6 arrogant /'ærəqənt/ 6 arthritic /q:'0ritik/ 37 arthritis /α:'θraites/ 37 artichoke /'a:tɪtfəʊk/ 16 artificial / a:ti'fifl/ 69 artist /'a:tist/ 33

as /æz, əz/ 68

as a result /əz ə rı'zalt/ 68 as an alternative /az an o:l'ta:notiv/ 61 as far as I'm concerned ... /əz fa:r əz 'aim kən sa:nd/63 as long as /əz 'lon əz/ 68 ask as in if you ask me ... /a:sk/63asleep /ə'sli:p/ 19 asparagus /ə'spærəgəs/ 16 assassinate /ə'sæsineit/ 40 assassination /ə,sæsı'neı[n/ 40 assault /ɔ'sɔ:lt/ 35 assess /ə'ses/ 51 assessment /ə'sesmənt/ 51 asset /'æset/ 56 assistance /ə'sıstəns/ 67 assume /ə'sju:m/ 58, 65 assumption /ə'sʌmpʃn/ 58 asthma /'æsmə/ 37 astonished /ə'stpnift/ 7, 69 astonishing /əˈstɒnɪʃɪŋ/ 69 at first /ət 'fs:st/ 71 at home /at 'haum/ 50 at least /ət 'li:st/ 71 at the end /st \delta i 'end/ 71 athlete /'æ0li:t/ 45 athletics /æ0'letrks/ 45, 46 atmosphere /'ætmosfio(r)/ 13 atrocious /a'traufas/ 66 attack N /ə'tæk/ 15 attack v /ə'tæk/ 15.35 attacker /o'tæko(r)/ 35 attempt n, v / a'tempt / 40attend /o'tend/ 50, 51 attention /ə'tenin/ 47 attic /'ætɪk/ 30 attitude /'ætɪtju:d/ 49 attorney /ə'tɜ:ni/ 80 attract sb's attention /ə trækt ... ə'ten n/ 47 author /'ɔ: $\theta \Rightarrow (r)/47$ autobiography /,ɔ:təbaı'pqrəfi/ 47 automatic /.o:to'mætik/ 43 automatically /p:təˈmætɪkli/ 51 available /ə'veiləbl/ 61 average /ˈævərɪʤ/ 15 avocado / ævə ka:dəu/ 16 avoid /ə'vəid/ 3, 22 awake as in wide awake /ə'weik/ 19 award N /ə'wo:d/ 42 aware /ə'weə(r)/ 2

away from home
/ə,wei from 'həom/ 50
axe N, v /æks/ 41

axe N, v /æks/ 41 BBC (British Broadcasting Corporation) /,bi: ,bi: 'si:/ 79 back /bæk/ 70 back sth up / bæk ... 'Ap/ 66 background /'bækgraond/ 33 backward(s) /'bækwədz/ 20 bad diet / bæd 'darst/ 17 bad for you /'bæd fə .ju:/ 17 bake /beik/ 17 balanced diet /.bælonst 'daiət/ 17 bald /bo:ld/ 5 ban v /bæn/ 64 band /bænd/ 44 bandage /'bændids/ 20 bang N /bæn/ 26 bang v /bæn/ 20 bank loan /'bænk loon/ 55 bank /bænk/ 12 bargain /'ba:qm/ 18 barrier /'bæriə(r)/ 67 barrister /'bærrsto(r)/ 80 based /berst/ 51 basement /'beismont/ 30 basic /'beisik/ 69 basil /'bæzl/ 16 bass as in sea bass /bæs/ 16 battle /'bætl/ 39 be bothered / bi 'boðəd/ 66 be going to / bi 'gaoin ta/ 65 be keen on / bi 'ki:n on/ 62 be meant to / bi 'ment tə/ 61 be stuck / bi 'stak/ 22 be supposed to /bi sə'pəust tə/ 61 be to blame for sth / bi tə 'bleim fə/ 63 be up to sb / bi 'Ap to/ 64 beach /bi:tf/ 12 beak /bi:k/ 15 bear N /beə(r)/ 15 bear as in can't bear /beə(r)/ 62

beat /bi:t/ 46

beauty contest

bee /bi:/ 15

beg /beg/ 29

/'bju:ti_kontest/ 48

beetroot /'bi:tru:t/ 16

behave /br'herv/ 64

because /bi'kpz, bi'kəz/ 68

behaviour /bi'heiviə(r)/ 64 believe /bɪˈliːv/ 63 belong /br'lon/ 18 belt /belt/ 23 beneath /bɪˈni:θ/ 70 benefit /'benifit/ 25 beside /bi'said/ 70 best man / best 'mæn/ 10 best wishes /'best_wisiz/ 78 better as in I'd better be off /'betə(r)/ 77 beware /bi'weo(r)/ 67 beyond /bi'jond/ 70 bike /baik/ 79 billfold /'bilfaold/ 80 biography /bai'pgrəfi/ 47 bite /bart/ 24 bitterly /'bɪtəli/ 76 bitterly cold / bitoli 'kəʊld/ 13 blame as in be to blame /bleim/ 63 blame v /bleim/ 74 bland /bland/ 32 blanket /'blænkit/ 31 bleed /bli:d/ 20 blind /blamd/ 37 block /blok/ 22 blood /blad/ 20 blossom /'blosom/ 48 blouse /blauz/ 23 blow-dry /blau drai/ 28 blue as in out of the blue /blu:/ 77 board /bo:d/ 79 board as in on board /bo;d/ 71 boat /bəot/ 12 boil /boil/ 17 bomb /bom/ 39 bomb scare /'bom_skep(r)/41 bone /boun/ 15 bonnet /'bonit/ 21 bonus /'bounos/ 54 book /bok/ 47 boot (of a car) /bu:t/ 21 boot (item of clothing) /bu:t/ 23 bother /'boðə(r)/ 66 bottom /'bptəm/ 33 bound to /'baond tə/ 59 box /boks/ 31 boxer /'bpksə(r)/ 45 bra /bra:/ 23 bracelet /'breislət/ 23 brackets /'brækits/ 4 brain /brem/ 37 brake N, v /breik/ 21

brand /brænd/ 56 break down / breik 'daun/ 22 break even / breik 'i:vn/ 56 break into /'breik .into/ 35 break out / breik 'aut/ 39 break the law / breik ða 'lo:/ 35 break a record /breik ə 'rekə:d/ 46 breath /breθ/ 34 breathe /bri:ð/ 34, 37 breeze /bri:z/ 13 breezy /bri:zi/ 13 brick /brik/ 30 bride /braid/ 10 bridesmaid / braidzmeid/ 10 bridge /brids/ 31 bright /brait/ 33 brightness /'braitnes/ 33 brilliant /'briliant/ 46 bring sb up / brin ... 'Ap/ 9 broad shoulders /_bro:d 'fauldaz/ 5 broccoli /'brokəli/ 16 broke /brəok/ 18 broom /bru:m/ 27 browse /braoz/ 47 bruised /bru:zd/ 20 bucket /'bakit/ 27 build /bild/ 3 built-in flash / bilt in 'flæs/ 43 built-up / bilt 'Ap/ 29 bulb as in light bulb /balb/ 26 bull /bol/ 15 burglar /'bs:glə(r)/ 35 burglary /'bs:gləri/ 35 burial /'berial/ 10 burn /bs:n/ 20 burst /b3:st/ 12 burst into tears /.ba:st intə 'tiəz/ 34 burst out laughing /ba:st aut 'lu:fin/ 34 bury /'beri/ 10 business trip /'biznos ,trip/ 22 busy /'bizi/ 69 button /'bʌtn/ 23 by /bai/ 70 by chance / bar 'tfg:ns/ 71

c (cent(s)) /sent(s)/ 79 cl (centilitre(s)) /'senttli:tə(z)/ 79 cm (centimetre(s)) /'sentmi:tə(z)/ 79 ct (cent(s)) /sent(s)/ 79 CV (curriculum vitae) / si: 'vi:/ 79 cabinet /'kæbinət/ 34 calf /kg:f/ 15.16 calf's liver /'kg:fs livə(r)/ 16 calm /kg:m/ 66 camel /'kæml/ 15 campaign /kæm'pein/ 38 can /kæn, kən/ 32 can as in trash can /kæn/ 80 can you make it? /kən ju: 'merk it/ 61 canal /kɔˈnæl/ 12 cancel /'kænsl/ 22 cancer /'kænsə(r)/ 37 candidate /'kændidət, -deit/ 49, 51 candle /'kændl/ 31 candlestick /'kændlstik/ 31 candy /'kændi/ 80 can't bear / kg:nt 'beə(r)/ 62 can't stand / ka:nt 'stænd/ 62 cap /kæp/ 23 capable /'kerpəbl/ 71 capacity /ko'pæsəti/ 45 capital /'kæpītl/ 55 capital letter / kæpitl 'letə(r)/ 4 capsize /kæp'saiz/ 12 captain /'kæptɪn/ 45 capture /'kæptfə(r)/ 39 cardboard /'ka:dbo:d/ 31 care about /'kear a,baot/ 71 care for /'keə fə:(r), fə(r)/ 25, 52 career /kəˈrɪə(r)/ 52 carcful /'keəfl/ 67, 73 carefully /'keəfəli/ 49 careless /'kcələs/ 73 cargo ship /'ka:qəʊ ˌʃɪp/ 12 carnival /'ka:nɪvl/ 48 carp /ka:p/ 16 carpenter /'ka:pəntə(r)/ 52 carry on / kæri 'pn/ 75 carry out / kæri 'aot/ 11 case /keis/ 57 case as in in case /keis/ 67, 68 cash flow /'kæf flou/ 55 cash flow problem /'kæ∫ flao problam/ 55 catalogue /'kætəlog/ 47 catch (= find and hold) /kætf/ 36 catch (= hear/understand) /kætf/ 32

cattle /kætl/ 15

cause N /kɔ:z/ 12

cause v /kɔ:z/ 12, 24 caution /'ko:(n/ 67 cave /kerv/ 12 ceaselire /'si:sfatə(r)/ 39 celebrate /'selibreit/ 10 celery /'seləri/ 16 cellar /'selə(r)/ 30 cellist /'tfelist/ 44 cello /'tfeləo/ 44 cellphone /'sclfoon/ 80 cemetery /'semotri/ 10 cent /sent/ 79 centilitre /'sentili:tə(r)/ 79 centimetre /'sentimi:to(r)/ 79 centre /'sentə(r)/ 33 ceremony /'seromoni/ 10 challenge N /'tfælinds/ 53 challenging /'tfælindʒin/ 53 championship /'tfæmpien(tp/ 45 chance (= opportunity) /tfa:ns/ 1, 50 chance (= possibility) /tfa:ns/ 59 change /tfeindz/ 18 chapter /'tfæpto(r)/ 47 charge as in in charge /tfa:ds/ 53, 71 charge v /tfa:dz/ 36 chat /tfæt/ 1 cheat v, N /tfi:t/ 49 check-up /'tfek .np/ 24 cheerful /'tfiəfl/ 6 cheers /tfiez/ 77 chew /tfu:/ 24 chickpeas /'tʃɪkpi:z/ 16 chilly /'tfili/ 13 chimney /'tfimni/ 30 choice /tfors/ 10, 64 choose /tfu:z/ 3, 10 chop /tfpp/ 17 circle n /'ss:kl/ 31 circle v /'ss:kl/ 11 circuit /'ss:kit/ 45 circular /'ss:kiələ(r)/ 31 city as in inner city /'sɪti/ 29 civil ceremony /.sivl 'serəməni/ 10 civil servant / sivl 'sa:vant/ 52 civil service / sivl 'sa:vis/ 52 civil war / sivl 'wo:(r)/ 39 claim N /kleim/ 41,66 claim v /kleim/ 41 clam /klæm/ 16 clash N, v /klæs/ 41 clean-shaven / kli:n 'fervn/ 5

cleaner as in vacuum cleaner /'kli:nə(r)/ 27 clear /kliə(r)/ 2 clerical /'klerikl/ 53 clerk /kla:k/ 53 cliff /klif/ 12 climate /'klaimət/ 13 close /klaus/ 21 close by / klaus 'bai/ 78 close friend / klaus 'frend/ 8 closet /'klpzit/ 80 cloth /klp0/ 27 club /klab/ 45 clue as in I haven't a clue /klu:/ 77 clutch /klatf/ 21 coach (= vehicle) /kəotʃ/ 22 coach (= person) /koutf/ 45 coast /kəost/ 12 coconut /'kəʊkənʌt/ 16 cod /kpd/ 16 coffin /'kpfin/ 10 collapse N, v /kə'læps/ 14 collar /'kplə(r)/ 23 collide /kə'laɪd/ 22 collocation / kplə ker[n/ 3 colon /'kəolən/ 4 colour /'kalə(r)/ 28 come round / kam 'raund/ 20 comma /'kpmə/ 4 commence /kə'mens/ 77, 78 commentator /'kpmonterto(r)/ 45 commit a crime /kə mit ə 'kraim/ 35 common /'kpmən/ 69 communicate /kə'mju:nıkeıt/ 49 community /kə'mju:nəti/ 48 company /'kampəni/ 56 compare /kom'pco(r)/ 60, 74 comparison /kəm'pærisən/ 60 compete /kəm'pi:t/ 46 competition / kpmpə'tı(n/ 46 competitive /kəm'pctətiv/ 46 competitor (= sports person) /kəm'petitə(r)/ 46 competitor (= rival company) /kəm'petitə(r)/ 56 complain /kəm'plein/ 53, 66 complaint /kəm'pleint/ 53, 66 completely /kəm'pli:tli/ 60, 76 complex /'kpmpleks/ 2 complicated /'komplikeitid/ 2 compose /kəm'pəuz/ 44 composer /kəm'pəuzə(r)/ 44

compromise N, V /'kpmpromaiz/ 39 compulsory /kəm'palsəri/ 64 concentrate /'kpnsəntreit/ 19 concerned /kən'sa:nd/ 25 concrete /'kpnkri:t/ 31 conditions /kən'dı[nz/ 54 conductor /kən'daktə(r)/ 44 confirm /kənˈfɜ:m/ 11, 51, 61 confirmation /,konfo'mer[n/ 11, 51 conflict /'kpnflikt/ 39 connect /ko'nckt/ 4 connecting flight /kə nektin 'flatt/ 22 conscious /'konfəs/ 20 consequently /'konsikwantli/ 68 consider /kən'sıdə(r)/ 63, 66 considerable /kən'sıdərəbl/ 14 consideration /kən_sidə'reifn/ 66 consist /kən'sist/ 38 constituency /kən'stitjuənsi/ 38 construct (= make a sentence) /kən'strakt/ 1 construct (= build) /kən'strakt/ 45 construction (= sentence) /kən'strak[n/] construction (= building) /kənˈstrʌkʃn/ 45 consultant /kən'saltənt/ 25 contact v /'kpntækt/ 51 contact lenses /'kontækt_lenziz/ 5 contain /kən'tem/ 2 contemporary /kən'temprəri/ 69 contest /'kontest/ 46, 48 context /'kpntekst/ 1 continuous assessment /kən_tinjuəs ə'sesmənt/ 50 contract /'kpntrækt/ 57 contrast N /'kontra:st/ 68 contrast v /kən'trq:st/ 68 control as in in control /kən'trəul/ 39 convenient /kən'vi:niənt/ 29 conversation / konvəˈseɪʃn/ 1 convert /kən'vs:t/ 30 convinced /kən'vınst/ 76 cookie /'kuki/ 80 cope /kəop/ 71 corner /'kɔ:nə(r)/ 33

corridor /'kprido:(r)/ 30 cost a fortune /,kpst ə 'fɔ:tʃu:n/ 18 costs as in operating costs /kpsts/ 55 costume /'kostju:m/ 48 cotton /'kptn/ 23, 26 couple /'kapl/ 10 court (for tennis, badminton, etc.) /kp:t/ 45 court as in go to court /ko:t/ 36 courtroom /'ko:tru:m/ 36 cover n / kavo(r)/ 47 cover v /'kavo(r)/ 20 cow /kao/ 15 crab /kræb/ 16 cracked /krækt/ 26 cramped /kræmpt/ 69 crash /kræf/ 22 crazy /'kreizi/ 6 crazy about /'kreizi ə baut/ 62 creamy /'kri;mi/ 73 create /kri'ent/ 43 creature /'kri:tfə(r)/ 15 cremate /krə'ment/ 10 cremation /krəˈmeɪ[n/ 10 crime /kraım/ 35 criminal /'krimin!/ 35 crisis /'kraisis/ 39 critical (= dangerous) /'kritikl/ 39 critical (of sth/sb) /'kritikl/ 46 criticize /'krıtısaız/ 46 crops /krops/ 14 cross /krps/ 67 crowd /kraod/ 45 crowded /'kraudid/ 69 crucial /'kru:ʃl/ 14, 57 cruel /kru:əl/ 73 cruelty /'kru:əlti/ 73 cry /krai/ 34 cultural /'kaltʃərəl/ 41 culture /'kaltfə(r)/ 41 curious /'kjoəriəs/ 69 current affairs /karent e'feez/ 41 currently /'karəntli/ 30 curriculum vitae /kə,rıkjələm 'vi:taı/ 79 curved /k3:vd/ 31 cut n /kat/ 20 cut v /kAt/ 28 cut down / kat 'daun/ 17 cycling /'saiklin/ 46

DVD / di: vi: 'di:/ 79 daily /'derli/ 41 damage N, V /'dæmids/ 14 damp /dæmp/ 32 danger /'deindzo(r)/ 67 dark /da:k/ 33 dark-skinned / da:k 'skind/ 5 dash /dæf/ 4 data /'deitə/ 58 datebook /'dentbook/ 80 day return / dei ri'ta:n/ 22 day trip /'der trip/ 22 dead /ded/ 10 deaf /def/ 37 deal with /'di:l wið/ 53 death /de0/ 10 death toll /'de0 tol/ 14 debate /di'beit/ 50 debt /det/ 18 decline N. v /di'klaın/ 41 decorate /'dekəreit/ 26 decrease v /dɪ'kri:s/ 37 decrease N /'di:kri:s/ 37 deep /di:p/ 12, 45 deep sleep / di:p 'sli:p/ 19 defeat N /di'fi:t/ 46 defeat v /dr'fi:t/ 40, 46 defence as in the defence /dr'fens/ 36 defend /dr'fend/ 36 defendant /dr'fendant/ 36 define /di'fain/ 3, 73 definitely /'definatli/ 59, 65 definitely not /,definatli 'npt/ 65 definition / defr'nr [n/ 3, 73 delayed /dr'lerd/ 22 deli /'deli/ 79 deliberately /dr'lıbərətli/ 71 delicatessen / deliko tesn/ 79 delighted /di'laitid/ 7 demand /dr/mg:nd/ 58 demonstrate /'demonstreit/ 41 demonstration /demon'streifn/ 41 denim skirt / denim 'ska:t/ 23 dental surgery /'dentl_ss:dzori/ 24 deny /dr'nar/ 74 department /dr'pa:tmənt/ 53 depend /di'pend/ 8,71 dependent /dr'pendent/ 63 deposit /dr'ppzit/ 78 depressed /dr'prest/ 37 depressing /di'presin/ 29 depression /dr'presn/ 37

depth /depθ/ 12, 45 deserted /dr'za:tid/ 69 desperately /'desperatli/ 76 despite /di'spart/ 68 destroy /di'stroi/ 4 destruction /di'strak [n/ 14 detail as in in detail /'di:teil/ 2 details /'di:teilz/ 4 determined /dr'ta:mmd/ 39 detest /di'test/ 62 develop (= grow/increase) /dr'velop/ 20 develop (a film) /dɪ'veləp/ 43 devote /dr'vəut/ 49 diabetes / darə bi:ti:z/ 37 diabetic / daiə betik/ 37 diagonal /dar'æqənl/ 31 diary /'darəri/ 80 die /dai/ 10 diet /'daret/ 17 different /'difrant/ 60 digital camera /_didxttl 'kæmərə/ 43 direct /də'rekt, dı-, daı-/ 42 director /dəˈrektə(r), dı-, daı-/ 42 dirt /da:t/ 27 dirty /'da:ti/ 27 disability / disə biləti/ 37 disabled /dis'eibld/ 37 disadvantage /.disəd'va:ntidz/ 29 disappear / disə'piə(r)/ 13, 32, disappearance /disə'piərəns/ 73 disappointing /,disə'pointin/ 42, 69 disappointed / disa'pointid/ 69 disapprove /disə'pru:v/ 71 disaster /di'za:stə(r)/ 14, 59, 77 discount /'diskaont/ 18 discover /di'skayə(r)/ 11, 40 discovery /dr'skayəri/ 11.40 discuss /dr'skas/ 1 discussion /dɪˈskʌʃn/ 1 disease /dr'zi:z/ 13, 37 disgusted /dis'qastid/ 69 disgusting /dis'qastin/ 42, 69 dish /drf/ 17 dishonest /dis'pnist/ 6 dislike /dɪs'laɪk/ 62 disloyal /dis'lorel/ 8, 72 dismiss /dis'mis/ 53 disobedient / disə'bi:diənt/ 64

disobev / disa bea -display as in on display /dr'splei/ 43 disqualify /dis kwplifar 49 dissatisfaction /dis sætis fæk in 66 dissatisfied / dis'sætisfaid 66 69 distance /'distans/ 33 district /'distrikt/ 29 diversify /dai'v3:sifai/ 57 divide /dr'vard/ 4 dizzy /'dızi/ 20 do overtime /.du: 'oovotaim/ 54 do research /,du: ri's3:tf, 'ri:s3:tf/ 50, 57 do revision / du: rı'vıʒn/ I do up /.du: 'Ap/ 72 do the washing up /,du: ðə ,wp/in 'Ap/ 27 doctor's surgery /'doktəz sa:dəri/ 24 donkey /'donki/ 15 don't bother /.daunt 'boða(r)/ 66 door handle /'do: hændl/ 21 doubt /daot/ 59 doubt as in I doubt it /daut/ 65 downturn /'daonts:n/ 58 dozen /'dazn/ 39 drag /dræg/ 34 drama /'dra:mə/ 42 dramatic /drə'mætɪk/ 37,42 draw /dro:/ 33 drawback /'dro:bæk/ 29 drawing /'dro:m/ 33, 43 dread /dred/ 24 dreadful /'dredfl/ 66 dream /dri:m/ 19 dress /dres/ 23 dress up / dres 'Ap/ 48 dressing /'dresin/ 20 dries up / draiz 'Ap/ 12 drill /dril/ 26 drink a toast /,drmk a 'taust/ 10 drive /draw/ 30 driver as in racing driver /'drarvə(r)/ 45. drizzle /'drizl/ 13 drizzling /'drizlin/ 13 drop N, v /drpp/ 55 drop (of rain) /drpp/ 13 drought /draut/ 14 drown /draon/ 12

drugstore /'dragsto:(r)/ 80 drummer /'dramə(r)/ 44 dry up /ˌdraɪ 'ap/ 12 duck /dak/ 16 due (= expected) /dju:/ 22 due to /'dju: tə/ 68 dull /dal/ 6 during /'djoərin/ 70 dust N, v /dast/ 27 dustbin /'dastbin/ 80 dusty /'dasti/ 27 duty /'dju:ti/ 53

EU (European Union) /,i: 'ju:/ 79 eagle /'i:ql/ 15 earrings /'iərinz/ 23 earth /3:θ/ 11 earthquake /'s:θkweik/ 14 easy-going / i:zi 'gəum/ 6 economical / i:kə'npmɪkl/ 73 edge /edz/ 70 edit /'edit/ 41, 42 editing /'editin/ 42 editor /'editə(r)/ 41 effect /i'fekt/ 13 effective /1'fektiv/ 2.69 effectively /i'fektivli/ 2 efficient /i'fi[nt/ 69 effort /'efat/ 56 elbow /'elbao/ 20 elect /i'lekt/ 38 election /i'lekfn/ 38 electrical /i'lektrikl/ 52 electrician /r,lek'trr[n/ 52 elegant /'eligant/ 23 elephant /'elifant/ 15 elevator /'eliveitə(r)/ 80 elsewhere / els'wea(r)/ 53 embarrassed /im'bærəst/ 69 embarrassing /im'bærəsin/ 69

/r'ma:dənsi ˌsa:visiz/ 22
emigrate /'emigreit/ 9
emotion /r'məofn/ 7
cmotional /r'məofənl/ 7
emphasis /'emfəsis/ 3
emphasize /'emfəsaiz/ 3
employ /m'pləi/ 56
employee /im'pləii:/ 56
employer /im'pləiə(r)/ 56
enable /r'neibl/ 74
enclose /m'kləoz/ 78
encourage /in'kʌrɪdz/ 2, 74
encouragement
/in'kʌrɪdzmənt/ 2

emergency services

encouraging /m'karidzin/ 2 encyclopedia /ın.saiklə pi:diə/47 end as in at/in the end /end/ 71 end up / end 'Ap/ 22 enemy /'enomi/ 39 energetic / enə'dzetik/ 6 energy /'enədzi/ 6 engine /'endzin/ 21 engineering /endalniərin/ 52 enormous /i'no:mos/ 30 enough /r'nxf/ 25 enquiry /m'kwarəri/ 53 entertainer / entə temə(r)/ 48 entertaining / entə 'temm/ 42 entertainment /entə'teinmənt/ 48 enthusiasm /m'0ju:ziæzəm/ 2

/ˌcntə'teinmənt/ 48
enthusiasm /m'0ju:ziæzəm/ 2
enthusiastic /mˌ0ju:zi'æstik/ 2
entitled /m'tartld/ 54
entire /m'tarə(r)/ 41
entry /'entri/ 3
envious /'enviəs/ 7
environment
/m'yarrənmənt/ 13

/m'varrənmənt/ 13 environmentalist /m,varrən'mentəlist/ 13

equivalent /r'kwrvolont/ 42 erupt /r'rapt/ 14 eruption /r'rapʃn/ 14 especially /r'speʃəli/ 78 essential /r'senʃl/ 49, 69 establish /r'stæblɪʃ/ 40 establishment

/r'stæblı∫mont/ 40 estate agent

/r'stert 'erdənt/ 52 European Union

/joərə,pi:ən 'ju:niən/ 79
evacuate /ı'vækjueɪt/ 14
evacuation /ı,vækju'eɪʃn/ 14
evaluate /ɪ'væljueɪt/ 58
evaluation /ı,vælju'eɪʃn/ 58
even /'i:vn/ 33
even as in break even /'i:vn/ 56
even though /'i:vn ,ðəʊ/ 68
eventually /ɪ'ventfuəli/ 70
everyday /'evrideɪ/ 2
evidence /'evidəns/ 36
exactly the same

/ɪgˌzæktli ðə ˈseɪm/ 60 examine /ɪgˈzæmɪn/ 24 examiner /ɪgˈzæmɪnə(r)/ 49 example as in for example /ɪgˈzɑːmpl/ 3 except /ik'sept/ 60 exclamation mark

/ˌeksklə'merʃn ˌma:k/ 4 exercise /'eksəsaiz/ 17 exhausted /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ 19 exhibition /ˌeksɪ'bɪʃn/ 43 exist /ɪg'zɪst/ 11 existence /ɪg'zɪstəns/ 11 expand /ɪk'spænd/ 2 expect /ɪk'spekt/ 59, 65 expect as in I expect so /ɪk'spekt/ 65

expect a baby/child /ik,spekt ə 'berbi, 'tʃaild/ 5 expectancy as in life expectancy /ik'spektənsi/ 15

expected /ik'spektid/ 69 experience /ik'spiəriəns/ 52 experiment n /ik'speriment/ 11 experiment v /ik'speriment/ 1 expert /'eksp3:t/ 43,66 explain /rk'splem/ 1 explanation / eksplə neifn/ 1 explode /ik'splood/ 39 exploit /ik'sploit/ 57 exploitation / eksploitei n/ 57 exploration / ekspla reifn/ 11 explore /ik'splo:(r)/ 11 explosion /ik'splauan/ 39 express /ik'spres/ 2 expression /ik'spresn/ 3 expressway /eks'preswei/ 80 extend /ik'stend/ 73 extension /ik'sten[n/ 73] extent as in to some / a certain extent /ik'stent/ 76 extinguish /ik'stingwis/ 75 extraordinary /ik'stro:dnri/ 42 extreme /ik'stri:m/ 13

fabric /ˈfæbrik/ 23
face (= do sth about) /feis/ 38
face (= look towards) /feis/ 70
face-to-face /ˌfeis tə ˈfeis/ 53
fact as in in fact /fækt/ 65, 76
fact as in in (actual) fact
/fækt/ 76
factor /ˈfæktə(r)/ 57
fail /feil/ 56
faint /femt/ 20
fair /feə(r)/ 69, 72
fairly /ˈfeəli/ 76
faithfully as in yours faithfully
/ˈfeɪθfəli/ 78

eye as in keep an eye on /aɪ/ 77

evebrows /'aibrauz/ 5

fall /fo:l/ 13, 55 fall asleep / fo:l ə'sli:p/ 19 fall out with / fo:l 'aut wið/ 8 famine /'fæmin/ 13 fan /fæn/ 42, 45 fancy (= find sb attractive) /'fænsi/ 59 fancy (= want sth) / fænsi/ 77 far-fetched / fa: 'fetft/ 11 fascinating /'fæsmertin/ 47 fashionable /'fæ[nəbl/ 23, 73 fast asleep / fa:st ə'sli:p/ 19 fasten /'fa:sn/ 72 fattening /'fætnin/ 17 fattish /'fættʃ/ 5 faucet /'fo:set/ 80 fault /fo:lt/ 63 faulty /'fo:lti/ 26 favour as in in favour of /'feivə(r)/ 63 favourite /'feivərit/ 46 fear N, v /fip(r)/ 14 feathers /'feðəz/ 15 feature /'fi:tfo(r)/ 30 fed up / fed 'Ap/ 7 fed up with / fed 'Ap wið/ 66 feedback /'fi:dbæk/ 51,57 feel /fi:1/ 32 feel like (doing sth) /'fi:l ,laɪk/ 77 feelings as in mixed feelings /'fi:linz/ 69 fees /fi:z/ 50 female /'fi:meil/ 5, 15 fence /fens/ 31 fencing /'fensin/ 46 fennel /'fenl/ 16 festival /'festivl/ 48 fetch /fetf/ 77 fiction /'fik[n/ 47 fig /fig/ 16 fight N, v /fait/ 39 fighter /'faitə(r)/ 39 figure /'figə(r)/ 5, 23filling /'film/ 24 film (for camera) /film/ 43 film (at cinema) /film/ 80 filthy /'frl0i/ 29 final /'faml/ 46 finance N /'famæns/ 52, 55 finance v /'famæns/ 55 financial /far'nænsl/ 55 find a solution /,faind ə sə'lu:ʃn/ 53 fine N. v /fain/ 36 fingerprints /'fingaprints/ 36

fire N /'faiə(r)/ 67 fire v /'fato(r)/ 53 fireworks / faiows:ks/ 48 firm /fa:m/ 69 first as in at first /fa:st/ 71 fix /fiks/ 26 fizzy drink / fizi 'drink/ 17 flag /flæg/ 45 flash /flæ[/ 43 flautist /'flo:tist/ 44 flavour /'fleivo(r)/ 32 flexibility / fleksə bıləti/ 50 flexible /'fleksəbl/ 50 float /floot/ 12 flood /flad/ 12 flour /'flavə(r)/ 17 flow /flao/ 12 flu /flu:/ 79 fluctuate /'flaktfucit/ 55 fluctuation / flaktfu'erfn/ 55 fluent /'flu:ont/ 2 fluently /'flu:ontli/ 2 flute /flu:t/ 44 fly /flat/ 15 focus N. v (= attention/attend)/'faokas/ 38 focus N, v (in photography) /'faukas/ 43 fold as in fold in half/two /faold/ 34 follow instructions /folou m'strak[nz/ 49 fond /fpnd/ 62 food scare /'fu:d ,skeə(r)/ 41 footballer /'fotbo:la(r)/ 45 for example /fər tg'za:mpl/ 3 for instance /fər 'mstəns/ 3 for sure /fə 'ʃoə(r)/ 61 forbid /fə'bid/ 64 force /fo:s/ 64 forecast N, v /'fo:ka:st/ 58 foreground /'fo:graond/ 33 foreign /'foren/ 1 foreigner /'forene(r)/ 1 formal /'fo:ml/ 1 fortune as in cost a fortune /'fo:tfu:n/ 18 forward(s) /'fo:wed(z)/ 20 foster parent /'fosto_pearant/ 9 found /faund/ 57 founder /'faondə(r)/ 57 frame /freim/ 43 free /fri:/ 61 freedom /'fri:dəm/ 50 freeway /'fri:wei/ 80

French fries / frentf 'fraiz/ 80 fridge /fridz/ 79 friends as in make friends /frendz/ 8 friendly /'frendli/ 8 friendship /'frendfip/ 8 fringe /frinds/ 28 frog /frog/ 15 from time to time /frem taim te 'taim/ 70 front /frant/ 70 frost /frost/ 13 frosty /'frpsti/ 13 frustrating /fra'streitin/ 2 frustration /fra'strei[n/ 2 fry /frai/ 17 frying pan /'frann pæn/ 17 full stop / fol 'stop/ 4 funeral /'fju:nərəl/ 10 fur /f3:(r)/ 15 furious /ˈfiʊəriəs/ 7 further /'f3:ðə(r)/ 78 further to /'fs:ðə tə/ 78 furthermore / fs:ðə'mɔ:(r)/ 68

g(gram(s))/græm(z)/79gm (gram(s)) /græm(z)/ 79 gain /gem/ 11, 56, 40 gale /qeil/ 13 gap in the market / gæp in ðə 'ma:kit/ 57 garbage /'qq:bidz/ 80 garbage can /'qa:bidz_kæn/ 80 gas (= e.g. oxygen) /gæs/ 13 gas (= gasoline) /gæs/ 80 gasoline /'qæsəli:n/ 80 gather /'qæðə(r)/ 58 gear lever /'giə li:və(r)/ 21 gear stick /'giə stik/ 21 general as in in general /'denral/ 71 generally /'dzenrəli/ 71, 76 generation / deno reisn/ 9 generosity / dzeno'rosoti/ 6 generous /'dzenərəs/ 6 gentle /'dzentl/ 73 gentleness /'dentlnes/ 73 get (= fetch) /get/ 77 get (= receive) /get/ 36, 42 get better / get 'betə(r)/ 2 get divorced / a divorce / get di'vo:st, o di'vo:s/ 9 get dressed / get 'drest/ 72 get held up / get held 'Ap/ 22 get in / get 'm/ 22

get on / get 'pn/ 75 get on with / get 'pn wið/ 75 get on sb's nerves /.get .pn 'ns:vz/ 66 get over / get 'ouvo(r)/ 25, 75 get rid of / get 'rid ov/ 71 get sth done / get ... 'dʌn/ 28 get stuck / get 'stak/ 22 get the sack / get őə 'sæk/ 53 get through / get 'θru:/ 75 get time off / get taim 'of/ 54 get to know / get to 'noo/ 8 get to like / get to 'lark/ 62 get together / get to geð o(r)/8. 61 get undressed /get an'drest/ 72 gift /grft/ 47 gist /dzist/ 1 give it a trim / grv it 5 'trim/ 28 give sb a hand / giv o 'hænd/ 77 give sb advice /,giv əd'vais/ 51 give sb feedback / grv 'fi:dbæk/ 51 give sb the sack / grv ðə 'sæk/ 53 give sth away /.giv o'wei/ 75 give sth out /,grv ,... 'aot/ 75 give up /,grv 'Ap/ 39, 75 glad /glæd/ 69 glance /gla:ns/ 32 global warming /,qləobl 'wo:mm/ 13 glue /glu:/ 26 go as in to go /gəu/ 70 go bald / goo 'bo:ld/ 5 go blind / gov 'blamd/ 37 go deaf / goo 'def/ 37 go down / goo 'daon/ 55, 75 go grey / gəʊ 'grei/ 5 go into hospital / gau inta 'hospitl/ 25 go off (= ring) / gau 'pf/ 19 go off (= explode) / gou 'pf/ 39 go on (with sth) / goo 'on/ 75 go on a diet / gao pn a 'darat/ 17 go on strike /,geo .on 'straik/ 54

go over / gau 'auva(r)/ 75 go smoothly / gao 'smu:ðli/ 65 go through / gəo 'θru:/ 1 go to court / goo to 'ko:t/ 36 go to hospital / gau to 'hospitl/ 25 go to jail / gou to 'dzeil/ 35 go to prison / gao ta 'prizn/ 35 go to sleep / gau ta 'sli:p/ 19 go up / gəo 'Ap/ 55, 75 go white / goo 'wart/ 5 go wrong / goo 'ron/ 8, 65 goal /gool/ 2, 38, 58 goat /gəʊt/ 15 gold /gəʊld/ 31 golfer /'qplfə(r)/ 45 good chance /'god ffa:ns/ 59 good for you /'qud fə ju:/ 17 goods /qodz/ 56 gorilla /gəˈrɪlə/ 15 govern /'gavn/ 38 government /'gavnment/ 38 grab /græb/ 32 gradual /'grædzuəl/ 13, 55 gradually /'græðjuəli/ 13,55 graduate n /'græðsjuət/ 50 graduate v /'grædiueit/ 50 graffiti /grəˈfiːti/ 29 gram /græm/ 79 grand /grænd/ 69 grapefruit /'qreipfru:t/ 16 grateful as in I would be grateful if ... /'greitfl/ 78 grave /greiv/ 10 gravestone /'greivstəon/ 10 grease /gri:s/ 27 greasy /'gri:si/ 27 greedy /'gri:di/ 60 gripping /ˈgrɪpɪŋ/ 42 groom /gru:m/ 10 ground (= earth's surface) /graund/ 14 ground (= sports area) /graund/ 45 group /qru:p/ 44 grow /grao/ 55, 56 growth /grau0/ 29, 55, 56 guarantee /qærən'ti:/ 66 guess N, v /ges/ 1 guess as in I guess so /ges/ 65 guest /gest/ 10 guilty /'gɪlti/ 36 guitar /gr'ta:(r)/ 44 guitarist /qı'ta:rıst/ 44 gun /gʌn/ 39

go out with / goo 'aot wid/ 8

gun battle /ˈgʌn ˌbætl/ 39 gym /dʒɪm/ 79 gymnast /ˈdʒɪmnæst/ 45 gymnastics /dʒɪmˈnæstɪks/ 45,

habit /'hæbit/ 19 hair as in lose your hair /heo(r)/ 5 haircut /'heəkʌt/ 28 hairdryer /'heədraiə(r)/ 28 hairstyle /'heostail/ 28 half as in fold in half /ha:f/ 34 half a dozen / ha:f ə 'dʌzn/ 39 * half-brother /'ha:f braðə(r)/ 9 half-sister /'ha:f sistə(r)/ 9 hall /hɔ:l/ 30 hall of residence /.ho:l ov 'rezidons/ 50 hammer /'hæmə(r)/ 26 hand as in left-hand corner. right-hand side /hænd/ 33 hand as in lend sb a hand /hænd/ 77 hand as in on the one/other. hand /hænd/ 68 hand in your notice /,hænd ,m ,jo: 'nəutis/ 53 hand sth out /,hænd 'aut/ 75 handcuffs /'hændkafs/ 36 handle as in door handle /'hændl/ 21 handle v /'hændl/ 53 handy /'hændi/ 29 hang on /,hæŋ 'on/ 77 happy /'hæpi/ 66 harbour /'ha:bə(r)/ 12 hardback /'ha:dbæk/ 47 hard-working /,ha:d 'wa:kin/ 6 harm N, v /ha:m/ 15 harm v /ha:m/ 13 harmful /'ha:mfl/ 13, 15, 73 harmless /'ha:mləs/ 15,73 have a chat / hæv ə 'tfæt/ 1 have a debate / hæv ə dı'beit/ 50 have a haircut /hæv ə 'heəkat/ 28 have a lie-in /,hæv ə 'laı ,m/ 19 have a lot in common /hæv ə lot in 'komən/ 8 have a nap / hæv ə 'næp/ 19

go out of business

/ goo aut av 'biznas/ 56

have a restless night / hæv ə .restləs 'naɪt/ 19 have a row / hav o 'rau/ 8 have a stroke /,hav o 'strouk/ 37 have an operation /,hæv on .ppə'reifn/ 25 have fun / hæv 'fan/ 48 have no choice /hæy neu 'tfois/ 64 have no intention of doing sth /,hæv 'nou in,tenfn ov ,.../ 65 have nothing in common /hæv naθin in 'komen/ 8 have sth done /,hæv 'dʌn/ 28 have the right to /hæv ðo 'rait tə/ 54 have time off / hæv tarm 'of/ 54 have toothache /.hæv 'tu:0cik/ 24 have your back to sth /,hæv ,jo: 'bæk tə ,.../ 70 headlights /'hedlaits/ 21 headline /'hedlam/ 41 heal /hi:l/ 20 heal up / hi:1 'Ap/ 20 health scare /'helθ skeə(r)/ 41 healthy /'helθi/ 17 hear /hip(r)/ 32 hear from sb /'hiə frəm/ 78 heart /hq:t/ 37 heart attack /'ho:t əˌtæk/ 37 heart disease /'ha:t di.zi:z/ 37 heartbroken /'ha:tbrəokən/ 7 heatwave /'hi:tweiv/ 13 heavy sleeper /hevi 'sli:pə(r)/ 19 heavy traffic /,hevi 'træfik/ 22 held up / held 'Ap/ 22 helmet as in safety helmet /'helmɪt/ 57 herbs /h3:bz/ 16 herd /ha:d/ 15 hesitate /'heziteit/ 78 hi /hai/ 77 hide your feelings /haid jo: 'fi:linz/ 7 high-heeled / har 'hi:ld/ 23 high school /'har sku:l/ 80 high tide / har 'taid/ 12 highly /'harli/ 76 highway /'harwer/ 80 hire a car / haiər ə 'ka:(r)/ 22

hit /hit/ 14 hold an election / hoold on r'lek[n/ 38 hold on / hould 'pn/ 77 hold the record / həʊld ðə 'rekə:d/ 46 hole /həol/ 26 home as in at home /həom/ 50 homesick /'hoomsik/ 50 honest /'pnist/ 6 honesty /'pnosti/ 6 honeymoon /'hanimu:n/ 10 hoover /'hu:və(r)/ 27 hope /həʊp/ 65 hope as in 1 hope so/not /həʊp/ 65 horizon /həˈraɪzən/ 12 horizontal / horr'zontl/ 31 hospital /'hospitl/ 25 horn /hə:n/ 21 horns /ho:nz/ 15 horse /ho:s/ 15 hour as in rush hour /'aoo(r)/ 22 how about? /'hao ə.baot/ 61 how are things? /'hao a 0mz/ 77 how do you feel about ...? /'hao də ju: fi:l ə baot '.../ 63 however /hav'evə(r)/ 68 how's it going? /haoz it 'geoin/ 77 huge /hiu:dz/ 18, 30 human /'hju:mən/ 13 humid /'hju:mid/ 13 humorous /'hju:moros/ 73 humour as in sense of humour /'hju:mo(r)/ 6 hunt /hʌnt/ 15 hurricane /'harikon/ 14 hurry /'hari/ 29 hurry as in in a hurry /'hari/ 71 hurry up / hari 'ap/ 77 hurt sb's feelings / ha:t ... 'fi:lɪŋz/ 7 husband /'hazbənd/ 10 hyphen /'haifən/ 4

ID card (identity card) /,ar 'di: ,ka:d/ 79 ISP (internet service provider) /ar es 'pi:/ 79 IT (information technology) /,ar 'ti:/ 79

i.e. / ar 'i:/ 52 I assume so /aı ə'sju:m ,səo/ 65 I'd better be off /aid betə bi 'pf/ 77 I don't think so /ai doont 'θink soo/ 65 I doubt it / ar 'daut it/ 65 I expect so /ai ik'spekt səo/ 65 I guess so / ar 'ges soo/ 65 I haven't a clue /ar hævnt ə 'klu:/ 77 I hope not / ai 'houp not/ 65 Thope so /ai 'haup sau/ 65 I imagine so /ai i'mædin səu/ 65 I suppose so /ai sə'pəoz səu/ 65 I think so / aι 'θιηk ,soo/ 65 I think ... / aι 'θιηk/ 63 I think that ... /aı 'θτηk ðət/ 63 I would appreciate it if ... /ai wod ə'pri: sieit it if/ 78 I would be grateful if ... /ai wod bi 'greitfl if/ 78 ideal /ar'di:əl/ 29 identical /ar'dentikl/ 60 identify /ar'dentifai/ I identity /ar'dentəti/ 79 idiom /'rdiom/ 3, 77 idiomatic /,idio'mætik/ 77 if you ask me /,if ju: ,a:sk 'mi:/ 63 ignition /ig'nifn/ 21 ignore /ig'no:(r)/ 33, 58 illegal /r'li:gl/ 35 illegible /t'ledsəbl/ 72 illuminate /t'lu:mmet/ 48 illustrate /'iləstreit/ 33 illustration /,ılə'streifn/ 33 I'm afraid ... / aim əˈfreid/ 61 I'm afraid not /aim ə,freid 'npt/ 65 I'm afraid so /.aim ə.freid 'səu/ 65 I'm meant to /arm 'ment tə/ 61 I'm not bothered /aim not 'bood/ 66 I'm supposed to /aim sə'pəust tə/ 61 imagine /i'mædsın/ 65,74 imagine as in I imagine so /1'mædzin/ 65

immediately /r'mi:diətli/ 25 immigrant /'imigrant/ 9,38 immigration / imi'qrei[n/ 38 immoral /r'mprəl/ 72 impatient /im'per[nt/ 6 impressed /im'prest/ 69 impressive /im'presiv/ 30 improve /im'pru:v/ 2 improvement /im'pru:vment/ 2 in a bad mood /,in a ,bæd 'mu:d/ 7 in a deep sleep /,m ə ,di:p 'sli:p/ 19 in a good mood / in a .god 'mu:d/ 7 in a hurry / in a 'hari/ 71 in a relationship / in a ri'leisnsip/ 8 in a rush /m ɔ 'rʌʃ/ 71 in actual fact /m æktfuəl 'fækt/ 76 in addition /,in ə'dıfn/ 68 in advance /,in əd'vq:ns/ 71 in bad shape / m bæd 'ferp/ 5 in case /, in 'kers/ 67, 68 in charge of / in 'tfa:dz əv/ 53, 71 in comparison with / in kəm'pærisən wið/ 60 in control /,in kən'trəʊl/ 39 in detail /.m 'di:terl/ 2 in fact /, in 'fækt/ 65, 76 in favour of / in 'fervor ov/ 63. 71 in focus / in 'fəʊkəs/ 43 in general / m 'denral/ 71 in good shape /in god 'feip/ 5 in mourning /,in 'mo:nin/ 10 in my opinion / in 'mai ə pinjən/ 63 in other words /m 'Aðə w3:dz/ 11 in particular /m pəˈtɪkjələ(r)/ 78 in person / in 'p3:sn/ 66 in power / in 'paoə(r)/ 38 in principle / in 'prinsopl/ 63 in private /,in 'praivot/ 71 in public / in 'pablik/ 71 in spite of /,in 'spart av/ 68 in the centre /,in ðə 'sentə(r)/ 33 in the distance /,in ða 'distans/ 33

in the end / in di 'end/ 71 in the meantime / in 85 'mi:ntaim/ 70 in theory /.in 'θιəri/ 63 in time /,in 'taim/ 50 in writing / in 'raitin/ 66 inadequate /m'ædikwət/ 56, 69 inappropriate /mo'proupriet/ 2 include /m'klu:d/ 2 income /'ınkam/ 18 increase N /'inkri:s/ 37 increase v /m'kri:s/ 37, 55, 58, 63 incredible /m'kredəbl/ 42 indeed /m'di:d/ 42 independence / indi pendans/ 40 independent / mdr'pendent/ 40 individual / indi'vidzuəl/ 42 industrial /m'dastriəl/ 33 industry /'ındəstri/ 33 ineffective / mi'fektiv/ 69 inefficient /,mi'fifnt/ 69 infection /in'fek(n/ 20 infectious /m'fekfəs/ 37 inflation /m'fler[n/ 55 influence N, v /'influens/ 44 influenza / influ'enzə/ 79 informal /m'fo:ml/ 1 information technology /infə mei n tek'nplədi/ 79 ingredients /m'gri:dionts/ 17 inherit /m'herit/ 10 inheritance /m'heritans/ 10 injure /'mdzə(r)/ 20 injured /'ındəd/ 22 injury /'ındəri/ 20 inner city / ma 'siti/ 29 innocent /'məsnt/ 36 innovate /'mayent/ 57 innovation / mə'vei [n/ 57] innovative /'mayatry/ 57 insect /'insekt/ 15 insecure /insi'kjoə(r)/ 6, 72 insensitive /in'sensotiv/ 7 insist /in'sist/ 71,64 insomnia /m'spmnio/ 19 install /m'sto:1/52 instance as in for instance /'instans/ 3 instead /m'sted/ 4.61 instructions /in'strak(nz/ 49

instrument /'instramant/ 44 intend /m'tend/ 65,74 intention /m'tenfn/ 65 interest /'intrest/ 55 interest rate /'intrest reit/ 55 international /mtə'næfnəl/ 41 internet service provider /intanet 'sa:vis pra_vaida(r)/ 79 interpret /in'ta:prit/ 73 interpretation /m.ts:pri'ter[n/ 73 interrupt /,intə'rapt/ 4, 45 interstate /'intəsteit/ 80 interview N, v /'mtəvju:/ 51 interviewer /'intəviu:o(r)/ 51 intolerant /m'tplərənt/ 6 introduce / intro'dju:s/ 74 invade /in'veid/ 40 invasion /in'vei3n/ 40 invent /m'vent/ 11 invention /m'ven n/ 11 invest /m'vest/ 57 investigate /m'vestigeit/ 36 investment /m'vestment/ 57 invigilator /m'vidzileitə(r)/ 49 involve /m'volv/ 53 involved /m'vplvd/ 39 involved in /m'vplvd m/ 71 iron /'aɪən/ 31 irrelevant /i'reləvənt/ 2,72 irresponsible / iri'sponsəbl/ 6 irritable /'irritabl/ 19 -ish /ɪ[/ 5 issue /'ıʃu:/ 63 it seems to me /it si:mz to 'mi:/ 63 item /'aitom/ 49 it's up to me / its Ap to 'mi:/ 64 jail /dzerl/ 35 jam as in traffic jam /dæm/ 22 jealous /'dzeləs/ 7 jewellery /ˈdʒu:əlri/ 23 job /dzpb/ 52 join a class / dzoin ə 'kla:s/ 66 join (= put together) /dʒɔɪn/ 4 joke /dzauk/ 77

joking as in you must be joking.

journalism /ˈʤɜːnəlɪzəm/ 41

journalist /'dza:nəlist/ 41

judge n /dzadz/ 36

you're joking /'dʒəokin/ 77

instrument as in musical

judge v /ʤʌʤ/ 73 judgement /'ʤʌʤmənt/ 73 junk food /'ʤʌŋk ˌfuːd/ 17 jury /'ʤoəri/ 36 just /ʤʌst/ 33

kg (kilo(s)/kilogram(s)) /'ki:ləu(z), 'kıləgræm(z)/ 79 km (kilometre(s)) /'kɪləmi:tə(z)/ 79 kph (kilometres per hour) /kıləmi:təz pər 'abə(r)/ 79 keen as in be keen on /ki:n/ 62 keep /ki:p/ 21, 28 keep a record of /ki:p ə 'rekə:d əv/ 1 keep ahead of /ki:p o'hed ov/ 57 keep an eye on /,ki:p ən 'ar ,pn/ 77 keep calm / ki:p 'ka:m/ 66 keep in touch / ki:p in 'tatf/ 8 keep sth up / ki:p 'Ap/ 17 keep your temper /,ki:p_jo: 'tempo(r)/ 66 key /ki:/ 57 keyboard /'ki:bo:d/ 44 keyboard player /'ki:bo:d_plera(r)/ 44 kid /kid/ 77 kidney /'kıdni/ 16 kill /kıl/ 35 kilogram /'kilogræm/ 79 kilometre /'kıləmi:tə(r)/ 79 kilometres per hour /kıləmi:təz pər 'aoə(r)/ 79 kind /kamd/ 73 kind regards /'kaind ri,ga:dz/ 78 kindness /'kaındnəs/ 73 king /kin/ 9 knickers /'nikəz/ 23 knock /nok/ 34

l (litre(s)) /'li:tə(z)/ 79 lab /læb/ 79 laboratory /lə'bɒrətri/ 79 lack /læk/ 19 ladder /'lædə(r)/ 31 lake /leɪk/ 12 land /lænd/ 52 landscape /'lændskeɪp/ 43 lane /leɪn/ 22 lap /læp/ 45 largely /'lɑːdʒli/ 76

knowledge /'nplick/ 11

last /lg:st/ 70 lately /'lcitli/ 77 latest /'lcitist/ 23 launch /lo:ntf/ 38 laughing as in burst out laughing /'la:fin/ 34 lava /'la:və/ 14 law /lo:/ 35 lawn /lo:n/ 30 lazy /'lerzi/ 6 lead /li:d/ 30 lead singer / li:d 'sipə(r)/ 44 lead to /'li:d tə/ 37 leader /'li:də(r)/ 39 leader as in market leader /'li:də(r)/ 56 leading role /'li:dm ˌrəʊl/ 42 leaf /li:f/ 34 leak N. v /li:k/ 26 least as in at least /li:st/ 71 leather /'leðə(r)/ 23 leave out /,li:v 'aut/ 4, 75 leaves /li:vz/ 34 lecture /'lektfə(r)/ 50 lecturer /'lektfərə(r)/ 50 leek /li:k/ 16 left-hand /'left hænd/ 33 legal /'li:gl/ 35 legible /'ledjibl/ 72 leisure /'leʒə(r)/ 33 lend sb a hand /_lend _... > 'hænd/ 77 length /leηθ/ 45 lens as in zoom lens /lenz/ 43 lenses as in contact lenses /'lenziz/ 5 leopard /'lepəd/ 15 let /let/ 28, 64 letter as in capital letter /letə(r)/ 4 letter box /'letə ,boks/ 31 lid /lɪd/ 34 life expectancy /'laif ik.spektənsi/ 15 lifeboat /'laifbout/ 57 lifespan /'laɪfspæn/ 15 light bulb /'lart balb/ 26 light-skinned / last 'skind/ 5 light sleeper / lart 'sli:po(r)/ 19 light sth up / lait ... 'Ap/ 48 like (= similar to) /lark/ 32 like (= such as) /laɪk/ 4, 32 likely to /'larkli tə/ 59 limit as in speed limit /'limit/ 21 limited /'limitid/ 58

linesman /'laınzmən/ 45 lion /'laɪən/ 15 liquid /'likwid/ 13 list /list/ 4 listen /'lɪsn/ 32 litre /'li:tə(r)/ 79 litter /'litə(r)/ 29 live /law/ 44 lively /'larvli/ 29 liver /'hvə(r)/ 16 living /'livm/ 44 loads /loudz/ 77 load sth up / loud 'Ap/ 72 loan /ləʊn/ 50 loathe /ləoð/ 62 lobster /'lpbstə(r)/ 16 local /'laokl/ 29 lock /lpk/ 72 log as in sleep like a log /lpg/ 19 long /lon/ 45 long as in as long as /lon/ 68 look /lok/ 32 look after / lok 'a:ftə(r)/ 71 look forward to /luk 'fo:wod tə/ 24, 65, 78 look like /'lok ,lark/ 9 look out / lok 'aut/ 67 look through /'lok .θru:/ 47 loosen "lu:sn/ 26 lose /lu:z 56 lose weight lu:z weit/ 17 lose your hair /,lu:z .jo: 'heə(r) 5 lose your sight /lu:z jo: sant 37 lose your temper /,lu:z_jo: tempə(r)/ 66 loss /los 55 loud /laud 34 love /lav 78 love from 144 from 78 low tide low taid 12 Ioyal Ibral 8,72 lungs lanz 37 Ivrics /Irriks 44 ml (millilitre s /'mulili:12(2) 79

ml (millilitre(s))
/'millita(z) 79
mm (millimetre(s))
/'mtlimitta(z) 79
MP (Member of Parliament)
/em pi: 38
mph (miles per hour)
//mailz per 'ace(r)/ 79
mad mæd 6

mad about (= liking very much) /'mæd ə.baʊt/ 62 Madam /'mædəm/ 78 main difference /mem 'difrans/ 60 main road / mein 'roud/ 80 mainly /'memli/ 76 maintain /mein'tein/ 14 majority /mo'dspreti/ 38 make as in can you make it? /meik/ 61 make (= perform an action) /meik/ 1, 10, 65 make a claim /meik o 'kleim/ 66 make a complaint /merk a kam'plemt/ 53, 66 make a note / mcik ə 'nəot/ 1 make a profit /meik a 'profit/ 55 make a promise /meik ə 'promis/ 41 make a speech /meik ə 'spi:tf/ 10 make an appointment /meik ən ə'pəintmənt/ 24 make an enquiry /meik ən in'kwaiəri/ 53 make arrangements /meik ə'reindimənts/ 52 make friends / merk 'frendz/ 8 make mistakes / meik mi'steiks/ 1 make plans / meik 'plænz/ 65 make progress /meik 'proogres/ 2 make sb do sth /meik ... 'du: .../ 64 make sb redundant / meik ... ri'dandənt/ 53 make sth up / merk ... 'Ap/ 75 make sure / meik '[uo(r)/ 53, 66 make the most of / meik ða 'maust av/ 71 male /meil/ 5, 15 mall /mo:l, mæl/ 80 manage /'mæni\(\dag{z}\) 50, 52, 71, 74 management /'mænɪdzmənt/ 52 manager / mænidso(r)/ 45 manual /'mænjuəl/ 47 manufacture / mænju'fæktfə(r)/ 52, 57 manufacturer

manufacturing /mænju'fæktfərm/ 52 mark as in exclamation/ question mark /mg:k/ 4 market as in target market /'ma:kit/ 58 market leader /,ma:kit 'li:də(r)/ 56 market research /ma:kit ri'ss:tf, 'ri:ss:tf/ 56 marketing /'ma:kətɪŋ/ 58 marks as in quotation marks /ma:ks/4marriage /'mæridz/ 10 mash /mæ[/ 17 massive /'mæsɪv/ 18 masterpiece /'ma:stəpi:s/ 43 match /mætf/ 23 mate /mert/ 77 material /məˈtɪəriəl/ 23 mature /məˈtfʊɔ(r)/ 63 maximum /'mæksıməm/ 45 may /mei/ 36, 59 mean /mi:n/ 6 mean a lot /mi:n a 'lot/ 48 meant as in be meant to /ment/ 22, 61 meantime as in in the meantime /'mi:ntaɪm/ 70 meanwhile /'mi:nwail/ 70 measure /'mega(r)/ 73 measurement /'meʒəmənt/ 73 mechanic /məˈkænɪk/ 52 medal /'medl/ 31.46 melody /'melədi/ 44 melt /melt/ 13 member /'membə(r)/ 9 Member of Parliament / member ov 'pu:lement/ 38 member of the public /membər əv ðə 'pablik/ 53 memory loss /'memori_los/ 37 mend /mend/ 26 mention /'menfn/ 66 metal /'metl/ 31 method /'meθəd/ 1 metric /'metrik/ 79 metric capacity /metrik kə'pæsəti/ 79 metric length /metrik 'len0/ 79 metric weight /metrik 'weit/ 79 mice /mass/ 15 middle /'midl/ 33 might /mait/ 36, 59

mild /maild/ 13 miles per hour /,mailz per 'aoe(r)/ 79 millilitre /'mɪlili:tə(r)/ 79 millimetre /'mɪlimi:tə(r)/ 79 military /'milatri/ 52 minced /minst/ 17 mind /maind/ 74 mind as in on your mind /mamd/ 19 mind your head /maind jo: 'hed/ 67 minimum /'miniməm/ 45 minor /'mamə(r)/ 35 minority /mar'nproti/ 38 mint /mint/ 16 mirror as in rear-view / wing mirror /'mirə(r)/ 21 miserable /'mizrəbl/ 7 mist /mist/ 13 mistake as in make mistakes /mr'sterk/ 1 misty /'misti/ 13 mixed feelings /mikst 'fi:linz/ 69 moan N, V /moon/ 66 modern /'mpdn/ 69 modest /'mpdist/ 6 money /'mani/ 79 monkey /'mʌŋki/ 15 mood /mu:d/ 7 moody /'mu:di/ 7 moon /mu:n/ 11 mop /mop/ 27 moral /'mprəl/ 72 moreover /mo:r'oovo(r)/ 68 mosquito /mɔ'ski:təu/ 15 most as in make the most of /moost/ 71 motivated /'məotiveitid/ 2 motivation / məuti'vei[n/ 2 motorbike /'məotəbaik/ 79 motorway /'məutəwei/ 80 mourners /'mɔ:nəz/ 10 mourning as in in mourning /'mo:nm/ 10 mouse /maus/ 15 movie /'mu:vi/ 42, 80 movie theater 08 \(r)ctcrθ, iv:um'/ moving /'mu:vin/ 42 mud /mʌd/ 27 muddy /'mʌdi/ 27 mug/mag/35 mugger /'magə(r)/ 35

mugging /'maqin/ 35

/mænju'fæktfərə(r)/ 57

muggy /'mʌgi/ 13 multi-storey car park /ˌmʌlti ˌstə:ri 'ka: ˌpɑ:k/ 29 murder n, v /'mɜ:də(r)/ 35 murderer /'mɜ:dərə(r)/ 35 musical instrument /ˌmju:zɪkl 'ɪnstrəmənt/ 44 musician /mju:'zɪʃn/ 44 mussel /'mʌsl/ 16 mystery /'mɪstri/ 47

nail /neil/ 26 nanny /'næni/ 52 nap as in have a nap /næp/ 19 narrow /'nærəʊ/ 12 nasty /'na:sti/ 20 national /'næ[nəl/ 41 NATO /'nertou/ 79 natural /'nætfrəl/ 69 nearby / niə bai/ 78 neat /ni:t/ 5 necklace /'neklos/ 23 need as in a need for /ni:d/ 38 need as in desperately need /ni:d/ 76 needle /'ni:dl/ 26 negative ADI /'negotiv/ 69 negative n /'negativ/ 43 negotiate /nr'gaofiert/ 39 neighbourhood /'neibəhod/ 48 neutral /'nju:trəl/ 23,77 nevertheless / nevəðə'les/ 68 nightie /'narti/ 19 nightmare (= bad dream) /'nartmeə(r)/ 19 nightmare (= bad experience) /'naitmeo(r)/ 22 no problem /.neo 'prpblem/ 77 non-alcoholic /.npn ælkə'hplik/ 72 non-fiction / non 'fik sn/ 47 non-metric /,non 'metrik/ 79 nonsense /'nonsns/ 77 not at all / not at 'a:1/ 62 not ... yet / not ... 'jet/ 70 note as in make a note of /noot/ 1 notice v /'nəutis/ 32 notice as in hand in your notice /'nəutis/ 53 nothing much /nnθin 'mntf/ 77 novel /'novl/ 47 now and again

/nao and a'gen/ 70

nowadays /'nauədeiz/ 70 nuisance /'nju:sns/ 66 number plate /'nʌmbə ˌpleit/ 21

obedient /a'bi:dient/ 64 obese /əo'bi:s/ 37 obesity /oo'bi:səti/ 37 obey /ɔ'beɪ/ 64 obey the law /a bei ða 'lo:/ 35 object /'pbckekt/ 52 objective /əb'dzektıv/ 58 obligatory /ə'bliqətri/ 64 observant /əb'za:vənt/ 32 obvious /'pbvies/ 2 occasion /ə'keɪʒn/ 48 occasionally /ə'kerznəli/ 70 occur /ə'ks:(r)/ 22 ocean /'əu[n/ 12 off (= money off) /pf/ 18 off as in time off /of/ 54 offence /o'fens/ 35 offend /ə'fend/ 3 offender /əˈfendə(r)/ 35 offensive /ə'fensiv/ 3 oil paints /'oil peints/ 43 oils /pilz/ 43 old-fashioned /.auld 'fæfnd/ 69 old friend / ould 'frend/ 8 omit /ə'mɪt/ 4, 75 on board /.pn 'bo:d/ 71 on display /,pn dr'splet/ 43 on my mind /pn mai maind/ 19 on my way / pn mai wei/ 22 on purpose / pn 'pa:pas/ 71 on show / on 'Jeo/ 43 on the horizon /ˌɒn ðə həˈraɪzn/ 12 on the one hand /,pn do 'wan ,hænd/ 68 on the other hand /,pn ði 'Aðə ,hænd/ 68

/,pn ŏi 'Aŏə ,hænd/ 68
on the way /,pn ŏə 'wei/ 22
on the whole /,pn ŏə 'həol/ 76
on time /,pn 'taim/ 50
on your mind
/,pn ,jp: 'maind/ 19
one-sided /,wAn 'saidid/ 46
only child /,ponli 'tfaild/ 9
onto /'pntə/ 70
operate /'ppəreit/ 25
operating costs
/'ppəreitin ,kpsts/ 55

operating theatre
/'ppareitin |0toto(r)/ 25
operation /ppa'reisn/ 25
opinion as in in my opinion
/a'pinjan/ 63
opponent /a'poonant/ 46
opportunity /ppa'tju:nati/ 1,
50, 58
oppose /a'pauz/ 38
opposed to /a'pauzd ta/ 63
opposition /ppa'zisn/ 38
Opposition as in the
Opposition /ppa'zisn/ 38
optimistic /ppti'mistik/ 59
optional /'ppsonl/ 64

optional /'ppʃənl/ 64
or /ɔ:(r)/ 68
or else /ˌɔ:r 'els/ 68
order as in out of order
/'ɔ:də(r)/ 26
orchestra /'ɔ:kɪstrə/ 44
ordinary /'ɔ:dnri/ 42
organ /'ɔ:gən/ 44
organist /'ɔ:gənɪst/ 44
original /ə'rɪdʒənəli/ 9
otherwise /'ʌðəwaɪz/ 68
out loud /ˌaʊt 'laod/ 34
out of focus
/ˌaʊt əv 'fəokəs/ 43

out of order
/aut əv 'ɔ:də(r)/ 26
out of the blue
/aut əv ðə 'blu:/ 77
out of work /aut əv 'wɜ:k/ 53
outfit /'autfit/ 23
outsider /aut'saidə(r)/ 46
outskirts /'autskɜ:ts/ 22
outstanding /aut'stændin/ 42,

46
oval adj, n /'eovl/ 31
oven /'avn/ 17
over /'eove(r)/ 70
over-ambitious
/,eover æm'bifes/ 56
over-optimistic

over-optimistic
/,əʊvər opti/mistik/ 56
over there /,əʊvə 'ðeə(r)/ 70
overall /,əʊvər'ɔ:l/ 46
overall /'əʊvərɔ:l/ 69
overcharge /,əʊyə'tfɑ:dʒ/ 56

overcharge /ˌɔovəˈtʃɑːʤ/ 56 overestimate /ˌɔovərˈestimeit/ 56

overhear /,əuvə'hıə(r)/ 32 overnight /,əuvə'naɪt/ 22 oversleep /,əuvə'sli:p/ 19 overtake /,əuvə'teɪk/ 21

own /aon/ 18 oyster /'pistə(r)/ 16 p (pence) /pi:, pens/ 79 PM (prime minister) / pi: 'em/ 38 pack /pæk/ 72 painful /'peinfl/ 24, 73 painless /'peinles/ 73 paint /peint/ 33 painter /'peinto(r)/ 33 painting /'peintin/ 33 pale-skinned / peil 'skind/ 5 papaya /pəˈpaɪə/ 16 paper (= exam paper) /'peipə(r)/ 49 paper (= newspaper) /'peipə(r)/ 79 paperback /'peipəbæk/ 47 parade /pəˈreɪd/ 48 parallel /'pærəlel/ 31 parent as in foster parent /'pearant/ 9 parliament /'pa:ləmənt/ 38 particular as in in particular /pə'tıkjələ(r)/ 78 parsley /'pa:sli/ 16 part /pa:t/ 29 participate /pa:'tisipeit/ 46, 48 particular as in in particular /pəˈtɪkiələ(r)/ 78 particularly /pə'tıkjələli/ 78 parting /'pa:tin/ 28 partly /'pa:tli/ 76 partnership /'pa:tnəʃɪp/ 57 party as in political party /'pa:ti/ 39 pass out / pa:s 'aot/ 20 passage /'pæsidz/ 30 passion fruit /'pæsn fru:t/ 16 patience /'pcifns/ 6 patient ADJ /'pcifnt/ 25 patient N /'per[nt/ 6 pause /po:z/ 4 pavement /'pervment/ 29 pay /pei/ 55 peace /pi:s/ 39 peace settlement /'pi:s setlmont/ 39 peak /pi:k/ 55 pebbles /'peblz/ 12 peel /pi:l/ 17 pence /pens/ 79 pennies /'peniz/ 79

overtime /'aoyatam/ 54

owe /əʊ/ 18

penny /'peni/ 79 pension /'penfn/ 41 pensioner /'pen[ənə(r)/ 41 perform /pə'fɔ:m/ 46 performance /pə'fɔ:məns/ 42, 46 perm /ps:m/ 28 permanent /'ps:monont/ 69 permit as in work permit /'ps:mit/ 51 permit v /pə'mɪt/ 64 person as in in person /'ps:sn/ 66 personally /'ps:sənəli/ 63 persuade /po'sweid/ 38, 74 pessimistic / pesr'mrstrk/ 59 petrol /'petrol/ 80 photo /'fəʊtəʊ/ 43 photo album /'fəutəu ˌælbəm/ 43 photograph /'fəʊtəgra:f/ 43 photographer /fə'togrəfə(r)/ 43 photography /fə'tpgrəfi/ 43 pianist /'piənist/ 44 piano /pi'ænəo/ 44 pick up / pik 'Ap/ 22, 75, 77 PIN (personal identification number) /pin/ 79 pin /pin/ 26 pipe /parp/ 31 pitch /pitf/ 45 pity /'piti/ 29 plan /plæn/ 65 plane /plein/ 79 planet /'plænit/ 11 planning /'plænin/ 49 plastic /'plæstik/ 31 pleased /pli:zd/ 69 pleasure /'ple3ə(r)/ 47 pledge N, v /pledz/ 41 plenty /'plenti/ 17 plot /plpt/ 42 plug in / plag 'in/ 72 plum /plam/ 16 plumber /'plamp(r)/ 52 plump /plamp/ 5 plus /plas/ 68 pocket /'pokit/ 23 poem /'paum/ 47 poetry /'pouotri/ 47 point (= purpose) /point/ 66 point (= shape) /point/ 31 point as in there's no point in ... /point/ 66

point as in what's the point of ...? /point/ 66 pointed /'pointid/ 31 poison /'poizn/ 15 poisonous /'poizonos/ 15 pole /poul/ 13 policy /'ppləsi/ 38 polish N, v /'polis/ 27 polite /pə'laɪt/ 69 political party /po_litikl 'pa:ti/ 38 politician / pplo'tr[n/ 38 pollute /pəˈluːt/ 13 pollution /po'lu:fn/ 13 pomegranate /'ppmi.grænit/ 16 pond /pond/ 12 pool /pu:l/ 45 pop /pop/ 79 portrait /'po:treit/ 43 position /po'zifn/ 51 positive /'pozativ/ 69 postpone /pəˈspəon/ 61 potential /pə'tenfl/ 57 pour /po:(r)/ 13 pouring /'po:rin/ 13 power as in in power /'paoə(r)/ 38 powerful /'paoəfl/ 73 powerless /'paoələs/ 73 practical /'præktikl/ 73 praise N, v /preiz/ 46 predict /pri'dikt/ 13 predictable /pri'diktobl/ 13 prefer /pri'f3:(r)/ 73 preference /'prefrons/ 73 pregnant /'pregnant/ 5 premises /'premisiz/ 67 prepare /pri'pea(r)/ 21 prepared /pri'pead/ 21 present /'preznt/ 47 president /'prezident/ 40 press v /pres/ 32 press as in the press /pres/ 41 pre-tax / pri: 'tæks/ 55 pretend /pri'tend/ 74 pretty (= attractive) /'priti/ 5 pretty (= rather) /'priti/ 76 prevent /pri'vent/ 20 prevention /pri'ven[n/ 20 previous /'pri:viəs/ 9 prime minister / praim 'ministə(r)/ 38 prince /prins/ 40 princess / prin'ses/ 40

principle as in in principle /'prinsapl/ 63 print /print/ 43 priority /prar'prati/ 38 prison as in go to prison /'prizn/ 35 private as in in private /'praivot/ 71 private sector /'praivet_sekte(r)/ 52 problem as in no problem /'problom/ 77 process /'prouses/ 51 produce (a film) /pro'dju:s/ 42 produce (goods) /'prodju:s/ 57 producer (of films) /prəˈdju:sə(r)/ 42 producer (of goods) /prə'diu:sə(r)/ 57 product /'prodakt/ 52 profession /profesion/ 52 professional /profesonl/ 46 professor /pra'fesa(r)/ 50 profit /'profit/ 55 progress /'prougres/ 2 promise /'promis/ 41 promote /pra'maot/ 53 promotion /pro'mou[n/ 53 pronounce /prə'nauns/ 1 pronunciation /pro.nansi'er[n/ 1 proof /pru:f/ 36 properly /'propəli/ 26 property /'propeti/ 35 proposal /pro'pouzl/ 63 propose /pro'pouz/ 63 prosecute /'prosikju:t/ 36 prosecution / prost'kju: [n/ 36 prospects /'prospekts/ 53 protect /prə'tekt/ 12 protected /prə'tektid/ 12 protection /protek[n/ 12 protest N /'prootest/ 41 protest v /prə'test/ 41 proud /praud/ 7 prove /pru:v/ 36 provide /prə'vaid/ 3 provided /prə'vaidid/ 68 pub /phb/ 79 public as in in public /'pablik/ 71 public as in member of the public /'pablik/ 53 public as in the public /'pablik/ 53 public house /pyblik 'haus/ 79

public sector /pablik 'sektə(r)/ 52 publish /'pablif/ 41,52 publishing /'pablifin/ 41, 52 puddle /'pʌdl/ 12 punish /'panis/ 64 punishment /'panisment/ 64 purchase N, V /'pa:tʃəs/ 77 purpose /'ps:pos/ 68 purpose as in on purpose /'ps:pos/ 71 purse /ps:s/ 80 put on weight put on 'west/ 17 put back / pot 'bæk/ 75 put down / pot 'daon/ 75 put off / put 'pf/ 61 put on / pot 'pn/ 75 put out / put 'aut/ 75 pyjamas /pəˈdʒɑ:məz/ 19 qualifications

qualifications
/kwolfft'kersnz/ 52
quality /'kwolfti/ 56
queen /kwi:n/ 9
question mark
/'kwestsn mark/ 4
quit /kwit/ 53
quite /kwart/ 76
quotation marks
/kwoo'tersn marks/ 4

rabbit /'ræbīt/ 16 race /reis/ 46 racing driver /'reisin_draivə(r)/ 45 railings /'reilinz/ 31 railroad /'reilrood/ 80 rainbow /'remboo/ 13 rainforest /'reinforist/ 13 raise capital / reiz 'kæpitl/ 55 range as in wide range /remdy/ 2 rare /reə(r)/ 69 rarely /'reəli/ 76 raspberry /'ra:zbəri/ 16 rat /ræt/ 15 rather /'ra;ðə(r)/ 76 rather as in would rather /'ra:ðə(r)/ 62 rather than /'ra:ðə ðən/ 21 reach /ri:tf/ 11 reach an agreement /ˌri:tʃ ən əˈgri:mənt/ 39 react /ri'ækt/ 73 reaction /ri'æk[n/ 73

read widely / ri:d 'waidli/ 50 readable /'ri:dobl/ 47 real /'ri:əl/ 69, 73 realism /'ri:əlizəm/ 43 realistic / ri:ə'lıstık/ 43, 58 reality /ri'æləti/ 73 realize /'ri:əlaɪz/ 8 rear /rip(r)/ 70 rear-view mirror / riə viu: 'mirə(r)/ 21 reasonable /'ri:znəbl/ 69 recall /rɪ'kɔ:l/ 74 receding /ri'si:din/ 5 receipt /rr'si:t/ 18 recent /'ri:snt/ 70 recently /'ri:sntli/ 70 reception /ri'sepfn/ 10 recipe /'resapi/ 17 reckon /'rekən/ 63, 77 recognition / rekag'nıſn/ 1 recognize /'rekəqnaiz/ 1 record n /'reko:d/ 46 record v (= make a note) /rɪ'kɔ:d/ 1 record v (= put onto a disc) /rɪ'kɔ:d/ 44 recording /rr'ko:din/ 44 recover /ri'kavə(r)/ 25 recruit /rɪ'kru:t/ 52 recruitment /ri'kru:tmənt/ 52 rectangle /'rektængl/ 31 rectangular /rek'tængjələ(r)/ 31 reduce /rɪ'dju:s/ 18, 58, 63 reduction /rr'dakfn/ 18,58 redundant /rɪ'dʌndənt/ 53 reel /ri:1/ 26 ref /ref/ 45 referee (at a sports match) /.refə'ri:/ 45 referee (for a job) / refə'ri:/ 51 referee's assistant /,refə,ri:z ə'sıstənt/ 45 reference /'refrons/ 51 reference book /'refrans_bok/ 47 refine /ri'fam/ 57 refund /'ri:fand/ 18 refuse /ri'fju:z/ 74 regards as in kind regards /ri'qa:dz/ 78 region /'ri:dən/ 29 regret /ri'gret/ 8,74 regularly /'regjələli/ 76 relate /ri'leit/ 3

related (= connected) responsible (= sensible) ruin /'ru:m/ 66 rule /ru:l/ 64 /ri'leitid/ 3 /ri'sppnsəbl/ 6 related (= in the same family) responsible (= having control) run out /,ran 'aot/ 75 /ri'leitid/ 9 /ri'sponsəbl/ 53, 71 running water restless /'restles/ 19 relation /ri'leifn/ 9 /.ranin 'wo:to(r)/ 20 relationship as in in a result as in as a result rural /'roorel/ 69 relationship /ri'leifnfip/ 8 /ri'zalt/ 68 rush /rxf/ 29 relative /'relativ/ 9 retail /'ri:teil/ 52 rush as in in a rush /rxs/ 71 release (= set free) /rɪˈliːs/ 40 retain /ri'tein/ 57 rush hour /'rʌʃ ˌaʊə(r)/ 22 retention /ri'tenfn/ 57 release N, v (an album) /rɪ'li:s/ 44 return as in day return sack N, v /sæk/ 53 relevant /'relevent/ 2,72 /rɪ'tɜ:n/ 22 safety helmet reliable /ri'laiəbl/ 8 revenue as in sales revenue /'seifti_helmit/ 57 relief /rɪ'li:f/ 49 /'revənju:/ 55 sales as in the sales /seilz/ 18 reverse /ri'va:s/ 21 relieved /rɪ'li:vd/ 49 sales rep /'serlz_rep/ 52 religious /ri'lidəəs/ 10 revise /ri'vaiz/ 1,50 sales representative religious ceremony revision /rɪ'vɪʒn/ 50 /'seilz_repri_zentativ/ 52 /rɪˌlɪdʒəs 'serəməni/ 10 revolution / revə'lu: fn/ 40 sales revenue revolve /ri'vplv/ 11 rely on /ri'lai pn/ 8,71 /'seilz revənju:/ 55 reward N, V /ri'wo:d/ 53 salmon /'sæmən/ 16 remain unchanged /ri,mein an'tfeind3d/ 55 rid as in get rid of /rid/ 71 salty /'so:lti/ 32 ridiculous /ri'dikiələs/ 73 same as in all the same remind /ri'maind/ 74 remote /rɪˈməʊt/ 69 right as in have the right to /serm/ 68 remove /ri'mu:v/ 26 /ratt/ 54 sand /sænd/ 12 rent /rent/ 22 right-hand /'rait_hænd/ 33 sandy /'sændi/ 12 satellite /'sætəlaɪt/ 11 rep as in sales rep /rep/ 52 ring /rin/ 23 repair /ri'peə(r)/ 26 rise /raiz/ 13, 55 satisfaction / sætis fæk (n/ 66 risk /risk/ 25, 56 satisfied /'sætisfaid/ 69 repeat /ri'pi:t/ 1 repetition / repottin/ 1 risky /ˈrɪski/ 56 satisfying /'sætisfaun/ 69 replace /ri'pleis/ 26 rival /'raivl/ 56 saucepan /'so:spən/ 17 save /seiv/ 14 report /ri'po:t/ 36 roast /raust/ 17 rob /rob/ 35 saxophone /'sæksəfəon/ 44 represent / repri'zent/ 38 representative robber /'robə(r)/ 35 saxophonist /sæk'spfənist/ 44 / repri'zentativ/ 52 robbery /'robəri/ 35 say /sei/ 61 scan /skæn/ 25 rock /rok/ 12 republic /ri'pablik/ 40 reputation / repju'ter[n/ 56 rocket /'rokit/ 11 scar /ska:(r)/ 5 rocks /rpks/ 12 scare /skeo(r)/ 41 request /rr'kwest/ 51 scared stiff / skead 'stif/ 7 role /rəol/ 42 require /ri'kwaiə(r)/ 51 roll of film / rool ov 'film/ 43 scene /si:n/ 33 research as in do research scholarship /'skpləʃip/ 50 /ri'ss:tf, 'ri:ss:tf/ 57 roof /ru:f/ 30 science /'saiəns/ 11 research as in market research rope /roop/ 26 science fiction /ri'ss:tf, 'ri:ss:tf/ 56 rosemary /'rəuzməri/ 16 rough (of a surface) /rAf/ 5 /saiəns 'fik în/ 47 rescue /'reskiu:/ 14 rough (of the sea) /rʌf/ 12 residence as in hall of scientific / sarən'tıfik/ 11 residence /'rezidens/ 50 roughly /'rʌfli/ 11, 76 scientist /'saiəntist/ 11 round /raund/ 31 scissors /'sisəz/ 26, 28 resign /ri'zaın/ 53 resist /rr'zist/ 46 round trip / raond 'trip/ 80 sci-fi /'sai fai/ 47 roundish /'raondist/ 5 scratch n /skrætf/ 18 resistance /ri'zistəns/ 46 scratch v /skrætf/ 34 row as in have a row /rao/ 8 resolve /ri'zplv/ 66 scream /skri:m/ 34 roval /'roiel/ 9 resource /ri'so:s, ri'zo:s/ 58 rub /rAb/ 32 screw /skru:/ 26 respond /ri'spond/ 58 rubber /'rʌbə(r)/ 31 screwdriver response /ri'spons/ 58 /'skru:draivə(r)/ 26 rubbish /'rabis/ 77 responsible /rt'sponsabl/ 6, 53, rude /ru:d/ 69 sea bass /'si: ,bæs/ 16 71 section /'sekfn/ 41 responsibility rugby player /rr,sponso'bilati/ 53 /'ragbi_pleiə(r)/ 45 sector /'sektə(r)/ 52, 58

secure /si'kjoo(r)/ 72 see (with your eyes) /si:/ 32 see (in your mind) /si:/ 6 seek /si:k/ 67 seem as in it seems to me /si:m/ 63 seldom /'seldəm/ 76 select /sr'lekt/ 3 selection /si'lek n/ 3 self-confident /self 'konfident/ 6 Sellotape /'seleterp/ 26 semicolon / semi'kəolən/ 4 semi-detached /.semidi'tætft/ 30 semi-final / semi'faml/ 46 seminar /'semma:(r)/ 50 sense /sens/ 33 sense of humour / sens av 'hju:ma(r)/ 6 sensible /'sensəbl/ 63 sensitive /'sensativ/ 7 sentence N. v. /'sentons/ 36 separate ADJ /'seprot/ 30 separate v /'separett/ 4 serious /'siəriəs/ 22, 35 seriously /'siəriəsli/ 76 servant as in civil servant /'s3:vont/ 52 service as in civil service /'s3:vis/ 52 services as in emergency services /'ss:visiz/ 22 set the alarm /,set ði ə'la:m/ 19 set up a business /.set .ap a 'biznas/ 56 settle /'setl/ 66 settlement as in peace settlement /'setlment/ 39 several /'sevrəl/ 41 severe /si'viə(r)/ 52 sew /səo/ 26 sex /scks/ 5 shade /feid/ 33 shadow /'sædəʊ/ 33 shake /feik/ 34 shall /fæl, fəl/ 51 shallow /'sæləu/ 12 shame /feim/ 29 shape /[eip/ 31 shape as in in good/bad shape /ferp/ 5 -shaped /feipt/ 31 share / [eo(r)/56]shares /feoz/ 56

shark /fa:k/ 15 sharp /fg:p/ 55 sharply /'fa:pli/ 55, 76 shell /fel/ 16 shift work /'fift ,w3:k/ 54 ship /fip/ 12 shirt /s:t/ 23 shocked /fpkt/ 69 shocking /'fokin/ 69 shockproof /'fokpru:f/ 73 shoe / [u:/ 23 shoelace /'fu:leis/ 72 shoot /fu:t/ 35 shooting /'fu:tin/ 46 shoplifter /'(pplifte(r)/ 35 shoplifting /'sppliftin/ 35 shopping list /'fopin ,list/ 4 shopping mall /'fppin mo:1, mæl/ 80 shore /(5:(r)/12short sleeves / fo:t 'sli:vz/ 23 shoulder /'ʃəʊldə(r)/ 5 shout /[aut/ 34 show as in on show /sau/ 43 show your feelings / .[oʊ .jo: 'fi:lɪŋz/ 7 shutters /'[atəz/ 30 sick pay /'sik pei/ 54 side as in left/right-hand side /said/ 33 side (in a war) /saɪd/ 39 sidewalk /'saidwo:k/ 80 sigh /sai/ 34 sight /sait/ 37 sign a contract /sain a kontrækt/ 57 significant /sig'nifikənt/ 55 significantly /sig'nifikəntli/ 55 silence /'sailens/ 34 silent /'sailent/ 34 silk /silk/ 23 silly /'sɪli/ 63 silver /'silvə(r)/ 31 similar /'simələ(r)/ 60 similarity / siməˈlærəti/ 60 simple /'simpl/ 69 since /sins/ 68 sincerely as in yours sincerely /sın'sıəli/ 78 singer as in lead singer /'sinə(r)/ 45 single parent /singl 'pearant/ 9 sink /sink/ 12 Sir /s3:(r)/ 78 skid /skid/ 21, 22

skier /'ski:ə(r)/ 45 skilful /'skilfl/ 58 skill /skil/ 58 skilled /skild/ 43, 58 skim /skim/ 47 skin /skin/ 5 skinned as in dark/light/paleskinned /skind/ 5 skinny /'skini/ 5 slang /slæn/ 3 slash /slæʃ/ 4 sleep N, v /sli:p/ 19 sleep like a log /sli:p latk a 'log/ 19 sleepy /'sli:pi/ 19 sleeve /sli:v/ 23 slender /'slendə(r)/ 5 slight /slart/ 55 slightly /'slattli/ 55 slim /slim/ 5 slip /slip/ 23 slipped /slipt/ 20 slow down /,sloo 'daun/ 21 small letters /'smo:l_letəz/ 4 smash /smæʃ/ 34 smell /smel/ 32 smooth /smu:ð/ 5 smoothly as in go smoothly /'smu:ðli/ 65 snack /snæk/ 17 snake /sneik/ 15 sneeze /sni:z/ 34 snore /sno:(r)/ 19 so /səʊ/ 68 so that /'səo ðət/ 68 soaked /sookt/ 13 soaking wet / soukin 'wet/ 13 sociable /'soufabl/ 8 social worker /'səofl_ws:kə(r)/ 52 soft /soft/ 69 solar system /'soula_sistam/ 11 soldier /'səʊldʒə(r)/ 39 solid /'solid/ 13 solo artist /'səoləo .a:tīst/ 44 solution /so'lu: [n/ 53 solve a problem /sply a 'problem/ 53 songwriter /'sonraitə(r)/ 44 sorry to bother you /.spri tə 'boðə ju:/ 66 sort /so:t/ 43 sort of /'so:t av/ 77 sort out / so:t 'aut/ 65 sound like /'saund laik/ 32

space (= area round planets) /speis/ 11 space (= area that is empty) /speis/ 29 spacious /'sperfos/ 30, 69 specialist /'spefolist/ 25 specialized /'spefəlaizd/ 2 spectacular /spek'tækjələ(r)/ 48 spectators /spek'teitəz/ 45 speech as in make a speech /spi:tf/ 10 speed /spi:d/ 79 speed limit /'spi:d ,limit/ 21 speedometer /spi:'domitə(r)/ 21 spicy /'sparsi/ 73 spider /'spaidə(r)/ 15 spinach /'spinits, -ids/ 16 spite as in in spite of /spart/ 68 split up / split 'Ap/ 8 spoil /spoil/ 66 spot /spot/ 59 spots /spots/ 15 spray /sprei/ 34 spread /spred/ 13 square ADJ, N /skwco(r)/ 31 squeeze /skwi:z/ 34 squid /skwid/ 16 stab /stæb/ 35 stability /stəˈbɪləti/ 55 stable /'sterbl/ 55 stadium /'sterdiom/ 45 stain /stein/ 26 staircase /'steakers/ 30 stand as in can't stand /stænd/ 62 stand for /'stænd_fo:(r), fo(r)/ 79 standard /'stændəd/ 45 stare /steə(r)/ 32 star /sta:(r)/ 11 starve /sta:v/ 14 starve to death /,sta:v tə 'deθ/ 14 stay the same /,ster ða 'serm/ 55 steadily /'stedili/ 55 steady /'stedi/ 55 steal /sti:1/ 35 steel /sti:l/ 31 steep /sti:p/ 12 steer /stip(r)/ 21 steering wheel /'stiərin wi:1/ 21 stepbrother /'stepbraðə(r)/ 9

stepdaughter /'stepdo:to(r)/ 9 stepfather /'stepfa:ðə(r)/ 9 stepmother /'stepmode(r)/ 9 stepsister /'stepsisto(r)/ 9 stepson /'stepsan/ 9 stick /stik/ 26 stick together /.stik təˈgeðə(r)/ 26 stiff as in scared stiff /strf/ 7 still /stil/ 68 still life / stil laif/ 43 sting /stm/ 15 stink /stink/ 32 stir /sta:(r)/ 17 stock /stpk/ 55 stocky /'stpki/ 5 stone (= seed of a fruit) /staon/ 16 stone (= building material) /stoon/ 30 stop as in full stop /stop/ 4 stop off / stop 'of/ 22 storage /'sto:ridz/ 30 store N /sto:(r)/ 80 store v /sto:(r)/ 30 straight /streit/ 31 straightaway / streitə wei/ 25 stranger /'streində(r)/ 78 strategy /'strætədxi/ 58 stream /stri:m/ 12 strength /streng/ 58 stress (= emphasis) /stres/ 3 stress (= anxious state) /stres/ 54 stressful /'stresfl/ 54 strict /strikt/ 64 strike /straik/ 14 striking /'straikin/ 48 string /strin/ 26 stripe /straip/ 15 stroke /strəuk/ 37 strongly /'stronli/ 76 struggle N, v /'stragl/ 56 stubble /'stabl/ 5 stuck /stak/ 22 studio /'stju:diəʊ/ 43 stuff /staf/ 77 stupid /'stju:prd/ 6 style (in fashion) /stail/ 23 style (= way sth is written or drawn) /starl/ 3,43 stylish /'starlif/ 23 subject to /'sabdakt to/ 51 substantial /səb'stæn[1/ 30] suburb /'sʌbɜ;b/ 29

subway (= path under a road/ railway) /'sabwei/ 29 subway (= underground railway) /'sabwei/ 80 succeed /sək'si:d/ 49 success /sək'ses/ 49 successful /sək'sesfl/ 25 such as /'satf əz/ 4 sudden /'sʌdn/ 14 suddenly /'sadonli/ 14 suede /sweid/ 23 suffer from /'safo from/ 19 suit /su:t/ 23 suitable /'su:təbl/ 42 sun /san/ 11 supplier /sɔ'plaɪə(r)/ 56 supply n /sə'plaı/ 14 supply v /sə'plai/ 56 support N, V (= agreement/ agree) /sə'po:t/ 63 support v (= help) /sə'pɔ:t/ 9 support v (= follow a team) /so'po:t/ 45 supporters /sɔ'pɔ:təz/ 45 supporting role /sə'pɔ:tɪŋ ˌrɔʊl/ 42 supportive /so'po:tiv/ 7 suppose as in I suppose so /səˈpəʊz/ 65 supposed as in be supposed to /sə'pəozd/ 61 sure as in make sure /ʃʊə(r)/ 53, 66 surface /'sa:fis/ 12 surfer /'ss:fə(r)/ 57 surgeon /'sa:dzən/ 25 surgery /'s3:dzəri/ 24 surrender /so'rendə(r)/ 39 surrounded by /so'raundid bai/ 29 Surrounding ADI /sə'raondın/ 14 surroundings N /sp'raondmz/ 14 survival /sə'varvl/ 15, 56 survive /so'vary/ 15, 56 suspect /'saspekt/ 36 suspicious /sə'spɪ[əs/ 69 swallow /'swplac/ 67 swear /sweo(r)/ 42 swearing /'swearin/ 42 sweater /'swetə(r)/ 23 sweep /swi:p/ 27 sweetcorn /'swi:tko:n/ 16 sweets /swi:ts/ 80 swimmer /'swimə(r)/ 45

swimming pool
/'swimin_pu:l/ 45
switch off /,switf 'of/ 75
switch on /,switf 'on/ 75
swollen /'swaolan/ 20
syllable /'silabl/ 3
symbol /'simbl/ 3
sympathetic /,simpa'0etik/ 7
symptom /'simptom/ 20
system as in solar system
/'sistam/ 11

t (tonne) /tʌn/ 79 tail /terl/ 15 take a tooth out /terk a 'tu:θ aot/ 24 take advantage of /terk əd'va:ntids əv/ 71 take after /'teik [d:ftə(r)/ 9, 75 take care / teik 'kep(r)/ 77, 78 take care of / teik 'kear av/ 25, 52, 71 take notes / terk 'noots/ 50 take out / terk 'aut/ 50, 55 take over / terk 'əuvə(r)/ 56 take part in / teik 'pa:t in/ 46, 48 take pictures / teik 'piktfəz/ 43 take place / teik 'pleis/ 36, 46 take sb on / terk 'pn/ 56 take sth off / terk ... 'of/ 75 take time off / teik taim 'pf/ 54 takeover /'teikəovə(r)/ 56 talent /'tælont/ 44 talented /'tæləntid/ 44 tallish /'to:lɪʃ/ 5 tan /tæn/ 5 tanned /tænd/ 5 tap /tæp/ 32 target v /'ta:qit/ 58 target market /,ta:git 'ma:kit/ 58 task /tg:sk/ 27 taste /terst/ 32 tax /tæks/ 55 tear as in burst into tears /tiə(r)/ 34 tear up / tear 'Ap/ 34 technique /tek'ni:k/ 43 television / telivi3n/ 79 tell /tel/ 5

telly /'teli/ 79

temper as in keep/lose your

temper /'tempə(r)/ 66

temporarily /'temprərəli/ 20

temporary /'temprari/ 69 tend /tend/ 74 tendency /'tendensi/ 74 tennis player /'tenis_pleio(r)/ 45 terrible /'terabl/ 66 terribly /'terəbli/ 76 terrified /'terrifard/ 7, 69 terrifying /'terrfaun/ 69 test /test/ 25 text /tekst/ 1 the accused /ði ə'kiu:zd/ 36 the defence /ðo di'fens/ 36 the outskirts /ði 'aotska:ts/ 22 the point is /ðə 'point ,iz/ 63 theater as in movie theater /'θiətə(r)/-80 theft /0cft/ 35 theory as in in theory /0ipri/ 63 therefore /'ðeəfɔ:(r)/ 68 these days /'ði:z ˌdeɪz/ 70 thesis /'0i:sis/ 50 thief /0i:f/ 35 think /0mk/ 63 think as in I (don't) think so $/\theta mk/65$ third quarter $/.\theta$ s:d 'kwo:to(r)/ 55 thoroughly /'θληρli/ 20 though /ðoo/ 68 though as in even though /ðao/ 68 thread /0rcd/ 26 threat /0ret/ 41, 58 threaten /'θretn/ 41 thrilled /0rild/ 7 throughout /θru: 'aot/ 70 throw /θrəʊ/ 48 throw away / θrəo ə'wei/ 27 thyme /taim/ 16 tidal wave /'taidl werv/ 14 tide /taid/ 12 tidy up / taidi 'Ap/ 27 tie /tai/ 26 tie up / tar 'Ap/ 72 tied up / taid 'Ap/ 61 tiger /'taɪqə(r)/ 15 tighten /'taɪtn/ 26 tights /taits/ 23 time as in from time to time /taim/ 70 time as in in time /taɪm/ 50 time as in on time /taim/ 50 time off / taim 'pf/ 54 tiny /'tami/ 30

tip /tip/ 21,58 title /'taitl/ 47 to a certain extent /tu o 'sa:tn ik,stent/ 76 to go /tə 'qəu/ 70 to some extent /ta 'sam ik stent/ 76 toast as in drink a toast /toust/ 10 together as in get together /to'qeðə(r)/ 8, 61 tolerance /'tplərəns/ 6 tolerant /'tploront/ 6 toll as in death toll /tol/ 14 ton /tan/ 48 tonne /tʌn/ 79 tools /tu:lz/ 26 tooth /tii:0/ 24 toothache /'tu:θeɪk/ 24 top /top/ 33 totally /'təutəli/ 76 touch /txtf/ 32 toward /tə'wo:d/ 70 towards /tə'wo:dz/ 70 tov /tor/ 31 track /træk/ 45 trade union / treid 'ju:nion/ 54 traditional /trəˈdɪʃənl/ 10 traffic jam /'træfik dæm/ 22 train /trein/ 52 training /'tremm/ 52 transfer /træns'fs:(r)/ 43, 53 transform /træns'fo:m/ 23 translate /træns'leit/ 1 translation /træns'leisn/ 1 trap /træp/ 14 trapped /træpt/ 14 trash /træf/ 80 trash can /'træf kæn/ 80 travel /'trævl/ 76 travel agent /'trævl_cidsont/ 52 treat /tri:t/ 24, 25 treatment /'tri:tmənt/ 24, 25 trend /trend/ 55 trial /'traiəl/ 36 triangle /'traiængl/ 31 triangular /trai/ængjələ(r)/ 31 trim N. v /trim/ 28 trip /trip/ 22 tropical /'tropikl/ 73 trouble /trabl/ 22 trout /traot/ 16 truck /trak/ 80 trumpet /'trampit/ 44 trumpeter /'trampitə(r)/ 44

trunk /trʌnk/ 15
trust /trʌst/ 8
try /traɪ/ 36
tube /tju:b/ 34
tuition fees /tju'ɪʃn ˌfi:z/ 50
tune /tju:n/ 44
turkey /'tɜ:ki/ 15
turn down /ˌtɜ:n 'daon/ 77
turn up /ˌtɜ:n 'ap/ 22
turnover /'tɜ:nəovə(r)/ 55
tutor /'tju:tə(r)/ 50
TV (television) /ˌti: 'vi:/ 79
two as in fold in two /tu:/ 34
typhoon /tarˈfu:n/ 14
tyre /'taɪə(r)/ 21, 31

UFO (unidentified flying object) / ju: ef 'au/ 79 UN (United Nations) /,ju: 'en/ 79 UEFA / ju'erfə/ 79 umpire /'Ampaiə(r)/ 45 unacceptable /, Anak 'septabl/ 72 unambitious / næm'bijəs/ 6 unconscious / An'kpn[əs/ 20 underestimate /, ander estiment/ 56 undergraduate /, Andə 'qrædjuət/ 50 underneath /, Andə'ni:θ/ 70 underpants /'Andopænts/ 23 underwater /, \ndə'wo:tə(r)/ 12 underwear /'Andawea(r)/ 23 undo / \n'du:/ 72 unemployed / \(\text{Anim'ploid}\) 53 unexpected / nnik spektid/ 69 unfair /, \lambda n'fea(r)/ 72 unfasten /, An'fa:sn/ 72 unhealthy /, n'helθi/ 17 union /'ju:niən/ 54 universe /'ju:niv3:s/ 11 unless /ən'les/ 68 unlikely /ˌʌnˈlaɪkli/ 59 unlimited /, An'limitid/ 58 unload /ˌʌn'ləod/ 72 unlock / An'lok/ 72 unpack / nn'pæk/ 72 unplug / \land n'plag/ 72 unpredictable /, Anpri'diktəbl/ 13 unreasonable /, \n'ri:znəbl/ 69 unskilled /.nn'skild/ 58 unsuitable / \n'su:təbl/ 42

unwilling /ˌʌn'wɪlɪŋ/ 39 unwrap /ˌʌn'ræp/ 72 up as in it's up to me /ʌp/ 64 up as in what's up? /ʌp/ 77 up to /'ʌp tə/ 15 upset /ʌp'set/ 7 upturn /'ʌptɜ:n/ 58 urban /'ɜːbən/ 69 urgent /'ɜːdʒənt/ 25 useful /'juːsfl/ 73 useless /'juːsləs/ 73

VAT (value added tax) / vi: er 'ti:/ 79 vacancy /'veikənsi/ 51 vacation /və'kerfn/ 80 vacuum /'vækjuəm/ 27 vacuum cleaner /'vækjuəm kli:nə(r)/ 27 vague /verg/ 77 valid /'vælid/ 22, 51 value N, v /'væliu:/ 18 van /væn/ 22 vanish /'vænɪʃ/ 13 variety /vəˈraɪəti/ 43 vary /'veəri/ 15, 43 veal /vi:l/ 16 vehicle /'vi:əkl/ 22, 52 versatile /'va:sətail/ 23 vertical /'vs:tikl/ 31 very /'veri/ 7 vest /vest/ 23 vet /vet/ 79 victim /'viktim/ 36 violence /'varələns/ 14, 35 violent /'varələnt/ 14, 35 violin /vaɪə'lɪn/ 44 violinist /vaiə'linist/ 44 vital /'vartl/ 69 vitally /'vartəli/ 76 v-neck /'vi: nek/ 23 voice /vois/ 44 volcanic /vpl'kænik/ 14 volcano /vpl'kempo/ 14 vote n, v /vəut/ 38

waistcoat /'weiskəut/ 23 wake /weik/ 19 wall /wo:l/ 30 walled /wo:ld/ 30 wallet /'wplit/ 80 war /wo:(r)/ 39 ward /wo:d/ 25 warmth /wo:m0/ 33 warn /wo:n/ 67, 74 warning /'wo:nin/ 22, 67

washable /'wpfəbl/ 73 washing up / wp[in 'Ap/ 27 waste of money /weist əv 'mani/ 17, 18 waste of time /weist av 'taim/ 17 watch /wptf/ 32 watch out /wotf 'aut/ 21,67 water as in running water /'wo:tə(r)/ 20 watercolour /'wo:təkʌlə(r)/ 43 waterfall /'wo:tofo:l/ 12 waterproof /'wo:təpru:f/ 73 wave /weiv/ 12 wave as in tidal wave /weiv/ 14 wax /wæks/ 31 way as in on my/the way /wei/ 22 weakness /'wi:knəs/ 58 wealthy /'wel0i/ 18 wedding /'wedin/ 10 wedding reception /'wedin ri,sep[n/ 10 weigh /wei/ 15 weight /weit/ 15 weightlifting /'weitliftin/ 46 well /wel/ 25 well built / wel 'bilt/ 5 well informed / wel in fo:md/ 47 well known / wel 'noon/ 47 well off / wel 'pf/ 18 well written / wel 'ritn/ 47 whale /weil/ 15 what about ...? /'wot a baut/ 61 what do you think about ...? /wot de ju: | Onjk e baot what does your job involve? /wpt daz jo: dabb m'vplv/53 what for? /.wpt 'fo:/ 77 what's more / wpts 'mp:(r)/ 68 what's the point of ...? /'wots ðə point əv/ 66 what's up with ...? / wpts , Ap wið '.../ 77 what've you been up to? /wotov ju: bin 'Ap tu:/ 77 wheel /wi:1/ 21 whereas / weər'æz/ 68 whether /'weðə(r)/ 78 while as in after a while /wail/ 2

untie /, An'tai/ 72

whisper /'wispo(r)/ 34 whistle /'wisl/ 29 whole /haul/ 41 whole as in on the whole /hool/ 76 wide /waid/ 12, 45 wide awake / ward ə'werk/ 19 wide range / waid 'reinds/ 2 widely /'waidli/ 76 widow /'widəu/ 10 widower /'widəoə(r)/ 10 width $/\text{wid}\theta/$ 12.45 wife /waif/ 10 wild (= living in natural conditions) /waild/ 15 wild (= exciting and enjoyable) /warld/ 48 will /wil/ 10 willing /'wilm/ 39 win /win/ 42 windscreen / windskri:n/ 21 windscreen wiper /'windskri:n waipo(r)/ 21 wing /win/ 15 wing mirror /'win mirə(r)/ 21 winner /'wino(r)/ 42 wipe /waip/ 27 wiper as in windscreen wiper /'waipə(r)/ 21 wire /'waiə(r)/ 26 wish /wis/ 10 wishes as in best wishes /'wifiz/ 78 witness /'witnes/ 36 wonder /'wʌndə(r)/ 29 words as in in other words /w3:dz/ 11 wood /wod/ 31 wooden /'wodn/ 31 wool /wol/ 31 woollen /'wolan/ 31 work (= get a result) /w3:k/ 1 work (= function) /w3:k/ 26 work as in out of work /ws:k/ 53 work as in shift work /w3:k/ 54 work of art / w3:k əv 'a:t/ 43 work out / ws:k 'aot/ 75 work overtime / ws:k 'oovotaim/ 54 work permit /'wa:k .pa:mit/ 51 working conditions /'ws:kin kən di[nz/ 54 worldwide /ws:ld'waid/ 45 worth /w3:0/ 18 would rather / wud 'ra:ðə(r)/ 62 wound /wu:nd/ 20 wrap up / ræp 'Ap/ 72 wrestling /'reslm/ 46 wrinkles /'rɪŋklz/ 5 write a thesis / rait ə 'θi:sis/ 50 writing as in in writing /'raitin/ 66 wrong /ron/ 26 wrong as in go wrong /ron/ 8, 65

x-ray /'eks rei/ 25

yawning /ˈjɔ:nŋ/ 19 yeah /jeə/ 77 you must be joking / ju: ˌmʌst ˌbi ˈdʒəokɪŋ/ 77 you're joking / jɔ: ˈdʒəokɪŋ/ 77 youngish /ˈjʌŋɪʃ/ 5 yours faithfully / jɔ:z ˈfeɪθfəli/ 78 yours sincerely / jɔ:z sɪnˈsɪəli/ 78

zoom lens /'zu:m ,lenz/ 43



Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain
Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain
English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain
English Centre, Valencia, Spain
Tti School of English, London, UK
Bell International, London, UK
Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd, and the students at International House,
Bath, UK
Małgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk, and Iza
Algermissen in Poland

They would also like to thank:

Theresa Clementson, Sian Morgan, Carol Tabor, and Scott Thornbury for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text.

The actors Nigel Greaves and Joanna Hall and The Soundhouse Ltd for the listening material.

Daniel Bleyer (Germany); Blanca Gonzalez (Spain); Atena Juszko (Poland); Ilaria Milisenna (Italy); Claire Ransom (Britain); Sadako Shokatsu (Japan); Maurizio Tinnirello (Colombia); and Nina Weirum (Norway) for ABOUT YOU answers.

Suzanne Williams for picture research.

Pippa Mayfield for phonetic transcriptions.



Oxford Word Skills

Learn and practise English vocabulary

Intermediate: for intermediate and upper-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you've learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams



Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.



It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

